



ABS.1.84.209

National Library of Scotland



\*B000037645\*

0963-69660











DR GOLDSMITH'S  
ABRIDGMENT  
OF THE  
HISTORY OF ROME;  
WITH  
*Exercises on each Chapter,*  
FOR  
THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE CLASSES.

---

BY ROBERT SIMPSON,

Author of the History of Scotland, an Introduction to the Collections, Improved  
Editions of Dr Goldsmith's Histories of England and Greece, &c.

---

FIFTH EDITION.

---

EDINBURGH;

PUBLISHED BY

OLIVER & BOYD, TWEEDDALE-COURT.

---

1823.

---

[Price Three Shillings and Sixpence, bound.]

THE NATIONAL LIBRARY OF SCOTLAND

100 George Street, Glasgow G2 7AT

0141 225 2500

LIBRARY OF SCOTLAND

100 George Street, Glasgow G2 7AT

0141 225 2500

THE NATIONAL LIBRARY OF SCOTLAND



100 George Street, Glasgow G2 7AT

0141 225 2500

THE NATIONAL LIBRARY OF SCOTLAND

100 George Street, Glasgow G2 7AT

0141 225 2500

THE  
ROMAN HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

*Of the Origin of the Romans.*

THE Romans were particularly desirous of being thought descended from the Gods, as if to hide the meanness of their real ancestry. Æneas, the son of Venus and Anchises, having escaped from the destruction of Troy, after many adventures and dangers, arrived in Italy, where he was kindly received by A. M. 2294. Latinus, king of the Latins, who gave him his daughter Lavinia in marriage. Turnus, king of the Rutuli, was the first who opposed Æneas, he having long made pretensions to Lavinia himself. A war ensued, in which the Trojan hero was victorious, and Turnus slain. In consequence of this, Æneas built a city which was called Lavinium, in honour of his wife; and some time after, engaging in another war against Mezentius, one of the petty kings of the country, he was vanquished in turn, and died in battle, after a reign of four years.

Numitor, the fifteenth king, in a direct line from Æneas, who took possession of the kingdom, in consequence of his father's will, had a brother, named Amulius, to whom he left the treasures which had been brought from Troy. As riches but too generally prevail against right, Amulius made use of his wealth to supplant his brother, and soon found means to possess himself of the kingdom. Not content with the crime of usurpation, he added that of murder also. Numitor's sons first fell a sacrifice to his suspicions: and to remove all apprehensions of being one day disturbed in his ill-got power, he caused Rhea Silvia, his brother's only daugh-

ter, to become a vestal virgin : which office obliging her to perpetual celibacy, made him less uneasy as to the claims of posterity.

His precautions, however, were all frustrated in the event. For Rhea Silvia, going to fetch water from a neighbouring grove, was met and forced by a man, whom perhaps to palliate her offence, she averred to be Mars, the god of war. Shortly after she was delivered of two boys, who were no sooner born, than devoted by the usurper to destruction. The mother was condemned to be buried alive, the usual punishment for vestals who had violated their chastity, and the twins were ordered to be flung into the river Tiber. It happened, at the time this rigorous sentence was put into execution, that the river had more than usually overflowed its banks, so that the place where the children were thrown, being at a distance from the main current, the water was too shallow to drown them. In this situation, therefore, they continued without harm ; and that no part of their preservation might want its wonders, we are told, that they were for some time suckled by a wolf, until Faustulus, the king's herdsman, finding them thus exposed, brought them home to Acca Laurentia, his wife, who brought them up as his own.

Romulus and Remus, the twins thus strangely preserved, seemed early to discover abilities and desires above the meanness of their supposed original. The shepherd's life began to displease them : and, from tending flocks or hunting wild beasts, they soon turned their strength against the robbers round the country, whom they often stript of their plunder to share it among their fellow shepherds. In one of these excursions, Remus was taken prisoner by Numitor's herdsman, who brought him before the king, and accused him of being a plunderer. Romulus, however, being informed by Faustulus of his real birth, was not remiss in assembling a number of his fellow shepherds, who beset the usurper on all sides, who during his amazement and distraction, was taken and slain ; while Numitor, who had been deposed forty-two years, recognised his grandsons, and was once more restored to the throne.

Numitor being thus in quiet possession of the kingdom, his grandsons resolved to build a city upon those hills where they had formerly lived as shepherds. Many of the neighbouring shepherds also, and such as were fond of change, repaired to the intended city, and prepared to raise it. In order to proceed in this undertaking with all possible solemnity, the two brothers were advised by the king to take an omen from the flight of birds, and that he whose omen should be most favourable, should in all respects direct the other. In compliance with this advice, they both took their stations upon different hills. To Remus appeared six vultures; to Romulus twice that number; so that each party thought itself victorious; the one having the first omen, the other the most complete. This produced a contest, which ended in a battle, wherein Remus was slain; and it is even said, that he was killed by his brother, who, being provoked at his leaping contemptuously over the city wall, struck him dead upon the spot.

Romulus, being now sole commander, and eighteen years of age, laid the foundations of a city that was one day to give laws to the world. It was called Rome, after the name of the founder, and built upon the Palatine hill, on which he had taken his successful omen. The city was at first almost square, containing about a thousand houses. It was near a mile in compass, and commanded a small territory round it of about eight miles over. However small it appears, it was notwithstanding worse inhabited: and the first method made use of to increase its numbers, was the opening a sanctuary for all malefactors, slaves, and such as were desirous of novelty; and there came in great multitudes, and contributed to increase the number of our legislator's new subjects.

### *Exercises.*

Who was the ancestor of the Romans? Whom did Æneas marry? What was the name of the city which he built? What became of Æneas? How did Amulius treat his brother? By what means were Romulus and Remus preserved? What became of Remus? When did Romulus lay the foundation of Rome? What number of houses did it contain? What characters resorted to it?

## CHAPTER II.

*From the Building of Rome to the Death of Romulus.*

Scarce was the city raised above its foundation, when its rude inhabitants began to think of giving some form to their constitution. Romulus, by an act of great generosity, left them at liberty to choose whom they would for their king; and they in gratitude concurred to elect their founder: he was accordingly acknowledged as chief of their religion, sovereign magistrate of Rome, and general of the army. Besides a guard to attend his person, it was agreed that he should be preceded wherever he went by twelve men armed with axes tied up in a bundle of rods, who were to serve as executioners of the law, and to impress his new subjects with an idea of his authority.

The senate, which was to act as counsellors to the king, was composed of men, whose age, wisdom, or valour, gave them a natural authority over their fellow-subjects; and the king named the first senator, and appointed him to the government of the city, whenever war required his own absence.

The plebeians, who composed the third part of the legislature, assumed to themselves the power of authorizing those laws which were passed by the king or the senate. All things relative to peace or war, to the election of magistrates, and even to the chasing of a king, were confirmed by suffrages in their assemblies.

The first care of the new created king, was to attend to the interests of religion; but the precise form of their worship is unknown. The greater part of the religion of that age consisted in a firm reliance upon the credit of their Soothsayers, who pretended, from observations on the flight of birds and the entrails of beasts, to direct the present, and dive into futurity. Romulus, by an express law, commanded that no election should be made, no enterprise undertaken without first consulting them.

Wives were forbid, upon any pretext whatsoever, to separate from their husbands; while, on the contrary, the husband was empowered to repudiate the wife, and



even in some cases to put her to death. His laws between children and their parents were yet still more severe; the father had entire power over his offspring, both of fortune and life; he could sell them, or imprison them at any time of their lives, or in any stations to which they were arrived.

After his endeavour by laws to regulate his subjects, he next gave orders to ascertain their numbers. The whole amounted but to three thousand foot, and about as many hundred horsemen, capable of bearing arms.—These, therefore, were divided equally into three tribes, and to each he assigned a different part of the city.—Each of these tribes were subdivided into ten *curia*, or companies, consisting of an hundred men each, with a centurion to command it; a priest called *Curio*, to perform the sacrifice; and two of the principal inhabitants, called *Duumviri*, to distribute justice.

By these wise regulations, each day added strength to the new city; multitudes flocked in from all the adjacent towns, and it only seemed to want women to ascertain its duration. In this exigence, Romulus, by the advice of the senate, sent deputies among the Sabines, his neighbours, entreating their alliance, and upon these terms offering to cement the most strict confederacy with them. The Sabines, who were then considered as the most warlike people of Italy, rejected the proposal with disdain; Romulus, therefore, proclaimed a feast in honour of Neptune throughout all the neighbouring villages, and made the most magnificent preparations for it. These feasts were generally preceded by sacrifices, and ended in shows of wrestlers, gladiators, and chariot-courses. The Sabines, as he had expected, were among the foremost who came to be spectators, bringing their wives and daughters with them, to share the pleasure of the sight. In the mean time the games began, and while the strangers were most intent upon the spectacle, a number of the Roman youths, rushed in among them with drawn swords, seized the youngest and most beautiful women, and carried them off by violence. In vain the parents protested against this breach of hospitality; in vain the virgins themselves at first opposed the attempts of their ravish-

ers; perseverance and caresses obtained those favours which timidity at first denied; so that the betrayers, from being objects of aversion, soon became the objects of their dearest affections.

A bloody war ensued. The cities of Cenina, Antemna, and Crustumium, were the first who resolved to revenge the common cause, which the Sabines seemed too dilatory in pursuing. But all these, by making separate inroads, became a more easy conquest to Romulus, who made the most merciful use of his victory; instead of destroying their towns, or lessening their numbers, he only placed colonies of Romans in them, to serve as a frontier to repress more distant invasions.

Tatius, king of Cures, a Sabine city, was the last, although the most formidable, who undertook to revenge the disgrace his country had suffered. He entered the Roman territories at the head of twenty-five thousand men, and not content with a superiority of forces, he added stratagem also. Tarpeia, who was daughter to the commander of the Capitoline hill, happened to fall into his hands, as she went without the walls of the city to fetch water. Upon her he prevailed, by means of large promises, to betray one of the gates to his army. The reward she engaged for was what the soldiers wore on their arms, by which she meant their bracelets.—They, however, either mistaking her meaning, or willing to punish her perfidy, threw their bucklers upon her as they entered, and crushed her to death. The Sabines being thus possessed of the Capitoline hill, after some time a general engagement ensued, which was renewed for several days with almost equal success, and neither could think of submitting; it was in the valley between the Capitoline and Quirinal hills, that the last engagement was fought between the Romans and the Sabines. The engagement was now become general, and the slaughter prodigious, when the attention of both sides was suddenly turned from this scene of horror before them to another: the Sabine women, who had been carried off by the Romans, with their hair loose, and their ornaments neglected, flew in between the combatants, regardless of their own danger, and with loud outcries, implored their husbands and their brothers to de-

sist. Upon this the combatants, as if by mutual impulse, let fall their weapons: an accommodation ensued, by which it was agreed that Romulus and Tatius should reign jointly in Rome, with equal power and prerogative, that an hundred Sabines should be admitted into the senate, that the city should retain its former name, but that the citizens should be called Quirites, after Cures, the principal town of the Sabines, and that both nations being thus united, such of the Sabines as chose it, should be admitted to live in, and enjoy all the privileges of citizens in Rome. Tatius was killed about five years afterwards by the Lavinians, for having protected some of his servants, who had plundered them, and slain their ambassadors; so that by this accident Romulus saw himself once more sole monarch of Rome.

Successes like these produced an equal share of pride in the conqueror. From being contented with those limits which had been wisely assigned to his power, he began to affect absolute sway, and to govern those laws, to which he had himself formerly professed implicit obedience. The senate was particularly displeased at his conduct as they found themselves only used as instruments to ratify the rigour of his commands. We are not told the precise manner which they employed to get rid of the tyrant; some say that he was torn in pieces in the senate-house; others, that he disappeared while reviewing his army. Certain it is, that from the secrecy of the fact, and the concealment of the body, they took occasion to persuade the multitude that he was taken up into heaven: thus they were contented to worship him as a god, whom they could not bear as a king. Romulus reigned thirty-seven years, and after his death had a temple built to him under the name of Quirinus.

### *Exercises.*

Who was elected sovereign magistrate of Rome? Who composed the Senate? What power did the Plebeians possess? In what did their Religion consist? What laws did Romulus enact? What was the number of his forces? How did he divide them? What was the effect of these wise regulations? What stratagem did he employ to procure wives for the Roman youth? What cities declared war against the Romans? How did Tatius acquire possession of the Capitoline hill? By whose means

were the Romans and Sabines reconciled? What were the terms agreed on? What became of Romulus? What honours were paid to his memory?



### CHAPTER III.

#### *From the Death of Romulus to the Death of Tullus Hostilius, the Third King of Rome.*

U. C. 38. Upon the death of Romulus, the city seemed greatly divided in the choice of a successor. The Sabines were for having a king chosen from their body, but the Romans could not bear the thoughts of advancing a stranger to the throne. In this perplexity the senators undertook to supply the place of the king by taking the government each in hand for five days, and during that time, enjoying all the honours, and all the privileges of royalty. This new form of government continued for a year: but the plebeians, who saw that this method of transferring power was only multiplying their masters, insisted upon altering that mode of government. The senate being thus driven to an election, at length pitched upon Numa Pompilius, a Sabine, and their choice was received with universal approbation by the people.

Numa Pompilius, who was now about forty, had long been eminent for his piety, his justice, moderation, and exemplary life. He was skilled in all the learning and philosophy of the Sabines, and lived at home at Cures, contented with a private fortune, unambitious of higher honours. It was not, therefore, without reluctance that he accepted the dignity, which when he did, it produced such joy, that the people seemed not so much to receive a king, as a kingdom.

No monarch could be more proper for them than Numa, at a conjuncture when the government was composed of various petty states, lately subdued, and but ill united among each other: they wanted a master, who could, by his laws and precepts, soften their fierce dispositions, and by his example, induce them to a love of religion, and every milder virtue.

Numa's whole time, therefore, was spent in inspiring his subjects with a love of piety, and a veneration for the gods. He built many new temples, instituted sacred offices and feasts; and the sanctity of his life gave him credit enough to persuade his people that he had a particular correspondence with the goddess Egeria. By her advice he built the temple of Janus, which was to be shut in time of peace, and open in war; he ordained vestal virgins, who, being four in number, had very great privileges allowed them.

For the encouragement of agriculture, he divided those lands which Romulus had gained in war among the poorer part of the people; he regulated the kalendar and abolished the distinction between Romans and Sabines, by dividing the people according to their several trades, and compelling them to live together. Thus, having arrived at the age of fourscore years, and having reigned forty-three in profound peace, he died, ordering his body to be buried in a stone coffin, contrary to the customs of the times, and his books of ceremonies, which consisted of twelve in Latin, and as many in Greek, to be buried by his side in another.

Upon the death of Numa, the government U. C. 82. once more devolved upon the senate, and continued till the people elected Tullus Hostilius for their king, which choice had also the concurrence of the other part of the constitution. This monarch, who was grandson to a noble Roman, who had formerly signalized himself against the Sabines, was every way unlike his predecessor, being entirely devoted to war, and more fond of enterprise than even the founder of the empire himself had been; so that he only sought a pretext for leading his forces into the field.

The Albans were the first people who gave him an opportunity of indulging his favourite inclinations. The forces of these states met about five miles from Rome, prepared to decide the fate of their respective kingdoms; for almost every battle in these times was decisive. The two armies were for some time drawn out in array, awaiting the signal to begin, both chiding the length of that dreadful suspense, when an unexpected proposal

from the Alban general put a stop to the onset. Stepping in between both armies, he offered the Romans a choice of deciding the dispute by single combat: adding; that the side whose champion was overcome should submit to the conqueror. A proposal like this suited the impetuous temper of the Roman king, and was embraced with joy by his subjects, each of whom hoped that he himself should be chosen to fight the cause of his country. There were at that time three twin brothers in each army; those of the Romans were called Horatii, and those of the Albans, Curiatii, all six remarkable for their courage, strength and activity, and to those it was resolved to commit the management of the combat. At length the champions met in combat together, and each totally regardless of his own safety, only sought the destruction of his opponent. The spectators, in horrid silence, trembled at every blow, and wished to share the danger, till fortune seemed to decide the glory of the field. Victory that had hitherto been doubtful, appeared to declare against the Romans: they beheld two of their champions lying dead upon the plain, and the three Curatii, who were wounded, slowly endeavouring to pursue the survivor, who seemed by flight to beg for mercy. Soon, however, they perceived that his flight was only pretended, in order to separate his antagonists whom he was unable to oppose united; for quickly after, stopping his course, and turning upon him who followed most closely behind, he laid him dead at his feet; the second brother, who came on to assist him who was fallen, only shared the same fate; and now there remained but the last Curatius to conquer, who fatigued, and quite disabled with his wounds, slowly came up to offer an easy victory. He was killed, almost unresisting, while the conqueror exclaimed, that he offered him as a victim to the superiority of the Romans, whom now the Alban army consented to obey.

But none of the virtues of that age were without alloy; the very hand that in the morning was exerted to save his country, was before night embued in the blood of a sister. For, returning triumphant from the field, it raised his indignation to behold her bathed in tears, and lamenting the loss of her lover, one of the Curiatii,

to whom she was betrothed. This provoked him beyond the power of sufferance, so that he slew her in a rage. This action greatly displeased the senate, and drew on the condemnation of the magistrates, but he was pardoned by making his appeal to the people.

Hostilius died after a reign of thirty-two years ; some say by lightning, others, with more probability, by treason.

### *Exercises.*

What form of government took place on the death of Romulus ? How long did it continue ? Who was at length chosen king ? What was the character of Numa Pompilius ? What improvements did Numa make ? How long did he reign ? Who was his successor ? What was the character of Tullus Hostilius ? With whom did he wage war ? Who were the champions on each side ? On whose side did victory declare ? How did Horatius tarnish his honour ? How long did Hostilius reign ?

## CHAPTER IV.

*From the Death of Tullus Hostilius, to the Death of Tarquinius Priscus, the Fifth King of Rome.*

After an interregnum, as in the former U. C. 115. case, Ancus Marcius, the grandson of Numa, was elected king by the people, and the choice afterwards was confirmed by the senate. As this monarch was a lineal descendant from Numa, so he seemed to make him the great object of his imitation. He instituted the sacred ceremonies which were to precede a declaration of war ; he took every occasion to advise his subjects to return to the arts of agriculture, and to lay aside the less useful stratagems of war.

These institutions and precepts were considered by the neighbouring powers rather as marks of cowardice than of wisdom. The Latins, therefore, began to make incursions upon his territories, but their success was equal to their justice. Ancus conquered the Latins, destroyed their cities, removed their inhabitants to Rome, and increased his territories by the addition of a part of theirs. He quelled also an insurrection of the Veii, the

Fidenates, and the Volsci; and over the Sabines he obtained a second triumph.

But his victories over the enemy were by no means comparable to his works at home, in raising temples, fortifying the city, making a prison for malefactors, and building a sea-port at the mouth of the Tyber, called Ostia, by which he secured to his subjects the trade of that river, and that of the salt pits adjacent. Thus having enriched his subjects, and beautified the city, he died, after a reign of twenty-four years.

U. C. 130. Lucius Tarquinius Priscus, whose original name was Lucumon, and who was appointed guardian to the late king, took the surname of Tarquinius from the city of Tarquinia, from whence he last came. His father was a merchant of Corinth, who had acquired considerable wealth by trade, and had settled in Italy, upon account of some troubles at home.—His son Lucumon, who inherited his fortune, married a woman of family in the city of Tarquinia; and, as his birth, profession, and country were contemptible to the nobles of the place, by his wife's persuasion, he came to settle at Rome, where merit only made distinction. On his way thither, says the historians, as he approached the city gate, an eagle, stooping from above, took off his hat, and flying round his chariot for some time, with much noise, put it on again. This, his wife Tanaquil, who it seems, was skilled in augury, interpreted as a presage that he should one day wear the crown; and perhaps it was this which first fired his ambition to pursue it.

Ancus being dead, and the kingdom, as usual, devolved upon the senate, Tarquin used all his power and art to set aside the children of the late king, and to get himself elected in their stead. For this purpose, upon the day appointed for election, he contrived to have them sent out of the city; and in a set speech to the people, in which he urged his friendship for them, the fortune he had spent among them, and his knowledge of their government, he offered himself for their king. As there was nothing in this harangue that could be contested, it had the desired effect, and the people, with one consent, elected him as their sovereign.



A kingdom, thus got by intrigue, was notwithstanding governed with equity. In the beginning of his reign in order to recompense his friends, he added one hundred members more to the senate, which made them in all three hundred.

But his peaceful endeavours were soon interrupted by the inroads of his restless neighbours, particularly the Latins, over whom he triumphed, and whom he forced to beg a peace. He then turned his arms against the Sabines, who had risen once more, and had passed over the Tiber; but Tarquin, attacking them with vigour, routed their army; so that many who escaped the sword, were drowned in attempting to cross over, while their bodies and armour floating down to Rome, brought news of the victory, even before the messengers could arrive, that were sent with the tidings. These conquests were followed by several advantages over the Latins, from whom he took many towns, though without gaining any decisive victory.

Tarquin, having thus forced his enemies into submission, was resolved not to let his subjects corrupt in indolence, but undertook and perfected several public works for the convenience and embellishment of the city.

In his time also, the augurs came into a great increase of reputation, and he found it his interest to promote the superstition of the people, as this was in fact but to increase their obedience. Tanaquil his wife, was a great pretender to this art; but Accius Nævius was the most celebrated adept of the kind that was ever known in Rome. Upon a certain occasion, Tarquin being resolved to try the augur's skill, asked him, whether what he was then pondering in his mind could be effected? Nævius having examined his auguries, boldly affirmed that it might: "Why then, cries the king, with an insulting smile, I had thoughts of cutting this whetstone with a razor." "Cut boldly," replied the augur; and the king cut it through accordingly. Thence forward nothing was undertaken in Rome without consulting the augurs, and obtaining their advice and approbation.

Tarquin was not content with a kingdom, without al-

so the ensigns of royalty. In imitation of the Lydian kings, he assumed a crown of gold, an ivory throne, a sceptre, with an eagle on the top, and robes of purple. It was perhaps, the splendor of these royalties, that first raised the envy of the late king's sons, who had now for above thirty-seven years quietly submitted to his government. His design also of adopting Servius Tullius his son-in-law, for his successor, might have contributed to inflame their resentment. Whatever was the cause of their tardy vengeance, they resolved to destroy him; and at last found means to effect their purpose, by hiring two ruffians, who, demanding to speak with the king, pretending that they came for justice, struck him dead in his palace with the blow of an axe. The lictors, however, who waited upon the person of the king, seized the murderers, who were attempting to escape: they were put to death; but the sons of Ancus, who were the instigators, found safety by flight.

Thus fell Lucius Tarquinius, surnamed Priscus, to distinguish him from one of his successors of the same name, aged fifty-six years, of which he had reigned thirty-eight.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Hostilius? What victories did Ancus Marcius obtain? What improvements did he make? How long did he reign? What took place when Tarquin approached the gate of Rome? How did he acquire possession of the throne? What addition did he make to the number of the senate? What nations did he conquer? Who was the most celebrated Augur in Rome? How long did Tarquin reign?



## CHAPTER V.

*From the Death of Tarquinius Priscus, to the Death of Servius Tullius, the Sixth King of Rome.*

U. C. 179. The report of the murder of Tarquin filled his subjects with complaints and indignation, while the citizens ran from every quarter to the palace, to learn the truth of the account or to take vengeance on the assassins. In this tumult, Tanaquil,

widow of the late king, considering the danger she must incur, in case the conspirators should succeed to the crown, and desirous of having her son-in-law for his successor, with great art dissembled her sorrows as well as the king's death. She assured the people from one of the windows of the palace, that he was not killed, but stunned by the blow; that he would shortly recover: and that in the mean time, he had deputed his power to Servius Tullius his son-in-law. Servius accordingly, as it had been agreed upon between them, issued from the palace, adorned with the ensigns of royalty, and preceded by his lictors, went to dispatch some affairs that related to the public safety, still pretending that he took all his instructions from the king. This scene of dissimulation continued for some days, till he had made his party good among the nobles; when the death of Tarquin being publicly ascertained, Servius came to the crown, solely at the senate's appointment, and without attempting to gain the suffrages of the people.

Servius was the son of a bond woman, who had been taken at the sacking of a town belonging to the Latins, and was born whilst his mother was a slave. While yet an infant in his cradle, a lambent flame is said to have played round his head, which Tanaquil converted into an omen of his future greatness.

Upon being acknowledged as king, the chief object of his reign was to increase the power of the senate, by depressing that of the people. The populace, who were unable to see into his designs, conferred upon him a full power of settling the taxes as he should think proper.—And accordingly, as he insisted that they should pay their taxes by centuries, he commanded that they should give their votes in all public transactions by centuries also. In former deliberations each citizen gave his suffrage singly, and the numbers of the poor always carried it against the power of the rich; but by the regulations of Servius, the senate was made to consist of a greater number of centuries than all the other classes put together, and thus entirely outweighed them in every contention.

In order to ascertain the decrease or decay of his subjects and their fortunes, he instituted another regulation

which he called a lustrum. By this, all the citizens were to assemble in the Campus Martius, in complete armour, and in their respective classes, once in five years and there to give an exact account of their families and fortunes.

Having thus enjoyed a long reign spent in settling the domestic policy of the state, and also not inattentive to foreign concerns, he conceived reasonable hopes of concluding it with tranquillity and ease. He had even thoughts of laying down his power, and having formed the kingdom into a republic, to retire into obscurity; but so generous a design was frustrated ere it could be put into execution.

In the beginning of his reign, to secure his throne by every precaution, he had married his two daughters to the two grandsons of Tarquin; and as he knew that the women were of opposite dispositions, as well as their intended husbands, he resolved to cross their tempers by giving them to him of a contrary turn of temper: her that was meek and gentle, to him that was bold and furious: her that was ungovernable and proud, to him that was remarkable for a contrary character; by this he supposed that each would correct the failings of the other, and that the mixture would be productive only of concord. The event however proved otherwise. Lucius his haughty son-in-law, soon grew displeased with the meekness of his consort, and placed his whole affections upon Tullia, his brother's wife, who answered his passion with sympathetic ardour. As their wishes were ungovernable, they soon resolved to break thro' every restraint that offered to prevent their union. Both undertook to murder their consorts, which they effected, and were accordingly soon after married together. A first crime ever produces a second: from the destruction of their consorts, they proceeded to conspiring that of the king. They began by raising factions against him, alledging his illegal title to the crown, and Lucius claiming it as his own, as heir to Tarquin. At length, when he found the senate ripe for seconding his views, he entered the senate-house, adorned with all the ensigus of royalty, and placing himself upon the throne, began to

harangue them upon the obscurity of the king's birth, and the injustice of his title. While he was yet speaking, Servius entered, attended by a few followers, and seeing his throne thus rudely invaded, offered to push the usurper from his seat : but Tarquin being in the vigour of youth, threw the old man down the steps which led to the throne ; and some of his adherents, being instructed for that purpose, followed the king as he was feebly attempting to get to the palace, and dispatched him by the way, throwing his body all mangled and bleeding, as a public spectacle into the street. In the mean time, Tullia, burning with impatience for the event, was informed of what her husband had done, and resolving to be among the first who should salute him as monarch, ordered her chariot to the senate-house. But as the charioteer approached the place where the body of the old king her father lay exposed and bloody, the man, all amazed at the inhuman spectacle, and not willing to trample upon it with his horses, offered to turn another way ; this only served to increase the fierceness of her anger, she threw the footstool at his head, and ordered him to drive over the dead body without hesitation.

This was the end of Servius Tullius, a prince of eminent justice and moderation, after an useful and prosperous reign of forty-four years.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Tarquin ? How did Servius increase the power of the senate ? What new regulations did he institute ? To whom did he marry his daughters ? In what manner did Lucius and Tullius conduct themselves ? Who excited factions against Servius ? How did Lucius act in the Senate-house ? What took place on the arrival of Servius ? What became of the king ? How did Tullia discover her want of filial respect ? How long did Servius Tullius reign ?

## CHAPTER VI.

### *From the Death of Servius Tullius to the Banishment of Tarquinius Superbus, the Seventh and Last King of Rome.*

Lucius Tarquinius, afterwards called Superbus, or the Proud, having placed himself U, C. 220.

upon the throne, in consequence of this violent attempt, was resolved to support his dignity with the same violence with which it was acquired. Regardless of the approbation of the senate or people, he seemed to claim the crown by hereditary right, and refused the late king's body burial, under pretence of his being an usurper.—All the good part of mankind, however, looked upon his accession with detestation and horror: and this act of inefficient cruelty only served to confirm their hatred. Conscious of this, he ordered all such as he suspected to have been attached to Servius, to be put to death: and fearing the natural consequences of his tyranny, he increased the guard round his person.

His chief policy seems to have been to keep the people always employed, either in wars or public works, by which means he diverted their attention from his unlawful method of coming to the crown. He first marched against the Sabines, who refused to pay obedience, and soon reduced them to submission. He next began a war with the Volsci, which continued for some ages after.—The city of the Gabii gave him much more trouble; for having attempted, with some loss to besiege it, he was obliged to direct his efforts by stratagem, contrary to the usual practice of the Romans. He caused his son Sextus to counterfeit desertion, upon pretence of barbarous usage, and to seek refuge among the inhabitants of the place. There by artful complaints and studied lamentations, he so prevailed on the pity of the people, as to be chosen their governor, and soon after general of their army. At first, in every engagement he appeared successful, till at length finding himself entirely possessed of the confidence of the state, he sent a trusty messenger to his father for instructions. Tarquin made no other answer than, by taking the messenger into the garden, where he cut down before him the tallest poppies. Sextus readily understood the meaning of this reply, and one by one, found means to destroy or remove the principal men of the city, still taking care to confiscate their effects among the people. The charms of this dividend kept the giddy populace blind to their approaching ruin, till they found themselves at last without counsellors or

head, and in the end fell under the power of Tarquin without even striking a blow. After this he made a league with the *Æqui*, and renewed that with the *Etrurians*.

But while he was engaged in wars abroad, he took care not to suffer the people to continue in idleness at home. He undertook to build the Capitol, the foundation of which had been laid in a former reign, and an extraordinary event contributed to hasten the execution of his design. A woman, in strange attire, made her appearance at Rome, and came to the king, offering to sell nine books, which she said were of her own composing. Not knowing the abilities of the seller, or that she was in fact one of the celebrated Sybils, whose prophecies were never found to fail, Tarquin refused to buy them. Upon this she departed, and burning three of her books, returned again, demanding the same price for the six remaining. Being once more dismissed as an impostor, she again departed, and burning three more, she returned again with those remaining, still asking the same price as at first. Tarquin surprised at the inconsistency of her behaviour, consulted the augurs, to advise him what to do. These much blamed him for not buying the nine, and commanded him to buy the three remaining at whatever price they were to be had. The woman, says the historian, after thus selling and delivering the three prophetic volumes, and advising him to have a special attention to what they contained, vanished from before him, and was never seen after. Upon this he chose proper persons to keep them, who, though but two at first, were afterwards increased to fifteen, under the name of *quindecimviri*. They were put into a stone chest, and a vault in the newly-designed building, was thought the most proper place to lodge them in safety. The people having now been for four years together employed in building the capitol, began at last to wish for something new to engage them; wherefore Tarquin, to satisfy their wishes, proclaimed war against the *Rutuli*, upon a frivolous pretence of their having entertained some malefactors whom he had banished, and invested their chief city *Ardea*, which lay about sixteen miles

from Rome. While the army was encamped before this place, the king's son Sextus, with Collatinus a noble Roman, and some others, sat in a tent drinking together; the discourse happening to turn on the beauty and virtue of their wives, each man praising his own. Collatinus offered to decide the dispute, by putting it to an immediate trial, whose wife should be possessed of the greatest beauty, and most sedulously employed at that very hour. Being heated with wine, the proposal was relished by the whole company; and taking horse without delay, they posted to Rome, though the night was already pretty far advanced. There they found Lucretia, the wife of Collatinus, not like the other women of her age, spending the time in ease and luxury, but spinning in the midst of her maids, and cheerfully portioning out their tasks. Her modest beauty, and the easy reception she gave her husband and his friends, so charmed them all, that they unanimously gave her the preference; and Sextus was so much inflamed, that nothing but enjoyment could satisfy his passion.

For that purpose, he went from the camp to visit her privately a few days after, and received the same kind reception which he had met with before. As his intentions were not suspected, Lucretia sat with him at supper, and ordered a chamber to be got ready for him in the house. Midnight was the time in which this ruffian thought it safest to put his designs in execution. Having found means to convey himself into her chamber, he approached her bedside with a drawn sword, and rudely laying his hand upon her bosom, threatened her with instant death, if she offered to resist his passion. Lucretia affrighted out of her sleep, and seeing death so near, was yet inexorable to his desire, till being told, that if she would not yield, he would first kill her, and then laying his own slave also dead by her side, he would report, that he had found and killed them both in the act of adultery. The terror of infamy achieved what that of death could not obtain: she consented to his desire, and the next morning he returned to the camp, exulting in his brutal victory. In the mean time Lucretia, detesting the light, and resolving not to pardon herself for



the crime of another, sent for her husband Collatinus, and for Spurius, her father, to come to her, as an indelible disgrace had befallen the family. These instantly obeyed the summons, bringing with them Valerius, a kinsman of her father's, and Junius Brutus, a reputed idiot, whose father Tarquin had murdered, and who had accidentally met the messenger by the way. Their arrival only served to increase Lucretia's poignant anguish; they found her in a state of stedfast desperation, and vainly attempted to give her relief. "No," said she, "never shall I find any thing worth living for in this life, after having lost my honour. You see, my Collatinus, a polluted wretch before you; one whose person has been the spoil of another, but whose affections were never estranged from you. Sextus, under the pretended veil of friendship, has this night forced from me that treasure which death only can restore; but if you have the hearts of men, remember to avenge my cause, and let posterity know, that she who has lost her virtue, hath only death for her best consolation." So saying, she drew a poniard from beneath her robe, and instantly plunging it into her bosom, expired without a groan. The whole company remained for some time fixed in terror, pity, and indignation; Spurius and Collatinus at length gave a vent to their tears, but Brutus drawing the poniard reeking from Lucretia's wound, and lifting it up towards heaven, "Be witness, ye gods," he cried, "that from this moment I proclaim myself the avenger of the chaste Lucretia's cause; from this moment I profess myself the enemy of Tarquin and his lustful house; from henceforth this life, while life continues, shall be employed in opposition to tyranny, and for the happiness and freedom of my much loved country." A new amazement seized the hearers, to find him, whom they had hitherto considered as an idiot, now appearing in his real character, the friend of justice, and of Rome. He told them that tears and lamentations were unmanly, when vengeance called so loud; and delivering the poniard to the rest imposed the same oath upon them which he himself had just taken.

Junius Brutus was the son of Marcus Junius, a noble Roman, who was married to the daughter of Tarquinius Priscus ; and for that reason, through a motive of jealousy, was put to death by Tarquin the proud. This Junius Brutus had received an excellent education from his father, and had, from nature, strong sense, and an inflexible attachment to virtue ; but perceiving that Tarquin had privately murdered his father, and his eldest brother, he counterfeited himself a fool, in order to escape the same danger, and thence obtained the surname of Brutus. Tarquin, thinking his folly real, despised the man ; and having possessed himself of his estate, kept him as an idiot about his house, merely with a view of making sport for his children.

Brutus, however, only waited this opportunity to avenge the cause of his family. Wherefore, ordering Lucretia's dead body to be brought out to view, and exposed in the public Forum, he inflamed the ardour of the citizens, by a display of the horrid transaction. He obtained a decree of the senate, that Tarquin and his family should be for ever banished from Rome, and that it should be capital for any to plead for, or attempt his future return. Thus, this monarch, who had now reigned twenty-five years, being expelled his kingdom, went to take refuge with his family at Circe, a little town of Etruria. In the mean time the Roman army made a truce with the enemy, and Brutus was declared deliverer of the people.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Servius ? In what manner did Tarquin support his usurped authority ? What stratagem did he contrive to gain the city of the Gauls ? With what nations did he make leagues ? Against whom did he declare war ? What took place while the army were encamped before Ardea ? How did Sextus accomplish his base purpose ? In what manner did Lucretia afterwards act ? What oath did Brutus take ? How did he inflame the ardour of the citizens ? What decree did the senate pass ? What became of Tarquin ? What honour was conferred on Brutus ?

## CHAPTER VI.

*From the Banishment of Tarquin to the Appointment of the First Dictator.*

The regal power being overthrown, a U. C. 245. form of government, nominally republican, was substituted in its room. The senate, however, reserved by far the greatest share of the authority to themselves, and decorated their own body with all the spoils of deposed monarchy. The centuries of the people chose from among the senators, instead of a king, two annual magistrates (whom they called Consuls, with power equal to that of the regal, and with the same privileges, and the same ensigns of authority.

Brutus, the deliverer of his country, and Collatinus the husband of Lucretia, were chosen first consuls in Rome.

But this new republic, however, which seemed so grateful to the people, had like to have been destroyed in its very commencement. A party was formed in Rome in favour of Tarquin. Some young men of the principal families in the state, who had been educated about the king, and had shared in all the luxuries and pleasures of the court, undertook to re-establish monarchy. This party secretly increased every day; and what may increase our surprise, the sons of Brutus himself and the Acquilii, the nephews of Collatinus, were among the number. Tarquin, who was informed of these intrigues in his favour, sent ambassadors from Etruria to Rome, under a pretence of reclaiming the crown, but in reality, with a design to give spirit to his faction. But the whole conspiracy was discovered by a slave who had accidentally hid himself in the room where the conspirators used to assemble. Few situations could have been more terribly affecting than that of Brutus, a father, placed as a judge upon the life and death of his own children, impelled by justice to condemn, and by nature to spare them. The young men accused, pleaded nothing for themselves, but with conscious guilt, awaited their sentence in silence and agony. The other judges who were present, felt all the pangs of nature;

Collatinus wept, and Valerius could not repress his sentiments of pity. Brutus alone, seemed to have lost all the softness of humanity, and with a stern countenance, and a tone of voice that marked his gloomy resolution, demanded of his sons, if they could make any defence to the crimes with which they had been charged. 'This demand he made three several times: but receiving no answer, he at length turned himself to the executioner. "Now," cried he, "it is your part to perform the rest." Thus saying, he resumed his seat with an air of determined majesty; nor could all the sentiments of paternal pity, nor all the imploring looks of the people, nor yet the complaints of the young men who were preparing for execution, alter the tenor of his resolution. The executioners having stript them naked, and then whipped them with rods, presently after beheaded them; Brutus all the time beholding the cruel spectacle with a steady look and unaltered countenance, while the multitude gazed on with all the sensations of pity, terror, and admiration.

All Tarquin's hopes of an insurrection in the city in his favour being thus overthrown, he was now resolved to force himself upon his former throne by foreign assistance, and to that end prevailed upon the Veians to assist him, and with a considerable army advanced towards Rome.

U. C. 246. The consuls were not remiss in preparations to oppose him. Valerius commanded the foot, and Brutus being appointed to head the cavalry, went out to meet him on the Roman borders.—Aruns, the son of Tarquin, who commanded the cavalry for his father, seeing Brutus at a distance, was resolved, by one great attempt, to decide the fate of the day before the engaging of the armies, wherefore, spurring on his horse, he made towards him with ungovernable fury. Brutus, who perceived his approach, came out of the ranks to meet him, and both encountered with such rage, that eager only to assail, and thoughtless of defending, they both fell dead upon the field together. A bloody battle ensued, with equal slaughter on both sides; but the Romans remaining in possession of the field of bat-

tle, claimed the victory; in consequence Valerius returned in triumph to Rome.

In the mean time, Tarquin, no way intimidated by his misfortunes, prevailed upon Porsenna, one of the kings of Etruria, to espouse his cause, and he in person undertook his quarrel. This prince equally noted for courage and conduct, marched directly to Rome with a numerous army, and laid siege to the city, while the terror of his name, and his arms, filled all ranks of people with dismay. The siege was carried on with vigour; a furious attack was made upon the place; the two consuls opposed in vain, and were carried off wounded from the field; while the Romans, flying in great consternation, were pursued by the enemy to the bridge over which both victors and vanquished were about to enter the city in confusion. All now appeared lost and over, when Horatius Cocles, who had been placed there as a sentinel to defend it, opposed himself to the torrent of the enemy, and assisted only by two more, for some time sustained the whole fury of the assault, till the bridge was broken down behind him: when he found the communication thus cut off, plunging with his arms into the Tiber, he swam over victorious to his fellow-soldiers, and was received with just applause.

Still, however, Porsenna was determined upon taking the city; and though five hundred of his men were slain in a sally of the Romans, he reduced it to the greatest straits; and turning the siege into a blockade, resolved to take it by famine. The distress of the besieged soon began to be insufferable, and all things promised a speedy surrender, when another act of fierce bravery, still superior to that which had saved the city before, again procured its safety and freedom.

Mutius, a youth of undaunted courage, was resolved to rid his country of an enemy that continued so sorely to oppress it: and for this purpose, disguised in the habit of an Etrurian peasant, he entered the camp of the enemy, resolving to die or kill the king. With this resolution he made up to the place where Porsenna was paying his troops, with a secretary by his side; but mis-

taking the latter for the king, he stabbed him to the heart, and was immediately apprehended, and brought back into the royal presence. Upon Porsenna's demanding who he was, and the cause of so heinous an action, Mutius, without reserve, informed him of his country, and his design, and at the same time thrusting his right hand into the fire that was burning upon an altar before him, "You see, cried he, " how little I regard the severest punishment your cruelty can inflict upon me. A Roman knows not only how to act, but to suffer: I am not the only person you have to fear; three hundred Roman youths, like me, have conspired your destruction; therefore prepare for their attempts." Porsenna, amazed at so much intrepidity, had too noble a mind, not to acknowledge merit though found in an enemy; he therefore ordered him to be safely conducted back to Rome, and offered the besieged conditions of peace. These were readily accepted on their side, being neither hard nor disgraceful, except that twenty hostages were demanded; ten young men, and as many virgins, of the best families in Rome. On this occasion the gentler sex seemed resolved to be sharers in the desperate valour of the times; Clelia, one of the hostages, escaping from her guards, and pointing out the way to the rest of her female companions, swam over the Tiber on horseback, amidst showers of darts from the enemy, and presented herself to the consul. This magistrate, fearing the consequences of detaining her, had her sent back; upon which Porsenna, not to be outdone in generosity, not only gave her liberty, but permitted her to chuse such of the hostages of the opposite sex, as she should think fit to attend her. On her part, she, with all the modesty of a Roman virgini, chose only such as were under manhood, alledging that their tender age was least capable of sustaining the rigours of slavery.

Tarquin, by means of his son-in-law Manlius, once more stirred up the Latins to espouse his interest, and took the most convenient opportunity, when the plebeians were at variance with the senators concerning the payment of their debts. These refused to go to war, unless their debts were remitted upon their return; so

that the consuls, finding their authority insufficient, offered to elect a temporary magistrate, who should have absolute power, not only over all ranks of state, but even over the laws themselves. To this the plebeians readily consented, willing to give up their own power for the sake of abridging that of their superiors. In consequence of this, Largius was created the first Dictator of Rome; for so was this high office called, being nominated to it by his colleague in the consulship. Thus the people, who could not bear to hear the name of a king even mentioned, readily submitted to a magistrate possessed of much greater power: so much do the names of things mislead us, and so little is any form of government irksome to a people when it coincides with their prejudices.

### *Exercises.*

What form of government was now established? Who were chosen first consuls? By whom was a conspiracy formed against the new republic? What took place on their trial? By whom was sentence pronounced? What means did Tarquin employ to re-gain possession of the throne? Who commanded the Roman army? By whom was Brutus slain? Who gained the victory? Whom did Tarquin prevail upon next to assist him? What active measures did Porsenna adopt? How did Horatius Cocles discover his valour? Who at length relieved the distresses of the Romans? In what manner did Mutius accomplish this? How did he act after being discovered? What effect did his intrepidity produce on Porsenna? On what terms was peace concluded? In what manner did Clelia act? Whom did Tarquin next stir up to espouse his cause? Who was elected first Dictator?



## CHAPTER VIII.

### *From the Creation of the First Dictator, to the Election of the Tribunes of the People.*

Largius being now created dictator, entered upon his office, surrounded with his lic- U. C. 255.  
tors, and all the ensigus of ancient royalty, and seated upon a throne in the midst of the people, ordered the levies to be made in the manner of the kings of Rome.— The populace looked with terror upon a magistrate whom they had invested with uncontrolable power, and peaceably went each to range himself under his respective

standard. Thus going forth to oppose the enemy, he returned with his army, and before six months were expired, laid down the dictatorship, with the reputation of having exercised it with blameless lenity.

But, though for this time, the people submitted to be led forth, yet they were resolved at last to free themselves from the yoke of their severe masters; and though they could not get their complaints redressed, yet they determined to fly from those whom they could not move to compassion. The complaints therefore continuing, they resolved to quit a city which gave them no shelter, and to form a new establishment without its limits.— They, therefore, under the conduct of a plebeian, named Sicinius Bellutus, retired to a mountain, from thence called the Mons Sacer, on the banks of the river Anio, within about three miles of Rome.

Upon the news of this defection, the city was filled with tumult and consternation; those who wished well to the army, made all the attempts they could to scale the walls in order to join it. The senate was not less agitated than the rest; some were for violent measures, and repelling force by force; others were of opinion that gentler arts were to be used, and that even a victory over such enemies would be worse than a defeat. At length, therefore, it was resolved to send a messenger, entreating the army to return home and declare their grievances, promising at the same time an oblivion of all that had passed.

This message not succeeding, Menenius Agrippa, one of the wisest and best of the senators, was of opinion that the desires of the people were to be complied with.

It was resolved, therefore, to enter into a treaty with them, and to make them such offers as should induce them to return. Ten commissioners were accordingly deputed, at the head of whom were Largius and Valerius, who had been dictators, and Menenius Agrippa, equally beloved, by the senate and the people. The dignity and popularity of these ambassadors procured them a very respectable reception among the soldiers, and a long conference began between them. Largius and Valerius employed all their oratory on the one hand,



while Sicinius and Lucius Junius, who were the spokesmen of the soldiery, aggravated their distress with all that masculine eloquence which is the child of nature. The conference had now continued for a long time, when Menenius Agrippa, who had been originally a plebeian himself, a shrewd man, and who consequently knew what kind of eloquence was most likely to please the people, addressed them with that celebrated fable, which is so finely told us by Livy. "In times of old, when every part of the body could think for itself, and each had a separate will of its own, they all, with common consent, resolved to revolt against the belly : they knew no reason, they said, why they should toil from morning to night in its service, while the belly in the mean time lay at its ease in the midst of them all, and indolently grew fat upon their labours ; accordingly, one and all, they agreed to befriend it no more. The feet vowed they would carry it no longer ; the hands vowed they would feed it no longer ; and the teeth averred they would not chew a morsel of meat though it were placed between them. Thus resolved, they all for some time shewed their spirit, and kept their word ; but soon they found that, instead of mortifying the belly by these means, they only mndid themselves ; they languished for a while and perceived when too late, that it was owing to the belly that they had strength to work, or courage to mutiny."

This fable, the application of which is obvious, had an instantaneous effect upon the people. They unanimously cried out, that Agrippa should lead them back to Rome ; and were making preparations to follow him, when Lucius Junius, before mentioned, with-held them ; alledging, that though they were gratefully to acknowledge the kind offers of the senate, yet they had no safe guard for the future against their resentment ; that therefore it was necessary, for the security of the people, to have certain officers created annually from among themselves, who should have power to give such of them as should be injured, redress, and plead the cause of the community.

The people, who are ever of opinion with the last

speaker, highly applauded this proposal, which yet the commissioners had not power to comply with; they therefore sent to Rome to take the instructions of the senate, who, torn with divisions among themselves, and harassed by complaints from without, were resolved to have peace, at whatsoever price it should be obtained; accordingly as if with one voice, they consented to the creation of the new officers, who were called Tribunes of the people, Appius alone protesting with vehemence against the measure.

The tribunes of the people were at first five in number, though afterwards their body was increased by five more. They were always annually elected by the people, and almost always from their body. They at first had their seats placed before the doors of the senate-house, and being called in, they were to examine every decree, annulling it by the word *VERO*, I forbid it; or confirming it by signing the letter *T*, which gave it its validity. This new office being thus instituted, Sicinius Bellutus, Lucius Junius, Caius and Publius Licinius, and Icilius Ruge, were the first tribunes chosen by the suffrages of the people. The senate also made an edict confirming the abolition of debts; and now all things being adjusted, both on the one side and the other, the people, after having sacrificed to the gods of the mountain, returned once more in triumph to Rome.

### *Exercises.*

In what manner did Largius exercise his authority? How long did he continue in the office? What steps did the army take to re-gain freedom? Who was their leader? To what place did they retire? What attempts were made to conciliate them? Who were at the head of the commission? Who were the spokesmen of the soldiery? By what means did Agrippa at length succeed? What proposal did Lucius Junius make? Did the senate comply with their desire? Of what number did the tribunes of the people consist? What were their powers? Who were the tribunes first chosen?

## CHAPTER IX.

### *From the Creation of the Tribunes, to the Appointment of the Decemviri.*

**U. C. 260.** During the late separation; all tillage had been entirely neglected, and a famine was

the consequence in the ensuing season. The senate did all that lay in their power to remedy the distress; but the people, pinched with want, and willing to throw the blame on any but themselves, ascribed the whole of their distress to the avarice of the patricians, who having purchased all the corn, as was alledged, intended to indemnify themselves for the abolition of debts, by selling it out to great advantage. But abundance soon after appeared them for a time. A large fleet of ships laden with corn from Sicily (a great part of which was a present from Gelon, the king of that country, to the Romans, and the rest purchased by the senate with the public money) raised their spirits once more.

But Coriolanus incurred their resentment, by insisting that it should not be distributed till the grievances of the senate were removed. For this the tribunes summoned him to a trial before the people.

When the appointed day was come, all persons were filled with the greatest expectations, and a vast concourse from the adjacent country assembled, and filled up the Forum. Coriolanus upon this presented himself before the people, with a degree of intrepidity that merited better fortune. His graceful person, his persuasive eloquence, the cries of those whom he had saved from the enemy, inclined the auditors to relent. But being unable to answer what was alledged against him, to the satisfaction of the people, and utterly confounded with a new charge of having embezzled the plunder of Antium, the tribunes immediately took the votes, and Coriolanus was condemned to perpetual exile.

This sentence against their bravest defender struck the whole body of the senate with sorrow, consternation, and regret. Coriolanus alone, in the midst of the tumult, seemed an unconcerned spectator. He returned home, followed by the lamentations of hundreds of the most respectable senators and citizens of Rome, to take a lasting leave of his wife, his children, and his mother Veturia. Thus recommending his little children to their care, and all to the care of heaven, he left the city, without followers or fortune, to take refuge with Tullus Attius, a man of great power among the Volscians,

who took him under his protection, and espoused his quarrel.

The first thing to be done, was to induce the Volsci to break the league which had been made with Rome; and for this purpose Tullus sent many of his citizens thither, in order to see some games at that time celebrating; but in the mean time gave the senate private information that the strangers had dangerous intentions of burning the city. This had the desired effect; the senate issued an order, that all strangers, whoever they were, should depart from Rome before sun-set. This order, Tullus represented to his countrymen as an infraction of the treaty, and procured an embassy to Rome complaining of the breach, and re-demanding all the territories belonging to the Volscians of which they had been violently dispossessed, declaring war in case of refusal; but this message was treated by the senate with contempt.

War being thus declared on both sides, Coriolanus and Tullus were made generals of the Volscians, and accordingly invaded the Roman territories, ravaging and laying waste all such lands as belonged to the plebeians, and letting those of the senators remain untouched. In the mean time, the levies went on but slowly at Rome. The two consuls, who were re-elected by the people, seemed but little skilled in war, and even feared to encounter a general, whom they knew to be their superior in the field. The allies also shewed their fears, and slowly brought in their succours; so that Coriolanus continued taking their towns one after the other. Fortune followed him in every expedition; and he was now so famous for his victories, that the Volsci left their towns defenceless to follow him into the field. The very soldiers of his colleague's army came over to him, and would acknowledge no other general. Thus finding himself unopposed in the field, and at the head of a numerous army, he at length invested the city of Rome itself, fully resolved to besiege it. It was then that the senate and the people unanimously agreed to send deputies to him with proposals of restoration, in case he should draw off his army. Coriolanus received their proposals

at the head of his principal officers, and with the sternness of a general that was to give the law, refused their offers.

Another embassy was now sent forth, conjuring him not to exact from his native city aught but what became Romans to grant; Coriolanus, however, naturally inflexible and severe, still persisted in his former demands, and granted them but three days, in which to finish their deliberations. In this exigence, all that was left was another deputation still more solemn than that of the former, composed of the pontiffs, the priests, and the augurs. These, clothed in their habits of ceremony, and with a grave and mournful deportment, issued from the city, and entered the camp of the conqueror; but all in vain; they found him severe and inflexible as before.

When the people saw them return ineffectually, they began to give up the commonwealth as lost. Their temples were filled with old men, with women and children, who, prostrate at their altars, put up their ardent prayers for the preservation of their country. Nothing was to be heard but anguish and lamentation; nothing to be seen but scenes of affright and distress. At length it was suggested to them, that what could not be effected by the intercession of the senate, or the adjuration of the priests, might be brought about by the tears of his wife, or the commands of his mother. This deputation seemed to be relished by all: and even the senate itself gave it the sanction of their authority. Veturia, the mother of Coriolanus, at first made some hesitation to undertake so pious a work, knowing the inflexible temper of her son, and fearing that he would only shew his disobedience in a new point of light, by rejecting the commands of a parent: however, she at last undertook the embassy, and set forward from the city, accompanied by many of the principal matrons of Rome, with Volturnia his wife, and his two children. Coriolanus, who at a distance beheld this mournful train of females, was resolved to give them a denial, and called his officers round him to be witnesses of his resolution; but, when told that his mother and his wife were among the number, he instantly came down from his tribunal to meet and embrace them.

At first the tears and embraces of the women took away the power of words; and the rough soldier himself, hard as he was, could not refrain from sharing in their distress. Coriolanus now seemed much agitated by contending passions; while his mother, who saw him moved, seconded her words by the most persuasive eloquence, her tears; his wife and children hung round him, entreating protection and pity; while the fair train, her companions, added their lamentations, and deplored their own and their country's distress. Coriolanus for a moment was silent, feeling the strong conflict between honour and inclination; at length, as if roused from his dream he flew to take up his mother, who had fallen at his feet, crying out "O my mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son." He accordingly gave orders to draw off the army, pretending to the officers, that the city was too strong to be taken. Tullus, who had long envied his glory, was not remiss in aggravating the lenity of his conduct to his countrymen. Upon their return, Coriolanus was slain in an insurrection of the people, and afterwards honourably buried, with late and ineffectual repentance.

Great and many were the public rejoicings at Rome upon the retreat of the Volsian army; but they were clouded soon after by the intrigues of Spurius Cassius, who, wanting to make himself despotic by means of the people, was found guilty of a number of crimes, all tending towards altering the constitution, and was thrown headlong from the Tarpeian rock, by those very people whose interests he had endeavoured to extend.

The year following, the two consuls of the former year Manlius and Fabius, were cited by the tribunes to appear before the people. The Agrarian law, which had been proposed some time before, for equally dividing the lands of the commonwealth among the people, was the object invariably pursued, and they were accused of having made unjustifiable delays in putting it off.

It seems, the Agrarian law, was a grant the senate could not think of making to the people. The consuls, therefore, made many delays and excuses, till at length they were once more obliged to have recourse to a dictator, and they fixed upon Quintus Cincinnatus, a man who had for some time given up all views of ambition,

and retired to his little farm, where the deputies of the senate found him holding the plough, and dressed in the mean attire of a labouring husbandman. He appeared but little elevated with the addresses of ceremony, and the pompous habits they brought him; and, upon declaring to him the senate's pleasure, he testified rather a concern that his aid should be wanted: he naturally preferred the charms of a country retirement to the fatiguing splendours of office, and only said to his wife, as they were leading him away. "I fear, my Racilla, that for this year, our little fields must remain unsown. Thus, taking a tender leave, he departed for the city, where both parties were strongly inflamed against each other. However he was resolved to side with neither: but by a strict attention to the interests of his country, instead of gaining the confidence of faction, to command the esteem of all. Thus, by threats and well timed submission, he prevailed upon the tribunes to put off their law for a time, and carried himself so as to be a terror to the multitude, whenever they refused to enlist; and their greatest encourager whenever their submission deserved it. Thus having restored that tranquillity to the people, which he so much loved himself, he again gave up the splendours of ambition, to enjoy it with a greater relish in his little farm.

Cincinnatus was not long retired from his office, when a fresh exigence of the state U. C. 295. once more required his assistance: the Æqui and the Volsci, who, though still worsted, still were for renewing the war, made new inroads into the territories of Rome. Minutius, one of the consuls who succeeded Cincinnatus, was sent to oppose them; but being naturally timid, and rather more afraid of being conquered than desirous of victory, his army was driven into a defile between two mountains, from which, except through the enemy, there was no egress. This, however, the Æqui had the precaution to fortify, by which the Roman army was so hemmed in on every side, that nothing remained but submission to the enemy, famine, or immediate death.—Some knights who found means of getting away private-

ly through the enemy's camp, were the first that brought the account of this disaster to Rome. Nothing could exceed the consternation of all ranks of people, when informed of it; the senate at first thought of the other consul; but not having sufficient experience of his abilities, they unanimously turned their eyes upon Cincinnatus, and resolved to make him dictator. Cincinnatus, the only person on whom Rome could now place her sole dependence, was found, as before, by the messengers of the senate, labouring in his little field with cheerful industry. He was at first astonished at the ensigns of unbounded power, with which the deputies came to invest him: but still more at the approach of the principal senators, who came out to meet him. A dignity so unlooked for, however had no effect upon the simplicity or the integrity of his manners; and being now possessed of absolute power, and called upon to nominate his master of the horse, he chose a poor man named Tarquinius, one who, like himself, despised riches when they led to dishonour. Thus the saving of a great nation was devolved upon a husbandman taken from the plough, and an obscure centinel, found among the dregs of the army. Upon entering the city, the dictator put on a serene look and entreated all those who were able to bear arms, to repair before sunset to the Campus Martius, (the place where the levies were made) with necessary arms and provisions for five days. He put himself at the head of these, and marching all night with great expedition, he arrived before day in sight of the enemy. Upon his approach he ordered his soldiers to raise a loud shout, to apprize the consul's army of the relief that was at hand. The *Æqui* were not a little amazed when they saw themselves between two enemies, but still more, when they perceived Cincinnatus making the strongest entrenchments beyond them to prevent their escape, and inclosing them as they had inclosed the consul. To prevent this a furious combat ensued: but the *Æqui* being attacked on both sides, and unable to resist or flee, begged a cessation of arms. They offered the dictator his own terms: he gave them their lives; but obliged them, in token of servitude, to pass under the yoke, which



was two spears set upright, and another across, in the form of a gallows, beneath which the vanquished were to march. Their captains and generals he made prisoners of war, reserving them to adorn his triumph. As for the plunder of the enemy's camp, that he gave entirely up to his own soldiers; without reserving any part for himself, or permitting those of the delivered army to have a share. Thus having rescued a Roman army from inevitable destruction, having defeated a powerful enemy, having taken and fortified their city, and still more, having refused any part of the spoil, he resigned his dictatorship, after having enjoyed it but fourteen days. The senate would have enriched him, but he declined their offers, chusing to retire to his farm and his cottage, content with temperance and fame.

But this repose from foreign invasion did not lessen the tumults of the city within. The clamours for the Agrarian law still continued, and still more fiercely, when Siccus Dentatus, a plebeian, advanced in years, but of an admirable person and military deportment, came forward to enumerate his hardships and his merits. This old soldier made no scruple of extolling the various achievements of his youth: but indeed his merits supported ostentation. He had served his country in the wars forty years; he had been an officer thirty, first a centurion, and then a tribune; he had fought one hundred and twenty battles; in which by the force of his single arm, he saved a multitude of lives; he had gained fourteen civic, three mural, eight golden crowns, besides eighty-three chains, sixty bracelets, eighteen gilt spears, and twenty-three horse trappings, whereof nine were for killing the enemy in single combat; moreover, he had received forty-five wounds, all before, and none behind. These were his honours; yet notwithstanding all this, he had never received any share of those lands which were won from the enemy, but continued to drag on a life of poverty and contempt, while others were possessed of those very territories which his valour had won, without any merit to deserve them, or ever having contributed to the conquest. A case of so much hardship had a strong

effect upon the multitude: they unanimously demanded that the law might be passed, and that such merit should not go unrewarded. It was in vain that some of the chief senators rose up to speak against it; their voices were drowned by the cries of the people. When reason therefore could no longer be heard, passion as usual, succeeded; and the young patricians running furiously into the throng, broke the balloting urns, and dispersed the multitude that offered to oppose them. For this they were some time after fined by the tribunes, but their resolution, nevertheless, for the present put off the Agrarian law.

### *Exercises.*

What calamity took place the ensuing season? How did Coriolanus incur the resentment of the Tribunes? What sentence was passed upon him? With whom did Coriolanus take refuge? By what means did Tullus break the league with Rome? What success attended Coriolanus? What took place when he invested Rome? How did he receive the embassies sent to him? In what language did he address his mother? What became of Coriolanus? Who was appointed Dictator? How did Cincinnatus act after restoring tranquillity? Who carried on war with the Romans at this time? Who relieved Minutius from his dangerous situation? What terms did Cincinnatus grant the Æqui? How did Sicius Dentatus afterwards act?



## CHAPTER X.

### *From the Creation of the Decemviri, to the Extinction of that Office.*

#### SECTION I.

U. C. 302. The commonwealth of Rome had now for near sixty years been fluctuating between the contending orders that composed it, till at length, each side as if weary, were willing to respire a while from the pursuit of their respective claims. The citizens, now, therefore, of every rank, began to complain of the arbitrary decisions of their magistrates, and wish-

ed to be guided by a written body of laws, which, being known, might prevent wrongs, as well as punish them. In this, both the senate and the people concurred, as hoping that such laws would put an end to the commotions that so long had harassed the state. It was thereupon agreed that ambassadors should be sent to the Greek cities in Italy, and to Athens, to bring home such laws from thence as, by experience, had been found most equitable and useful. For this purpose three senators, Posthumius, Sulpicius, and Manlius, were fixed upon, and galleys assigned to convoy them agreeable to the majesty of the Roman people. While they were upon this commission abroad, a dreadful plague depopulated the city at home, and supplied the interval of their absence with other anxiety than that of wishes for their return. In about a year the plague ceased, and the ambassadors returned, bringing home a body of laws, collected from the most civilized states of Greece and Italy, which being afterwards formed into ten tables, and two more being added, made that celebrated code, called the laws of the Twelve Tables, many fragments of which remain to this day.

The ambassadors were no sooner returned, than the tribunes required that a body of men should be chosen to digest their new laws into proper form, and to give weight to the execution of them. After long debates whether this choice should not be partly made from the people as well as the patricians, it was at last agreed that ten of the principal senators should be elected, whose power continuing for a year, should be equal to that of kings and consuls, and that without any appeal. The persons chosen were Appius and Gentutius, who had been elected consuls for the ensuing year: Posthumius, Sulpicius and Manlius, the three ambassadors; Sextus and Romulus, former consuls; with Julius, Veturius, and Horatius, senators of the first consideration. Thus the whole constitution of the state at once took a new form, and a dreadful experiment was going to be tried of governing one nation by laws formed from the manners and customs of another.

The Decemviri being now invested with absolute

power, agreed to take the reins of government by turns, and that each should dispense justice for a day.

These magistrates, for the first year, wrought with extreme application ; and their works being finished, it was expected that they would be contented to give up their offices : but having known the charms of power, they were now unwilling to resign it, they therefore pretended, that some laws were yet wanting to complete their design, and entreated the senate for a continuance of their offices, to which that body assented.

But they soon threw off the mask of moderation, and regardless either of the approbation of the senate or the people, resolved to continue themselves against all order in the decemvirate. A conduct so notorious soon produced discontents, and these were as sure to produce fresh acts of tyranny. The city was become almost a desert, with respect to all who had any thing to lose, and the rapacity of the decemviri was then only discontinued, when they wanted fresh objects to exercise it upon. In this state of slavery, proscription, and mutual distrust, not one citizen was found to strike for his country's freedom : these tyrants continued to reign without control, being constantly guarded, not with their lictors alone, but a numerous crowd of dependents, clients, and even patricians, whom their vices had confederated round them.

In this gloomy situation of the state, the *Æqui* and *Volsci*, those constant enemies of the Romans, undertook their incursions, resolving to profit by the intestine divisions of the people, and advanced within about ten miles of Rome.

But the decemviri being put in possession of all the military, as well as of the civil power ; divided their army into three parts, whereof one continued with *Appius* in the city to keep it in awe ; the other two were commanded by his colleagues, and were led, one against the *Æqui*, and the other against the *Sabines*. The Roman soldiers had now got into a method of punishing the generals whom they disliked, by suffering themselves to be vanquished in the field. They put it in practice upon this occasion, and shamefully abandoned their camp

upon the approach of the enemy. Never was the news of a victory more joyfully received at Rome, than the tidings of this defeat; the generals, as is always the case, were blamed for the treachery of their men; some demanded that they should be deposed, others cried out for a dictator to lead the troops to conquest; but among the rest, old Siccus Dentatus, the tribune, spoke his sentiments with his usual openness, and treating the generals with contempt, shewed all the faults of their discipline in the camp, and their conduct in the field. Appius, in the mean time, was not remiss in observing the dispositions of the people. Dentatus, in particular, was marked out for vengeance, and under pretence of doing him particular honour, he was appointed legate, and put at the head of the supplies, which were sent from Rome to reinforce the army. The office of legate was held sacred among the Romans, as in it were united the authority of a general, with the reverence due to the priesthood. Dentatus, no way suspecting his design, went to the camp with alacrity, where he was received with all the external marks of respect. But the generals soon found means of indulging their desire of revenge. He was appointed at the head of one hundred men, to go and examine a more commodious place for encampment, as he had very candidly assured the commanders that their present situation was wrong. The soldiers, however, who were given as his attendants, were assassins; wretches who had long been ministers of the vengeance of the decemviri, and who now engaged to murder him, though with all those apprehensions which his reputation, as he was called the Roman Achilles, might be supposed to inspire. With this design, they led him from the way into the hollowed bosom of a retired mountain, where they began to set upon him from behind. Dentatus now, too late, perceived the treachery of the decemviri, and was resolved to sell his life as dearly as he could; he therefore put his back to a rock, and defended himself against those who pressed most closely.— Though now grown old, he had still the remains of his former valour, and killed no less than fifteen of the assailants, and wounded thirty with his own hand. The

assassins now, therefore, terrified at his amazing bravery, showered in their javelins upon him at distance, all which he received in his shield with undaunted resolution. The combat, though unequal in numbers, was managed for some time with doubtful success, till at last his assailants bethought themselves of ascending the rock against which he stood, and thus poured down stones upon him from above. This succeeded, the old soldier fell beneath their united efforts, after having shown by his death, that he owed it to his fortitude, and not his fortune, that he had come off so many times victorious. The decemviri pretended to join in the general sorrow for so brave a man, and decreed him a funeral with the first military honours; but the greatness of their apparent distress, compared with their known hatred, only rendered them still more detestable to the people.

But a transaction still more atrocious than the former, served to inspire the citizens with a resolution to break all measures of obedience, and at last to restore freedom. Appius, who still remained at Rome, sitting one day on his tribunal to dispense justice, saw a maiden of exquisite beauty, and aged about fifteen, passing to one of the public schools, attended by a matron, her nurse. The charms of the damsel, heightened by all the innocence of virgin modesty, caught his attention, and fired his heart. The day following, as she passed, he found her still more beautiful than before, and his breast still more inflamed. He now, therefore, resolved to obtain the gratification of his passion, whatever should be the consequence, and found means to inform himself of the virgin's name and family. Her name was Virginia. She was the daughter of Virginus, a centurion, then with the army in the field, and had been contracted to Icilius, formerly a tribune of the people, who had agreed to marry her at the end of the present campaign. Appius at first resolved to break this match, and to espouse her himself; but the laws of the Twelve Tables had forbidden the patricians to intermarry with the plebeians; and he could not infringe these, as he was the enactor of them. Nothing therefore remained, but a criminal enjoyment,

which, as he was long used to the indulgence of his passions, he resolved to obtain. After having vainly tried to corrupt the fidelity of her nurse, he had recourse to another expedient still more guilty. He pitched upon one Claudius, who had long been the minister of his pleasures, to assert the beautiful maid was his slave, and to refer the cause to his tribunal for decision. Claudius behaved exactly according to his instructions: for entering the school where Virginia was playing among her female companions, he seized upon her as his property, and was going to drag her away by force, but was prevented by the people, drawn together by her cries. At length, after the first heat of opposition was over, he led the weeping virgin to the tribunal of Appius, and there plausibly exposed his pretensions. He asserted that she was born in his house of a female slave, who sold her to the wife of Virginius, who had been barren; that he had several credible evidences to prove the truth of what he said; but that, until they should come together, it was but reasonable the slave should be delivered into his custody, being her proper master. Appius seemed to be struck with the justice of his claims; he observed, that if the reputed father himself were present, he might indeed be willing to delay the delivery of the maiden for some time, but that it was not lawful for him in the present case to detain her from her lawful master. He therefore adjudged her to Claudius, as his slave, to be kept by him till Virginius should be able to prove his paternity. The sentence was received with loud clamours and reproaches by the multitude; the women in particular came round the innocent Virginia, as if willing to protect her from the judge's fury, while Icilius, her lover, boldly opposed the decree, and obliged Claudius to take refuge under the tribunal of the decemvir. All things now threatened an open insurrection: when Appius, fearing the event, thought proper to suspend his judgment till the arrival of Virginius, who was then about eleven miles from Rome with the army. The day following was fixed for the trial; and in the mean time Appius sent letters to the generals to confine Virginius, as his

arrival in town might only serve to kindle sedition among the people.

These letters, however, were intercepted by the centurion's friends, who sent him down a full relation of the design laid against the liberty and honour of his only daughter. Virginus, upon this, pretending the death of a near relation, got permission to leave the camp, and flew to Rome, inspired with indignation and revenge. Accordingly, the next day he appeared before the tribunal, to the astonishment of Appius, leading his weeping daughter by the hand, both habited in the deepest mourning. Claudius the accuser was also there, and began by making his demand. Virginus next spoke in turn; he represented that his wife had many children; that she had been seen pregnant by numbers; that if he had intentions of adopting a suppositious child, he would have fixed upon a boy rather than a girl; that it was notorious to all that his wife had herself suckled her own child; and that it was surprising such a claim should be now revived after a fifteen years discontinuance. While the father spoke this with a stern air, Virginia stood trembling by, and with looks of persuasive innocence, added weight to all his remonstrances. The people seemed entirely satisfied of the hardships of his case, till Appius, fearing what he said might have dangerous effects upon the multitude, interrupted him, under a pretence of being sufficiently instructed in the merits of the cause. "Yes," says he, "my conscience obliges me to declare, that I myself am a witness to the truth of the deposition of Claudius. Most of this assembly know that I was left guardian to this youth, and I was very early apprised that he had a right to this young woman; but the affairs of the public and the dissensions of the people, then prevented me doing him justice. However, it is not now too late; and by the power vested in me for the public good, I adjudge Virginia to be the property of Claudius, the plaintiff. Go therefore lictors, disperse the multitude, and make room for a master to repossess himself of his slave." The lictors, in obedience to his command, soon drove off the throng that pressed round the tribunal; and now they seized upon Virginia,



and were delivering her into the hands of Claudius, when Virginus, who found that all was over, seemed to acquiesce in the sentence. He therefore mildly entreated Appius to be permitted to take a last farewell of one whom he had long considered as his child, and so satisfied, he would return to his duty with fresh alacrity.—With this the decemvir complied, but upon condition that their endearments should pass in his presence. Virginus, with the most poignant anguish, took his almost expiring daughter in his arms, for a while supported her head upon his breast, and wiped away the tears which rolled down her lovely visage; and happening to be near the shops which surrounded the Forum, he snatched up a knife that lay on the shambles, and addressing his daughter, “My dearest, lost child, cried he, “this, this alone can preserve your honour and your freedom.” So saying, he buried the weapon in her breast, and then holding it up reeking with the blood of his daughter,—“Appius,” he cried, “by this blood of innocence I devote thy head to the infernal gods.” Thus saying, with the bloody knife in his hand, and threatening destruction to whomsoever should oppose him, he ran through the city, wildly calling upon the people to strike for freedom, and from thence went to the camp, in order to spread a like flame there.

He no sooner arrived at the camp followed by a number of his friends, but he informed the army of all that was done, still holding the bloody knife in his hand.—He asked their pardon, and the pardon of the gods for having committed so rash an action, but ascribed it all to the dreadful necessity of the times. The army, already predisposed, immediately with shouts echoed their approbation, and decamping, left their generals behind, to take their station once more upon mount Aventine, whither they had retired about forty years before. The other army, which had been sent to oppose the Sabines, seemed to feel a like resentment, and came over in large parties to join them.

Appius in the mean time, did all he could to quell the disturbances in the city; but finding the tumult incapable of control, and perceiving that his mortal enemies, Valerius and Horatius, were the most active in opposi-

tion, at first attempted to find safety by flight; nevertheless being encouraged by Oppius, who was one of his colleagues, he venture to assemble the senate, and urged the punishment of all deserters. The senate, however, were far from giving him the relief he sought for; they foresaw the dangers and miseries that threatened the state, in case of opposing the incensed army: they therefore dispatched messengers to them, offering to restore their former mode of government. To this proposal all the people joyfully assented, and the army gladly obeyed, now returning to the city, if not with the ensigns, at least with the pleasure of a triumphant entry. Appius, and Oppius, one of his colleagues, both died by their own hands in prison. The other eight decemvirs went into voluntary exile; and Claudius, the pretended master of Virginia, was driven out after them.

### *Exercises.*

For what purpose were ambassadors sent to Greece? What calamity took place in their absence? Into how many tables were the laws formed? Who were chosen to execute these? How did the Æqui and Volsci profit by these divisions? In what manner did the Roman army act? What became of the brave Dentatus? Whom did Appius seek basely to betray? How did he endeavour to prevent the arrival of Virginius? What sentence did Appius pass? How did Virginius act in this dreadful emergency? In what manner did he address Appius? What effect did this produce in the city and army? What offers did the Senate wisely make? What became of the base Appius?



### SECTION II.

U. C. 309. In the mean time these intestine tumults produced weakness within the state, and confidence in the enemy abroad. The war with the Æqui and Volsci still continued, and as each year some trifling advantages were obtained over the Romans, they at last advanced so far as to make their incursions to the very walls of Rome.—But not the courage only of the Romans seemed diminished by their conquests, but their other virtues also, particularly their justice. About this time, the inhabitants of two neighbouring cities, Ardea, and Aricia, had a contest between themselves about some lands that had been claimed by both. At length being unable to agree, they referred it to the senate and the

people of Rome. The senate had yet some of the principles of primitive justice remaining, and refused to determine the dispute. But the people readily undertook the decision ; and one Scaptius, an old man, declaring that these very lands of right belonged to Rome, they immediately voted themselves to be legal possessors, and sent home the former litigants, thoroughly convinced of their own folly, and of the Roman injustice.

The tribunes now grew more turbulent ; they proposed two laws, one to permit the plebeians to intermarry with patricians, and the other to permit them to be admitted to the consulship also. The senators received these proposals with indignation, and seemed resolved to undergo the utmost extremities, rather than submit to enact them. However, finding their resistance only increased the commotions of the state, they at last consented to pass the law concerning marriages, hoping that this concession would satisfy the people. But they were to be appeased only for a very short time ; for returning to their old custom of refusing to enlist upon the approach of an enemy, the consuls were forced to hold a private conference with the chief of the senate, where, after many debates, Claudius proposed an expedient, as the most probable means of satisfying the people in the present conjuncture. This was to create six or eight governors in the room of consuls whereof one half at least should be patricians. This project, which was in fact granting what the people demanded, pleased the whole meeting ; and it was agreed, that at the next public meeting of the senate, the consuls should, contrary to their usual custom, begin by asking the opinion of the youngest senator. Upon assembling the senate, one of the tribunes accused them of holding secret meetings, and managing dangerous designs against the people.—The consuls, on the other hand, averred their innocence, and to demonstrate their sincerity, gave any of the younger members of the house leave to propound their opinions. These remaining silent, such of the older senators as were known to be popular, began by observing, that the people ought to be indulged in their request ; that none so well deserved power as those who were most

instrumental in gaining it; and that the city could not be free until all were reduced to perfect equality. Claudius spoke next, and broke out into bitter invectives against the people, asserting that it was his opinion that the law should not pass. This produced some disturbance among the plebians; at length Genutius proposed, as had been preconcerted, that six governors should be annually chosen, with consular authority, three from the senate, and three from the people, and that when the time of their magistracy should be expired, then it would be seen whether they should have the same office continued, or whether the consulship should be established upon its former footing. This project was eagerly embraced by the people; yet so fickle were the multitude, that though many of the plebeians stood, the choice wholly fell upon the patricians, who offered themselves as candidates. These new magistrates were called Military Tribunes; they were at first but three, afterwards they were increased to four, at length to six. They had the power and ensigns of consuls; yet that power being divided among a number, each singly was of less authority. The first that were chosen only continued in office about three months, the augurs having found something amiss in the ceremonies of their election.

The military tribunes being deposed, the consuls once more came into office; and, in order to lighten the weight of business which they were obliged to sustain, a new office was created, namely that of Censors, to be chosen every fifth year. Their business was to take an estimate of the number and estates of the people, and to distribute them into their proper classes; to inspect into the lives and manners of their fellow-citizens; to degrade senators for misconduct; to dismount knights, and to turn down plebeians from their tribes into an inferior, in case of misdemeanour. The two first censors were Papyrius and Sempronius, both patricians: and from this order they continued to be elected for near an hundred years.

This new creation served to restore peace for some time among the orders; and a triumph gained over the

Volscians by Geganius the consul, added to the universal satisfaction that reigned among the people.

This calm, however, was but of short continuance; for some time after, a famine pressing hard upon the poor, the usual complaints against the rich were renewed, and these as before, proving ineffectual, produced new seditions.

The consuls were accused of neglect in not having laid in proper quantities of corn; they however disregarded the murmurs of the populace, content with exerting all their care in attempts to supply the pressing necessities. But though they did all that could be expected from active magistrates in providing and distributing provisions to the poor, yet Spurius Mælius, a rich knight, who had purchased all the corn of Tuscany, by far outshone them in liberality. This demagogue, inflamed with a secret desire of becoming powerful by the contentions in the state, distributed corn in great quantities among the poorer sort every day, till his house became the asylum of all such as wished to exchange a life of honour for one of lazy dependence. When he had thus gained a sufficient number of partisans, he procured large quantities of arms to be brought into his house by night, and formed a conspiracy, by which he was to obtain the command, while some of the tribunes, whom he had found means to corrupt, were to act under him in seizing upon the liberties of his country. Minutius soon discovered the plot, and informing the senate thereof, they immediately formed a resolution of creating a dictator, who should have the power of quelling the conspiracy, without appealing to the people. Cincinnatus, who was now eighty years old, was chosen once more to rescue his country from impending danger. He began, by summoning Mælius to appear, who refused to obey. He next sent Ahala the master of his horse to force him, who meeting him in the Forum, and pressing Mælius to follow him to the dictator's tribunal, upon his refusal, Ahala killed him upon the spot. The dictator applauded the resolution of his officer, and commanded the conspirator's goods to be sold, and his house

to be demolished, distributing his stores among the people.

The tribunes of the people were much enraged at the death of Mælius ; and in order to punish the senate at the next election, instead of consuls, insisted upon restoring their military tribunes. With this U. C. 315, the senate were obliged to comply. The next year, however, the government returned to its ancient channel, and consuls were chosen.

The Veians had long been the rivals of Rome ; they had ever taken the opportunity of its internal distresses to ravage its territories, and had even threatened its ambassadors, sent to complain of these injuries, with outrage. It seemed now, therefore, determined that the city of Veii, whatever it should cost, was to fall ; and the Romans accordingly sat regularly down before it, prepared for a long and painful resistance. The strength of the place may be inferred from the continuance of the siege, which lasted for ten years ; during which time the army continued encamped round it, lying in winter under tents of the skins of beasts, and in summer driving on the operations of the attack. Various was the success, and many were the commanders that directed the siege ; sometimes all the besiegers' works were destroyed, and many of their men cut off by sallies from the town : sometimes they were annoyed by an army of Veians, who attempted to bring assistance from without. A siege so bloody seemed to threaten depopulation to Rome itself, by draining its forces continually away ; so that a law was obliged to be made for all the bachelors to marry the widows of the soldiers who were slain. In order to carry it on with greater vigour, Furius Camillus was created dictator, and to him was entrusted the sole power of managing the long protracted war.—Camillus, who, without intrigue or any solicitation, had raised himself to the first eminence in the state, had been made one of the censors some time before, and was considered as the head of that office ; he was afterwards made a military tribune, and had in this post gained several advantages over the enemy. It was his great courage and abilities in the above offices that made him thought most worthy to serve his country on this press-

ing occasion. Upon his appointment numbers of the people flocked to his standard, confident of success under so experienced a commander. Conscious, however, that he was unable to take the city by storm, he secretly wrought a mine into it with vast labour, which opened into the midst of the citadel. Certain thus of success, and finding the city incapable of relief, he sent to the senate, desiring all who chose to share in the plunder of Veii should immediately repair to the army. Then giving his men directions how to enter at the breach, the city was instantly filled with his legions, to the amazement and consternation of the besieged, who but a moment before, had rested in perfect security. Thus, like a second Troy, was the city of Veii taken after a ten years' siege, and the conquerors enriched with its spoils; while Camillus himself, transported with the thought of having subdued the rival of his native city, triumphed after the manner of the kings of Rome, having his chariot drawn by four white horses; a distinction which did not fail to disgust the majority of the spectators, as they considered those as sacred, and more proper for doing homage to their gods than their generals.

His usual good fortune attended Camillus in another expedition against the Falisci; he routed their army and besieged their capital city Falerii, which threatened a long and vigorous resistance. The reduction of this little place, would have been scarce worth mentioning in this scanty page, were it not for an action of the Roman general, that has done him more credit with posterity, than all his other triumphs united. A schoolmaster, who had the care of the children belonging to the principal men of the city, having found means to decoy them into the Roman camp, offered to put them into the hands of Camillus, as the surest means of inducing the citizens to a speedy surrender. The general was struck with the treachery of a wretch, whose duty it was to protect innocence, and not to betray it; he for some time regarded the traitor with a stern air, but at last finding words, "Execrable villain," cried the noble Roman, "offer thy abominable proposals to creatures like thyself and not to me; what though we be the enemies of your city,

yet there are natural ties that bind all mankind, which should never be broken : there are duties required from us in war as well as in peace : we fight not against an age of innocence, but against men ; men who have used us ill indeed, but yet whose crimes are virtues when compared with thine : against such base arts let it be my duty to use only Roman arts, the art of valour and of arms." So saying, he immediately ordered him to be stript, his hands tied behind him, and in that ignominious manner to be whipped into the town by his own soldiers. This generous behaviour in Camillus effected more than his arms could do : the magistrates of the town immediately submitted to the senate, leaving to Camillus the conditions of their surrender, who only fined them a sum of money to satisfy his army, and received them under the protection, and into the alliance of Rome.

### *Exercises.*

What progress did the *Æqui* and *Volsci* make ? What proposal did the *Tribunes* make at this time ? What expedient did *Claudius* propose to satisfy the people ? By what name were the new magistrates called ? Of what number did they consist ? What new office was established ? What was the business of the *Censors* ? Who were first chosen ? What occasioned new dissensions ? What became of *Mælius* ? How did the *Tribunes* discover their rage ? Who was afterwards created Dictator ? By what means did *Camillus* become master of *Veii* ? What city did he next besiege ? In what manner did he punish the treachery of the schoolmaster ? What effect did his generous conduct produce ?

### SECTION III.

Notwithstanding the veneration which the virtues of *Camillus* had excited abroad, they seemed but little calculated to bring over the respect of the turbulent tribunes at home, as they raised some fresh accusation against him every day. To the charge of being an opposer of their intended migration from *Rome* to *Veii*, they added that of his having concealed a part of the plunder of that city, particularly two brazen gates for his own use, and appointed him a day on which to appear before the people. *Camillus*, finding the multitude exasperated against him, upon many accounts detesting their



ingratitude, resolved not to wait the ignominy of a trial, but embracing his wife and children, prepared to depart from Rome. He had already passed as far as one of the gates unattended, on his way, and unlamented. There he could suppress his indignation no longer, but turning his face to the Capitol, and lifting up his eyes to heaven entreated all the gods, that his country might one day be sensible of their injustice and ingratitude: and so saying, he passed forward to take refuge at Ardea, a town at a little distance from Rome, where he afterwards learned that he had been fined fifteen hundred asses by the tribunes at home.

The tribunes were not a little pleased with their triumph over this great man; but they soon had reason to repent their injustice, and to wish for the assistance of one, who alone was able to protect their country from ruin. For now a more terrible and redoubtable enemy began to make its appearance than the Romans had ever yet encountered. The Gauls a barbarous nation, had about two centuries before made an irruption from beyond the Alps, and settled in the northern parts of Italy.—They had been invited over by the deliciousness of the wines, and the softness of the climate. Wherever they came they dispossessed the original inhabitants, as they were men of superior courage, extraordinary stature, fierce in aspect, barbarous in their manners, and prone to emigration. A body of these, wild from their original habitations, were now besieging Clusium, a city of Etruria, under the conduct of Brennus their king. The inhabitants of Clusium, frightened at their numbers, and still more at their savage appearance, intreated the assistance, or at least the mediation of the Romans. The senate, who had long made it a maxim never to refuse succour to the distressed, were willing previously to send ambassadors to the Gauls, to dissuade them from their enterprize, and to shew the injustice of their irruption. Accordingly, three young senators were chosen out of the family of the Fabii, to manage the commission, who seemed more fitted for the field than the cabinet. Brennus received them with a degree of complaisance that argued but little of the barbarian; and

desiring to know the business of their embassy, was answered, according to their instructions, that it was not customary in Italy to make war, but on just grounds of provocation, and that they desired to know what offence the citizens of Clusium had given to the king of the Gauls? To this Brennus sternly replied, that the rights of valiant men lay in their swords; that the Romans themselves had no right to the many cities they had conquered; and that he had particular reasons of resentment against the people of Clusium, as they had refused to part with those lands which they had neither hands to till, nor inhabitants to occupy. The Roman ambassadors, who were but little used to hear the language of a conqueror, for a while dissembled their resentment at this haughty reply; but upon entering the besieged city, instead of acting as ambassadors, and forgetful of their sacred characters, headed the citizens in a sally against the besiegers. In this combat Fabius Ambustus killed a Gaul with his own hand, but was discovered while he was dispoiling him of his armour. A conduct so unjust and unbecoming, excited the resentment of Brennus, who having made his complaint by an herald to the senate, and finding no redress, immediately broke up the siege, and marched away with his conquering army directly to Rome.

The countries through which the Gauls passed in their rapid progress gave up all hopes of safety upon their approach; being terrified at their vast numbers, the fierceness of their natures, and their dreadful preparations for war. But the rage and impetuosity of this wild people were only directed against Rome. They went on without doing the least injury in their march, still breathing vengeance only against the Romans: and a terrible engagement soon after ensued, in which the Romans were defeated near the river Allia, with the loss of near forty thousand men.

Rome thus deprived of all succour, prepared for every extremity. The inhabitants endeavoured to hide themselves in some of the neighbouring towns, or resolved to await the conqueror's fury, and end their lives with the ruin of their native city. But more particularly, the

ancient senators and priests, struck with religious enthusiasm on this occasion, resolved to devote their lives to atone for the crimes of the people, and habited in their robes of ceremony, placed themselves in the Forum on their ivory chairs. The Gauls, in the mean time, were giving a loose to their triumph, in sharing and enjoying the plunder of the enemy's camp. Had they immediately marched to Rome upon gaining the victory, the Capitol itself had been taken; but they continued two days feasting upon the field of battle, and with barbarous pleasure, exulting amidst their slaughtered enemies. On the third day after the victory, the easiness of which amazed the Gauls, Brennus appeared with all his forces before the city. He was at first much surprised to find the gates wide open to receive him, and the walls defenceless; so that he began to impute the unguarded situation of the place to a stratagem of the Romans. After proper precautions, he entered the city, and marching into the Forum, there beheld the ancient senators, sitting in their order, observing a profound silence, unmoved and undaunted. The splendid habits, the majestic gravity, and the venerable looks of these old men, who had all, in their time, borne the highest offices of the state, awed the barbarous enemy into reverence; they took them to be the tutelar deities of the place, and began to offer blind adoration, till one, more forward than the rest, put forward his hand to stroke the beard of Papyrius, an insult the noble Roman could not endure, but lifting up his ivory sceptre, struck the savage to the ground. This seemed as a signal for general slaughter. Papyrius fell first, and all the rest shared his fate, without mercy or distinction. Thus the fierce invaders pursued their slaughter for three days incessantly, sparing neither sex nor age, and then setting fire to the city, burnt every house to the ground.

All the hopes of Rome were now placed in the Capitol; every thing without that fortress was but an extensive scene of misery, desolation, and despair. Brennus first summoned it, with threats, to surrender, but in vain; he then resolved to besiege it in form, and hemmed it round with his army. Never- U. C. 364.

theless, the Romans repelled his attempts with great bravery, despair had supplied them with that perseverance and vigour, which they seemed to want when in prosperity.

In the mean while, Brennus carried on the siege with extreme ardour. He hoped in time, to starve the garrison into a capitulation; but they, sensible of his intent, although they were in actual want, caused several loaves to be thrown into his camp, to convince him of the futility of his expectations. His hopes failing in this, were soon revived, when some of the soldiers came to inform him, that they had discovered some footsteps which led up to the rock, and by which the capitol might be surprised. Accordingly a chosen body of his men were ordered by night upon this dangerous service, which they with great labour and difficulty almost effected; they were now got upon the very wall; the Roman centinel was fast asleep; their dogs within gave no signal, and all promised an instant victory, when the garrison were awaked by the gabbling of some sacred geese that had been kept in the temple of Juno. The besieged soon perceived the imminence of their danger, and each snatching the weapon he could instantly find, ran to oppose the assailants. Manlius, a patrician of acknowledged bravery, was the first who exerted all his strength and inspired courage by his example. He boldly mounted the rampart, and at one effort threw two Gauls headlong down the precipice; others soon came to his assistance, and the walls were cleared of the enemy in a space of time shorter than that employed in the recital.

From this time forward, the hopes of the barbarians began to decline, and Brennus wished for an opportunity of raising the siege with credit. His soldiers had often conferences with the besieged while upon duty, and the proposals for an accommodation were wished for by the common men before the chiefs thought of a congress. At length the commanders on both sides came to an agreement that the Gauls should immediately quit the city and territories of Rome, upon being paid a thousand pounds weight of gold. This agreement being confirmed by oath, on either side, the gold was brought

forth, but upon weighing it, the Gauls attempted fraudulently to kick the beam, of which the Romans complaining, Brennus insultingly cast his sword and belt into the scale, crying out, that the only portion of the vanquished was to suffer. By this reply, the Romans saw that they were at the victor's mercy, and knew it was in vain to expostulate against any conditions he should be pleased to impose. But in this very juncture it was told them that Camillus, their old general, was at the head of a large army, hastening to their relief and entering the gates of Rome. Camillus actually appeared soon after, and entering the place of controversy with the air of one that was determined not to suffer imposition, demanded to know the cause of the contest : of which being informed, he ordered the gold to be taken back to the Capitol :—" For it ever has been," cried he, " the manner with us Romans to ransom our country, not with gold, but with iron ; it is I only that am to make peace as being the dictator of Rome, and my sword alone shall purchase it." Upon this a battle ensued, in which the Gauls were entirely routed ; and such a slaughter followed that the Roman territories, by the bravery of Camillus, were soon cleared of their formidable invaders.

The city being one continued heap of ruins, except the Capitol, and the greatest number of its former inhabitants having gone to take refuge in Veii, the tribunes of the people were urgent for the removal of the poor remains of Rome to Veii, where they might have houses to shelter, and walls to defend them. On this occasion, Camillus attempted to appease them with all the arts of persuasion, observing that it was unworthy of them, both as Romans and as men, to desert the venerable seats of their ancestors, where they had been encouraged by repeated marks of divine approbation, to remove to, and inhabit a city which they had conquered and which wanted even the good fortune of defending itself. By these, and such like remonstrances, he prevailed upon the people to go contentedly to work ; and Rome soon began to rise from its ashes.

We have already seen the bravery of Manlius in de-

feeding the Capitol, and saving the last remains of Rome. For this the people were by no means ungrateful, having built him a house near the place where his valour was so conspicuous, and having appointed him a public fund for his support. But he aspired at being not only equal to Camillus, but to be sovereign of Rome. With this view, he laboured to ingratiate himself with the populace, paid their debts, and railed at the patricians, whom he called their oppressors. The senate was not ignorant of his discourses or his designs, and created Cornelius Cossus dictator, with a view to curb the ambition of Manlius. The dictator soon finished an expedition against the Volscians by a victory; and upon his return, called Manlius to an account for his conduct. Manlius, however, was too much the darling of the populace to be affected by the power of Cossus, who was obliged to lay down his office, and Manlius was carried from confinement in triumph through the city. This success only served to inflame his ambition. He now began to talk of a division of the lands among the people; insinuating that there should be no distinctions in the state; and to give weight to his discourses, always appeared at the head of a large body of the dregs of the people, whom his largesses had made his followers. The city being thus filled with sedition and clamour, the senate had recourse to another expedient, which was to oppose the power of Camillus to that of the demagogue. Camillus, accordingly being made one of the military tribunes, appointed Manlius a day to answer for his life. The place in which he was tried was near the Capitol, where, when he was accused of sedition and of aspiring at sovereignty, he only turned his eyes, and pointing thither, put them in mind of what he had there done for his country. The multitude, however, whose compassion or whose justice seldom springs from rational motives, refused to condemn him, while he pleaded in sight of the Capitol; but when he was brought from thence to the Peteline grove, and when the Capitol was no longer to be seen, they condemned him to be thrown headlong from the Tarpeian rock. Thus the place which had been the the-

atre of his glory became that of his punishment and infamy. His house, in which his conspiracies had been secretly carried on, was ordered to be razed to the ground, and his family were forbidden ever after to assume the name of Manlius.

In this manner, therefore, the Romans went gradually forward, with a mixture of turbulence and superstition within their walls, and successful enterprises without. With what an implicit obedience they submitted to their pontiffs, we have already seen in many instances, and how far they might be impelled, even to encounter death itself at their command, will evidently appear from the behaviour of Curtius about this time, who upon the opening of the gulph in the Forum, U. C. 392. which the augurs affirming would never close up till the most precious things in Rome were thrown into it, this heroic man leaped with his horse and armour boldly into the midst, saying that nothing was more truly valuable than patriotism and military virtue. The gulph, say the historians, closed immediately upon this, and Curtius was never seen after.

### *Exercises.*

What accusations did the Tribunes bring against Camillus? Where did he take refuge? Who besieged Clusium afterwards? What embassy did the Romans send? What reply did Brennus make to their demands? In what manner did he resent the unjust conduct of the ambassadors? What loss did the Romans sustain? When did Brennus enter Rome? What took place in the Forum? What attempt did Brennus make to surprise the Capitol? By what means were the garrison alarmed? On what conditions did the Gauls agree to quit Rome? How did Brennus act? Who brought relief in this critical juncture? In what manner did Camillus address Brennus? What ensued afterwards? How did Camillus prevail upon the citizens to re-build Rome? How did Manlius conduct himself? What sentence was passed upon him? What is related concerning Curtius?

## CHAPTER XI.

*From the Wars of the Samnites, and the Wars with Pyrrhus, to the Beginning of the First Punic War.*

## SECTION I.

The Romans having now triumphed over the Sabines, the Etrurians, the Latins, the Hernici, the Æqui and the Volscians, began to look to greater conquests. They accordingly turned their arms against the Samnites, a people about an hundred miles east from the city, descended from the Sabines, and inhabiting a large tract of southern Italy, which at this day makes a considerable part of the kingdom of Naples. Valerius Corvus and Cornelius were the two consuls, to whose care it first fell to manage this dreadful contention between the rival states.

Valerius was one of the greatest commanders of his time ; he was surnamed Corvus, from a strange circumstance of being assisted by a crow, in a single combat, in which he fought and killed a Gaul of gigantic stature. To his colleague's care it was consigned to lead an army to Samnium the enemy's capital, while Corvus was sent to relieve Capua, the capital of the Campanians. Never was a captain more fitted to command than he. To an habit naturally robust and athletic, he joined the gentlest manners ; he was the fiercest, and yet the most good-natured man in the army ; and, while the meanest centinel was his companion, no man kept them more strictly to their duty ; but what completes his character, he constantly endeavoured to preserve his dignities by the same arts by which he gained them. Such soldiers as the Romans then were, hardened by their late adversity, and led on by such a general, were unconquerable. The Samnites were the bravest men they ever yet encountered ; and the contention between the two nations, was managed on both sides with the most determined resolution. But the fortune of Rome prevailed : the Samnites at last fled, averring, that they



were not able to withstand the fierce looks of the Romans. The other consul, however, was not at first so fortunate; for having unwarily led his army into a defile, he was in danger of being cut off, had not Decius, a tribune of the army, possessed himself of a hill which commanded the enemy; so that the Samnites being attacked on either side, were defeated with great slaughter, no less than thirty thousand of them being left dead upon the field of battle.

Some time after this victory, the soldiers who were stationed at Capua mutinying, forced Quintius, an old and eminent soldier, who was then residing in the country, to be their leader; and conducted by their rage, more than their general, came within eight miles of the city. So terrible an enemy almost at the gates, not a little alarmed the senate, who immediately created Valerius Corvus dictator, and sent him forth with another army to oppose them. The two armies were now drawn up against each other, while fathers and sons beheld themselves prepared to engage in opposite causes. Any other general but Corvus would perhaps have brought this civil war to an extremity; but he, knowing his influence among the soldiery, instead of going forward to meet the mutineers in an hostile manner, went with the most cordial friendship to embrace and expostulate with his old acquaintances. His conduct had the desired effect. Quintius, as their speaker, only desired to have their defection from their duty forgiven; and as for himself, as he was innocent of their conspiracy, he had no reason to solicit pardon for his offences. Thus, this defection, which at first threatened such dangers to Rome, was repaired by the prudence and moderation of a general, whose ambition it was to be gentle to his friends, and formidable to his enemies.

A war between the Romans and the Latins followed soon after; but as their habits, arms, and language were the same, the most exact discipline was necessary to prevent confusion in the engagement. Orders therefore were issued by Manlius the consul, that no soldier should leave his ranks upon whatever provocation, and that he

should be immediately put to death who should offer to do otherwise. With these injunctions both armies were drawn out in array, and ready to begin, when Metius, the general of the enemy's cavalry, pushed forward from the lines, and challenged any knight in the Roman army to single combat. For some time there was a general pause, no soldier offering to disobey his orders, till Titus Manlius, the consul's own son, burning with shame, to see the whole body of the Romans intimidated, boldly singled out against his adversary. The soldiers on both sides, for a while suspended the general engagement, to be spectators of this fierce encounter. The two champions drove their horses against each other with great violence: Metius wounded his adversary's horse in the neck; but Manlius, with better fortune killed that of Metius. The Latin being thus fallen to the ground, for a while attempted to support himself upon his shield; but the Roman followed his blows with so much force, that he laid him dead as he was endeavouring to rise; and then despoiling him of his armour, returned in triumph to the consul, his father's tent, where he was preparing and giving orders relative to the engagement. Howsoever he might have been applauded by his fellow-soldiers, being as yet doubtful of the reception he should find from his father, he came with hesitation to lay the enemy's spoils at his feet, and with a modest air, insinuated, that what he had done was entirely from a spirit of hereditary virtue. But he was soon made dreadfully sensible of his error, when his father, turning away, ordered him to be led publicly forth before the army: there being brought forward, the consul with a stern countenance, and yet with tears, spoke as follows:—  
“ Titus Manlius, as thou hast regarded neither the dignity of the consulship, nor the commands of thy father, as thou hast destroyed military discipline, and set a pattern of disobedience by thy example, thou hast reduced me to the deplorable extremity of sacrificing my son or my country. But let us not hesitate in this dreadful alternative; a thousand lives were well lost in such a cause; nor do I think, that thou thyself wilt refuse to die, when thy country is to reap the advantage of thy

sufferings. Go lictor, bind him, and let his death be our future example." The whole army was struck with horror at this unnatural mandate ; fear for a while kept them in suspense ; but when they saw their young champion's head struck off, and his blood streaming upon the ground, they could no longer contain their execrations and their groans. His dead body was carried forth without the camp, and being adorned with all the spoils of the vanquished enemy, was buried with all the pomp of military distress.

In the mean time, the battle joined with mutual fury ; and as the two armies had often fought under the same leaders, they combated with all the animosity of a civil war. The Latins chiefly depended upon their bodily strength ; the Romans on their invincible courage and conduct. Forces so nearly matched seemed only to require the protection of their deities to turn the scale of victory ; and in fact, the augurs had foretold, that whatever part of the Roman army should be distressed, the commander of that part should devote himself for his country, and die as a sacrifice to the immortal gods.—Manlius commanded the right wing, and Decius led on the left. Both sides fought for some time with doubtful success, as their courage was equal ; but after a time, the left wing of the Roman army began to give ground. It was then that Decius who commanded there, resolved to devote himself for his country, and to offer his own life as an atonement to save his army. Thus determined, he called out to Manlius with a loud voice, and demanded his instructions, as he was the chief pontiff, how to devote himself, and the form of words he should use. By his directions, therefore, being clothed in a long robe, his head covered, and his arms stretched forward, standing upon a javelin, he devoted himself to the celestial and infernal gods, for the safety of Rome. Then arming himself, and mounting on horseback, he drove furiously into the midst of the enemy, carrying terror and consternation wherever he came, till he fell covered with wounds. In the mean time the Roman army considered his devoting himself in this manner as an assurance of success : nor was the superstition, of the Latins less

powerfully influenced by his resolution, a total rout began to ensue ; the Romans pressed them on every side, and so great was the carnage, that scarce a fourth part of the enemy survived the defeat. This was the last battle of any consequence that the Latins had with the Romans ; they were forced to beg a peace upon hard conditions, and two years after, their strongest city Pædum being taken, they were brought under an entire submission to the Roman power.

### *Exercises.*

What nations did the Romans triumph over ? What generals were sent against the Samnites ? For what was Valerian surnamed Corvus ? What number of the Samnites were slain ? In what manner did Corvus discover his prudence and moderation ? With whom did the Romans next engage in war ? What orders were issued by Manlius ? Which of the champions proved victorious ? In what words did Manlius address his son ? What punishment was inflicted ? What impression did this make upon the army ? Which wing of the Roman army gave ground ? In what manner did Decius devote himself for his country ? What consequences followed ? When was peace concluded ?

## SECTION II.

U. C. 431. A signal disgrace which the Romans sustained about this time in their contests with the Samnites, made a pause in their usual good fortune, and turned the scale of victory in the enemy's favour.—The senate having denied the Samnites peace, Pontius their general, was resolved to gain by stratagem what he had frequently lost by force. Accordingly, leading his army into a defile, called Claudium, and taking possession of all its outlets, he sent ten of his soldiers, habited like shepherds, with directions to throw themselves in the way the Romans were to march. Exactly to his wishes the Roman consul met them, and taking them for what they appeared, demanded the rout the Samnite army had taken : they with seeming indifference, replied, that they were gone to Luceria, a town in Apulia, and were then actually besieging it. The Roman general, not suspecting the stratagem that was laid against him, marched by the shortest road, which lay through the defiles, to relieve the city ; and was not undeceived, till he

saw his army surrounded, and blocked up on every side. Pontius, thus having the Romans entirely in his power, first obliged the army to pass under the yoke, having been previously stripped of all but their garments : he stipulated that they should wholly quit the territories of the Samnites, and that they should continue to live upon terms of former confederacy. The Romans were constrained to submit to this ignominious treaty, and marched into Capua disarmed, half-naked, and burning with a desire of retrieving their lost honour. When the army arrived at Rome, the whole city was most surprisingly afflicted at their shameful return ; nothing but grief and resentment was to be seen, and the whole city was put into mourning.

But this was but a transitory calamity : the state had suffered a diminution of its glory, but not of its power. The war was carried on as usual for many years, the power of the Samnites declining every day, while that of the Romans gathered fresh strength from every victory. Under the conduct of Papyrius Cursor, who was at different times consul and dictator, repeated triumphs were gained. Fabius Maximus also had his share in the glory of conquering them ; and Decius the son of that Decius whom we saw devoting himself for his country forty years before, followed the example of his noble father, and rushing into the midst of the enemy, saved the lives of his countrymen with the loss of his own.

The Samnites being thus driven to the most extreme distress, as they were unable to defend themselves, they were obliged to call in the assistance of a foreign power, and have recourse to Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, to save them from impending ruin. Pyrrhus, a king of great courage, ambition, and power, and who had always kept the example of Alexander, his great predecessor, before his eyes, promised to come to their assistance ; and, in the mean time, dispatched over a body of three thousand men, under the command of Cineas, an experienced soldier, and a scholar of the great orator Demosthenes. — Nor did he himself remain long behind, but soon after put to sea with three thousand horse, twenty thousand foot, and twenty elephants, in which the commanders of

that time began to place very great confidence. However, only a small part of these great preparations arrived in Italy with him, for many of his ships were dispersed, and some were totally lost in a tempest. Upon his arrival at Tarentum, his first care was to reform the people he came to succour; for observing a total dissolution of manners in this luxurious city, and that the inhabitants were rather occupied with the pleasures of bathing, feasting, and dancing, than the care of preparing for war, he gave orders to have all their places of public amusement shut up, and that they should be restrained in all such amusements as rendered soldiers unfit for battle. In the mean time the Romans did all that prudence could suggest to oppose so formidable an enemy; and the consul Lævinus was sent with a numerous army to interrupt his progress. Pyrrhus, though his whole army was not yet arrived, drew out to meet him; but previously sent an ambassador, desiring to be permitted to mediate between the Romans and the people of Tarentum. To this Lævinus returned for answer, that he neither esteemed him as a mediator, nor feared him as an enemy; and then leading the ambassador through the Roman camp, desired him to observe diligently what he saw, and to report the result to his master. In consequence of this, both armies approaching, pitched their tents in sight of each other upon the opposite banks of the river Liris. Pyrrhus was always extremely careful in directing the situation of his own camp, and in observing that of the enemy. It was there that walking along the banks of the river, and surveying the Roman method of encamping, he was heard to observe, "that these barbarians seemed to be no way barbarous, and he should too soon find their actions equal to their resolution."—In the mean time, ordering a body of men along the banks of the river, he placed them in readiness to oppose the Romans, in case they should attempt to ford it, before his whole army was brought together. Things turned out according to his expectations; the consul, with an impetuosity that marked his inexperience, gave orders for passing the river where it was fordable: and the advanced guard having attempted to oppose him in vain,

was obliged to retire to the main body of the army; Pyrrhus being apprized of the enemy's attempt, at first hoped to cut off their cavalry before they could be reinforced by the foot, that were not yet got over, and led on in person a chosen body of horse against them. The Roman legions having with much difficulty, advanced across the river, the engagement became general: the Greeks fought with a consciousness of their former fame, and the Romans with a desire of gaining fresh glory.—Mankind had never before seen two such differently disciplined armies opposed to each other, nor is it to this day determined whether the Grecian phalauæ or the Roman legions were preferable. The combat was long in suspense: the Romans had seven times repulsed the enemy, and were as often driven back themselves; but at length while the success seemed doubtful, Pyrrhus sent his elephants into the midst of the engagement, and these turned the scale of victory in his favour. The Romans who had never before seen creatures of such magnitude, were terrified not only with their intrepid fierceness, but with the castles that were built upon their backs, filled with armed men. It was then that Pyrrhus saw the day was his own, and sending in his Thessalian cavalry to charge the enemy in disorder, the rout became general. A dreadful slaughter of the Romans ensued, fifteen thousand men being killed upon the spot, and fifteen hundred taken prisoners. Nor were the conquerors in a much better state than the vanquished, Pyrrhus himself being wounded, and thirteen thousand of his forces slain.—Night coming on, put an end to the slaughter on both sides, and Pyrrhus was heard to cry out, that one such victory more would ruin his whole army. The next day as he was walking to view the field of battle, he could not help regarding with admiration the bodies of the Romans who were slain; upon seeing them all with their wounds before, their countenances even in death, marked with noble resolution, and a sternness that awed him into respect, he was heard to cry out, in the true spirit of a military adventurer, “O with what ease could I conquer the world, had I the Romans for soldiers, or had they me for their king!”

Pyrrhus, after this victory, was still unwilling to drive them to an extremity, and considered that it was best treating with an humbled enemy; he resolved, therefore, to send his friend Cineas, the orator, to negotiate a peace, of whom he often asserted, that he had won more towns by the eloquence of Cineas than by his own arms. Cineas, with all his art, found the Romans incapable of being seduced, either by private bribery, or public persuasion.

Being frustrated, therefore, in his expectations, he returned to his master, extolling both the virtues and the grandeur of the Romans. The senate, he said appeared a reverend assembly of demigods, and the city a temple for their reception. Of this Pyrrhus soon after became sensible by an embassy from Rome, concerning the ransom and exchange of the prisoners. At the head of this venerable deputation was Fabricius, an ancient senator, who had long been a pattern to his countrymen of the most extreme poverty joined to the most cheerful content. Pyrrhus received this celebrated old man with great kindness, and willing to try how far fame had been just in his favour, offered him rich presents, which however, the Roman refused. The day after, he was desirous of examining the equality of his temper, and ordered one of his elephants to be placed behind the tapestry; which upon a signal given, raised its trunk above the ambassador's head, at the same time using other arts to intimidate him. But Fabricius, with a countenance no way changing, smiled upon the king, observing that he looked with an equal eye on the terrors of this day, as he had upon the allurements of the preceding. Pyrrhus, pleased to find so much virtue in one he had considered as a barbarian, was willing to grant him the only favour which he knew could make him happy: he released the Roman prisoners, entrusting them to Fabricius alone, upon his promise, that in case the senate were determined to continue the war, he might reclaim them whenever he thought proper.

U. C. 474. By this time, the Roman army was recovered from its late defeat, and Sulpicius and Decius, the consuls for the following year, were placed



at its head. The panic which had formerly seized it from the elephants, now began to wear off, and both armies met near the city of Asculum, both pretty nearly equal in numbers, being forty thousand strong; and here again, after a long and obstinate fight, the Grecian discipline prevailed. The Romans being pressed on every side, particularly by the elephants, were obliged to retire to their camp, leaving six thousand men dead upon the field of battle. But the enemy had no great reason to boast of their triumph, as they had four thousand slain; so that Pyrrhus replied to one of his soldiers, who was congratulating him upon his victory, "One such triumph more, and I shall be undone."

This battle finished the campaign: the next season began with equal vigour on both sides, Pyrrhus having received new succours from home. While the two armies were approaching, and yet but at a small distance from each other, a letter was brought to old Fabricius, the Roman general, from the king's physician, importing, that for a proper reward, he would take him off by poison, and thus rid the Romans of a powerful enemy, and a dangerous war. Fabricius felt all the honest indignation at this base proposal, that was consistent with his former character; he communicated it to his colleague, and gave it as his opinion that Pyrrhus should be informed of the treachery that was plotted against him. Accordingly, letters were dispatched for that purpose, informing Pyrrhus of the affair, and alledging the unfortunate choice of his friends and enemies. That he had trusted and promoted murderers, while he carried his resentment against the generous and the brave. Pyrrhus now began by degrees to find, that these bold barbarians were schooled into refinement, and would not suffer him to be their superior even in generosity; he received the message with as much amazement at their candour, as indignation at his physician's treachery. "Admirable Fabricius!" cried he, "it would be as easy to turn the sun from its course, as thee from the paths of honour." Then making the proper enquiry among his servants, and having discovered the treason, he ordered his physician to be executed. However, not to be outdone in magna-

nimity, he immediately sent to Rome all his prisoners, without ransom, and again desired to negotiate a peace. The Romans on the other hand, refused him peace, but upon the same conditions they had offered before.

So that after an interval of two years, Pyrrhus, having increased his army by new levies, sent one part of his army to oppose the march of Lentulus, the Roman consul, while he himself went to attack Curius Dentatus, the other in command, before his colleague could come up. His principal aim was to surprise the enemy by night; but unfortunately passing through woods, and his lights failing him, his men lost their way, so that at the approach of morning, he saw himself within sight of the Roman camp, with the enemy ready to receive him. The vanguard of both armies soon met, in which the Romans had the advantage. Soon after a general engagement ensuing, Pyrrhus, finding the balance of the victory turning still against him, had once more recourse to his elephants. These, however, the Romans were then too well acquainted with, to feel any vain terrors from; and having found that fire was the most effectual means to repel them, they caused a number of balls to be made, composed of flax and rosin, which were thrown against them as they approached the ranks. The elephants, thus rendered furious by the flame, and as boldly opposed by the soldiers could no longer be brought on, but ran back upon their own army, bearing down the ranks, and filling all places with terror and confusion.— Thus victory at length declared in favour of Rome; Pyrrhus in vain attempted to stop the flight and slaughter of his troops; he lost not only twenty-three thousand of his best soldiers, but his camp was also taken. This served as a new lesson to the Romans, who were ever open to improvement: they had formerly pitched their tents without order; but by this new capture they were taught to measure out their ground, and fortify the whole with a trench; so that many of their succeeding victories are to be ascribed to their improved method of encamping.

Pyrrhus thus finding all hopes fruitless, resolved to leave Italy, where he found only desperate enemies, and faithless allies; accordingly, calling together the Tarentines, he informed them, that he had received assurances

from Greece of speedy assistance, and desiring them to wait the event with tranquillity, the night following embarked his troops, and returned undisturbed into his native kingdom, with the remains of his shattered forces, leaving a garrison at Tarentum, merely to save appearances, and in this manner ended the war with Pyrrhus, after six years' continuance.

As for the poor luxurious Tarentines, who were the original promoters of this war, they soon began to find a worse enemy in the garrison that was left for their defence, than in the Romans who attacked them from without. The hatred between them and Milo, who commanded the citadel for Pyrrhus, was become so great, that nothing but the fear of their old inveterate enemies, the Romans could equal it. In this distress they applied to the Carthaginians, who with a large fleet came and blocked up the port of Tarentum; so that this unfortunate people, once famous through Italy for their refinements and pleasures, now saw themselves contended for by three different armies, without the choice of a conqueror. At length, however, the Romans found means to bring over the garrison to their interest; after which they easily became masters of the city and demolished its walls, granting the inhabitants liberty and protection.

### *Exercises.*

What disgrace did the Romans sustain about this time? What terms did Pontius impose upon them? To whom did the Samnites apply in their distress? What force did Pyrrhus bring to their relief? Who was sent to oppose him? Where did the engagement take place? By what means did Pyrrhus gain the victory? What loss did the Romans sustain? What endeavours did Pyrrhus make to negotiate peace? Who was at the head of the Roman embassy? What favour did he confer upon Fabricius? Where was the next engagement fought? What letter did Fabricius receive from the King's physician? How did he act on this occasion? What loss did Pyrrhus sustain in his engagement with Dentatus? Whom did the Tarentines call to their aid? Who became masters of their city?

## CHAPTER XII

*From the Beginning of the First Punic War, to the Beginning of the Second, when the Romans began to grow Powerful by Sea.*

U. C. 489. The Romans having destroyed all rival pretensions at home, began to pant after foreign conquests. The Carthaginians were at that time in possession of the greatest part of Sicily, and, like the Romans, only wanted an opportunity of embroiling the natives, in order to become masters of the whole island. This opportunity at length offered. Hiero, king of Syracuse, one of the states of that island, which was as yet unconquered, entreated their aid against the Mamertines, a little people of the same country, and they sent him supplies by sea and land. The Mamertines on the other hand, to shield off impending ruin, put themselves under the protection of Rome. The Romans not thinking the Mamertines worthy of the name of allies, instead of professing to assist them, boldly declared war against Carthage; alledging as a reason, the assistance which Carthage had lately sent to the southern parts of Italy against the Romans. In this manner a war was declared between these two powerful states, both grown too great to continue patient spectators of each other's increase.

Carthage, a colony of the Phœnicians, was built on the coast of Africa, near the place where Tunis now stands, about one hundred and thirty-seven years before the foundation of Rome. As it had been long growing into power, so it had extended its dominions all along the coasts. But its chief strength lay in its fleets and commerce; thus circumstanced, these two great powers began what is called the first Punic war. The Carthaginians, possessed of gold and silver, which might be exhausted: the Romans, for perseverance, patriotism, and poverty, which seemed to gather strength by every defeat.

But there seemed to be an insurmountable obstacle to the ambitious views of Rome, as they had no fleet, or at least nothing which deserved that title; while the Carthaginians had the entire command at sea, and kept all the maritime towns under obedience. In such a situation, any people but the Romans would have rested contented under disadvantages which nature seemed to have imposed; but nothing could conquer or intimidate them. They began to apply themselves to maritime affairs; and though without shipwrights to build, or seamen to navigate a fleet, they resolved to surmount every obstacle with inflexible perseverance. A Carthaginian vessel happened to be in a storm driven ashore; and this was sufficient to serve as a model. The consul Duillius was the first who ventured to sea with his new constructed armament; and, though far inferior to the enemy in the management of his fleet, yet he gained the first naval victory, the Carthaginians losing fifty of their ships, and the undisturbed sovereignty of the sea, which they valued more.

But the conquest of Sicily was only to be obtained by humbling the power of Carthage at home. For this reason, the senate resolved to carry the war into Africa itself, and accordingly they sent Regulus and Manlius with a fleet of three hundred sail to make the invasion. Regulus was reckoned the most consummate warrior that Rome could then produce, and a professed example of frugal severity. His patriotism was still greater than his temperance; all the private passions seemed extinguished in him, or they were all swallowed up in one great ruling affection, the love of his country. The two generals set sail with their fleet, which was the greatest that had ever yet left an Italian port, carrying one hundred and forty thousand men. They were met by the Carthaginians with a fleet as powerful, and men better used to the sea. While the fight continued rather between the ships than the men, at a distance, the Carthaginians seemed successful; but when the Romans came to grapple with them, the difference between a mercenary army and one that fought for fame, was apparent. The reso-

lution of the Romans was crowned with success; the enemy's fleet were dispersed, and fifty-four of their vessels taken. The consequence of this victory was an immediate descent upon the coasts of Africa, and the capture of the city Clnpea, together with twenty thousand men, who were made prisoners of war.

The senate being informed of these great successes, and applied to for fresh instructions, commanded Manlius back to Italy, in order to superintend the Sicilian war; and directed that Regulus should continue in Africa to prosecute his victories.

A battle ensued, in which Carthage was once more defeated, and some of its best troops were cut off. This fresh victory contributed to throw them into the utmost despair; more than eighty of their towns submitted to the Romans. In this distress, the Carthaginians destitute of generals at home, were obliged to send to Lacedemon, offering the command of their armies to Xantippus, a general of great experience, who undertook to conduct them.

This general began, by giving the magistrates proper instructions for levying their men: he assured them, that their armies were hitherto overthrown, not by the strength of the enemy, but by the ignorance of their own generals; he therefore only required a ready obedience to his orders, and assured them of an easy victory. The whole city seemed once more revived from despondence by the exhortations of a single stranger; and soon from hope, grew into confidence. This was the spirit which the Grecian general wished to excite in them; so that when he saw them thus ripe for an engagement, he joyfully took the field. The Lacedemonian made the most skilful disposition of his forces; he placed his cavalry in the wings; he disposed his elephants at proper intervals behind the line of the heavy armed infantry; and bringing up the light-armed troops before, he ordered them to retire through the line of infantry, after they had discharged their weapons. At length both armies engaging, after a long and obstinate resistance, the Romans were overthrown with dreadful slaughter: the greater part of their army being destroy-

ed, and Regulus himself taken prisoner. Several other distresses of the Romans followed soon after this. They lost their whole fleet in a storm; and Agrigentum, their principal town in Sicily, was taken by Karthalo, the Carthaginian general. They undertook to build a new fleet, which also shared the fate of the former: the mariners as yet unacquainted with the Mediterranean shores, drove it upon quicksands; and soon after the greatest part perished in a storm.

Mean time, the Carthaginians being thus successful, were desirous of a new treaty for peace, hoping to have better terms than those insisted upon by Regulus. For this purpose they supposed that he, whom they had now for four years kept in a dungeon, confined and chained, would be a proper solicitor. It was expected that, being wearied with imprisonment and bondage, he would gladly endeavour to persuade his countrymen to a discontinuance of the war, which only prolonged his captivity. He was accordingly sent with the ambassadors to Rome, but with a promise previously exacted from him to return in case of being unsuccessful. He was even given to understand, that his life depended upon the success of his negotiation.

When this old general, together with the ambassadors of Carthage, approached Rome, numbers of his friends came out to meet and congratulate his return. Their acclamations resounded through the city; but Regulus refused, with settled melancholy, to enter the gates. It was in vain that he was entreated on every side to visit his little dwelling, and share in that joy which his return had inspired. He persisted in saying, that he was now but a slave belonging to the Carthaginians, and unfit to partake in the liberal honours of his country. The senate, assembling without the walls, as usual, to give audience to the ambassadors, Regulus opened his commission as he had been directed by the Carthaginian council, and their ambassadors seconded his proposals. The senate were, by this time, themselves weary of a war, which had been protracted above eight years, and were no way disinclined to a peace. It only remained for Regulus himself to give his opinion, who, when it

came to his turn to speak, to the surprise of all the world, gave his voice for continuing the war. So unexpected an advice not a little disturbed the senate; they pitied as well as admired a man who had used such eloquence against his private interest, and could not conclude upon a measure which was to terminate in his ruin. But he soon relieved their embarrassment by breaking off the treaty and by rising in order to return to his bonds and confinement. It was in vain that the senate and all his dearest friends entreated his stay; he still repressed their solicitations. Mercia his wife, with her little children, filled the city with her lamentations, and vainly entreated to be permitted to see him: he still obstinately persisted in keeping his promise; and though sufficiently apprized of the tortures that awaited his return, without embracing his family, or taking leave of his friends, he departed with the ambassadors for Carthage.

Nothing could equal the fury and the disappointment of the Carthaginians, when they were informed by their ambassadors, that Regulus, instead of hastening a peace, had given his opinion for continuing the war. They accordingly prepared to punish his conduct with the most studied tortures. First his eye-lids were cut off, and then he was remanded to prison. He was, after some days, again brought out and exposed with his face opposite the burning sun. At last, when malice was fatigued with studying all the arts of torture, he was put into a barrel stuck full of nails that pointed inwards, and in this painful position he continued till he died.

Both sides now took up arms with more than former animosity. At length the Roman perseverance was crowned with success; one victory followed on the back of another. Fabius Butco the consul, once more showed them the way to naval victory, by defeating a large squadron of the enemy's ships: but Lutatius Catulus gained a victory still more complete, in which the power of Carthage seemed totally destroyed at sea, by the loss of one hundred and twenty ships, according to the smallest computation. This loss brought the Carthaginians to sue for peace, which Rome thought proper to grant; but still inflexible in its demands, exacting the same con-



ditions which Regulus had formerly offered at the gates of Carthage. These were, that they should lay down a thousand talents of silver to defray the charge of the war, and should pay two thousand two hundred more in ten years' time: that they should quit Sicily, with all such islands as they possessed near it: that they should never make war against the allies of Rome, or come with any vessels of war within the Roman dominions: and lastly, that all their prisoners and deserters should be delivered without ransom. To these hard conditions the Carthaginians, now exhausted, readily subscribed; and thus ended the first Punic war, which had lasted twenty-four years, and in some measure drained both nations of every resource to begin another.

### *Exercises.*

Against whom did the Romans boldly declare war? Who gained the first naval victory? Whom did the Senate send into Africa? What success at first attended Regulus? To whom did the Carthaginians give the command of their army? What success had Xantippus in the next engagement? What became of Regulus? What other distresses did the Romans endure? What endeavours did the Carthaginians make to restore peace? What advice did Regulus give the Senate? What punishment did the Carthaginians inflict upon him? What success attended the Roman arms? On what conditions was peace concluded?

## CHAPTER XIII.

### *From the End of the First Punic War, to the End of the Second.*

#### SECTION I.

The war being ended between the Carthaginians and Romans, a profound peace ensued, and in about six years after, the temple of Janus was shut for the second time since the foundation of the city. The Romans being thus in friendship with all nations, had an opportunity of turning to the arts of peace: they now began to have a relish for poetry, the first liberal art which rises in every civilized nation, and the first also that decays. Hitherto they had been entertained only with the rude

drolleries of their lowest buffoons ; they had feasts called Fescenini, in which a few debauched actors made their own parts, which raillery supplied the place of humour. To these a composition of a higher kind succeeded, which they called satire ; which was a kind of dramatic poem, in which the characters of the great were particularly pointed out, and made an object of ridicule to the vulgar. After these came tragedy and comedy, which were borrowed from the Greeks ; and indeed, the first dramatic poet in Rome, whose name was Livius Andronicus, was by birth a Grecian. The instant these finer compositions appeared, this great people rejected their former impurities with disdain.— From henceforward they laboured upon the Grecian model : and, though they were never able to rival their masters in dramatic composition, they soon surpassed them in many of the more soothing kinds of poetry.— Elegiac, pastoral, and didactic compositions began to assume new beauties in the Roman language ; and satire, not that rude kind of dialogue already mentioned, but a nobler sort invented by Lucilius, was all their own.

While they were thus cultivating the arts of peace, they were not unmindful of making fresh preparations for war : all intervals of ease seemed rather to give fresh vigour for new designs, than relax their former intrepidity. The Illyrians were the first people upon whom they tried their strength after some continuation of peace. That nation which had long plundered the merchants of the Mediterranean with impunity, happened to make some depredations upon some of the trading subjects of Rome : this being complained of to Teuta, the queen of that country, she instead of granting redress, ordered the ambassador, that was sent to demand restitution, to be murdered. A war ensued, in which the Romans were victorious ; most of the Illyric towns were surrendered to the consuls, and a peace at last concluded, by which the greatest part of the country was ceded to Rome ; a yearly tribute was exacted for the rest, and a prohibition added, that the Illyrians should not sail beyond the river Lissus with more than two barks, and those unarmed.

The Gauls were the next people that incurred the displeasure of the Romans. Supposing a time of peace when the armies were disbanded, a proper season for new irruptions, this barbarous people invited fresh forces from beyond the Alps, and, entering Etruria wasted all with fire and sword, till they came within about three days' journey of Rome. A prætor and a consul were sent to oppose them, who, now instructed in the improved arts of war were enabled to surround the Gauls, who still retained their primeval barbarity. It was in vain that those hardy troops, who had nothing but their courage to protect them formed two fronts to oppose their adversaries; their naked bodies, and undisciplined forces were unable to withstand the shock of an enemy completely armed, and skilled in military evolutions. A miserable slaughter ensued, in which forty thousand were killed and ten thousand taken prisoners. This victory was followed by another gained over them by Marcellus, in which he killed Viridomarus, their king, with his own hand, and gained the third royal spoils that were yet obtained at Rome. These conquests forced them to beg a peace, the conditions of which served greatly to enrich the empire. Thus the Romans went on with success; they had now totally recovered their former losses, and only wanted an enemy worthy of their arms to begin a new war.

The Carthaginians had only made a peace, because they were no longer able to continue the war. They therefore took the earliest opportunity of breaking the treaty; they besieged Saguntum, a city of Spain, which had been in alliance with Rome; and though they were desired to desist, prosecuted their operations with vigour. Ambassadors were sent, in consequence, from Rome to Carthage, complaining of the infraction of their articles, and requiring that Hannibal, the Carthaginian general, who had advised this measure, should be delivered up; which being refused, both sides prepared for a second Punic war.

The Carthaginians trusted the management of it on their side to Hannibal, the son of Hamilcar. This extraordinary man had been made the sworn foe of Rome

almost from his infancy ; for while yet very young, his father brought him before the altar, and obliged him to take an oath, that he never would be in friendship with the Romans, nor desist from opposing their power, until he or they should be no more. On his first appearance in the field, he reconciled in his own person, the most just method of commanding, with the most perfect obedience to his superiors. Thus, he was equally beloved by his generals, and the troops he was appointed to lead. He was possessed of the greatest courage in opposing danger, and the greatest presence of mind in retiring from it. No fatigue was able to subdue his body, nor any misfortune to break his spirit ; equally patient of heat and cold, he took only sustenance to sustain nature, and not to delight his appetite. He was the best horseman, and the swiftest runner of his time. This great general, who is considered as the most skilful of antiquity, having over-run all Spain, and levied a large army of various languages and nations, resolved to carry the war into Italy itself, as the Romans had before carried it into the dominions of Carthage. For this purpose, leaving Hanno with a sufficient force to guard his conquests in Spain, he crossed the Pyrenean mountains into Gaul, with an army of fifty thousand foot, and nine thousand horse. He quickly traversed that country which was then wild and extensive, and filled with nations that were his declared enemies. In vain its rivers and forests appeared to intimidate him ; in vain the Rhone with its rapid current, and its banks covered with enemies, or the Dura branched out into numberless channels, opposed his way ; he passed them all with perseverance, and in ten days arrived at the foot of the Alps, over which he was to explore a new passage into Italy. It was in the midst of winter when this astonishing project was undertaken. The season added new horrors to a scene that nature had already crowded with objects of dismay. The prodigious height and tremendous steepness of the mountains, capped with snow, the people barbarous and fierce, dressed in skins, with long and shaggy hair presented a picture that impressed the beholders with astonishment and terror. But nothing was capable of sub-

during the courage of the Carthaginian general ; for, at the end of fifteen days, spent in crossing the Alps, he found himself in the plains of Italy with about half his army, remaining, the rest having died of the cold, or being cut off by the natives.

As soon as it was known at Rome, that Hannibal, at the head of an immense army, was crossing the Alps in order to invade their dominions, the senate sent Scipio to oppose him, who was obliged to retreat with considerable loss. In the mean time, Hannibal being thus victorious, took the most prudent precautions to increase his army, giving orders always to spare the possessions of the Gauls, while depredations were permitted upon those of Rome: and this so pleased that simple people, that they declared for him in great numbers, and flocked to his standard with alacrity.

The second battle was fought on the banks of the river Trebia. The Carthaginian general being apprized of the Roman impetuosity, of which he always availed himself in almost every engagement, had sent off a body of a thousand horse, each with a foot soldier behind, across the river, to ravage the enemy's country, and provoke them to engage. The Romans quickly routed this force, who seemed to be defeated, took the river, and were as eagerly pursued by Sempronius the general. It was not, however, till his army was got upon the opposite bank, that he perceived himself half conquered already, his men being fatigued with wading up to their arm-pits, and quite benumbed with the intense coldness of the water. A total rout ensued ; twenty-six thousand of the Romans were either killed by the enemy, or drowned in attempting to repass the river. A body of ten thousand men was all that survived, who finding themselves inclosed on every side, broke desperately through the enemy's ranks, and fought retreating, till they found shelter in the city of Placentia.

The third defeat the Romans sustained was at the lake of Thrasimene ; near to which was a chain of mountains, and between these and the lake, a narrow passage leading to a valley that was embosomed in hills. It was upon these hills that Hannibal disposed his best troops, and

it was into this valley that Flaminius, the Roman general, led his men to attack him. A disposition every way so favourable for the Carthaginians, was also assisted by accident ; for a mist rising from the lake, kept the Romans from seeing their enemies ; while the army upon the mountains being above its influence, saw the whole dispositions of its opponents. The fortune of the day was such as might be expected from the conduct of the two generals ; the Roman army was broken and slaughtered, almost before they could perceive the enemy that destroyed them. Above fifteen thousand Romans, together with Flaminius himself, fell in the valley, and six thousand more were obliged to yield themselves prisoners of war.

### *Exercises.*

How did the Romans improve the short period of peace ? Who was their first dramatic poet ? With what nation did they again commence war ? What numbers of the Gauls were slain in the first battle which took place ? What effect did these conquests produce ? In what manner did the Carthaginians break the treaty ? What was the general history and character of Hannibal ? What time did he spend in crossing the Alps ? Whom did the Romans send to oppose him ? Where was the second battle fought ? What loss did the Roman army sustain ? What took place at the lake of Trasimene ?

## SECTION II.

Upon the news of this defeat at Rome, after the general consternation was allayed, the senate, upon mature deliberation, resolved to elect a commander with absolute authority, in whom they might repose their last and greatest expectations. Their choice fell upon Fabius Maximus, a man of great courage, but with a happy mixture of caution. He was apprized that the only way to humble the Carthaginians, at such a distance from home, was rather by harassing than by fighting them.—For this purpose, he always encamped upon the highest grounds, inaccessible to the enemy's cavalry. When—

ever they moved he moved, watched their motions, straitened their quarters, and cut off their provisions.

By these arts, Fabius had actually at one time inclosed Hannibal among mountains, where it was impossible to winter, and yet from which it was almost impracticable to extricate his army without imminent danger. In this exigence, nothing but one of those stratagems of war, which fall to the lot of great abilities only to invent, could have saved him : he ordered a number of small faggots and lighted torches to be tied to the horns of two thousand oxen that he had in his camp, and that they should be driven towards the enemy. These, tossing their heads, and running up the sides of the mountains, seemed to fill the whole neighbouring forest with fire ; while the centinels that were placed to guard the approaches of the mountain, seeing such a number of flames advancing towards their posts, fled in consternation, supposing the whole body of the enemy was in arms to overwhelm them. By this stratagem, Hannibal drew off his army, and escaped through the defiles that led beneath the hills, though with considerable damage to his rear.

Soon after, Fabius was obliged to lay down his office, his time being expired, and Terentius Varro was chosen by the majority to succeed to the command. This Terentius Varro was a man sprung from the dregs of the people, with nothing but his confidence and riches to recommend him. With him was joined Paulus Æmilius, of a disposition entirely opposite ; experienced in the field, cautious in action, and impressed with a thorough contempt for the abilities of his plebeian colleague.

The Romans finding themselves enabled to bring a competent force into the field, being almost ninety thousand strong, now again resolved to meet Hannibal, who was at this time encamped near the village of Cannæ, with a wind, that for a certain season blows still one way, in his rear, which raising great clouds of dust from the parched plains behind, he knew must greatly distress an approaching enemy. In this situation, he waited the coming up of the Romans with an army of forty thousand foot, and half that number of cavalry. The two

consuls soon appeared to his wish, dividing their forces into two parts, and agreeing to take the command every day by turns. On the first day of their arrival, it falling to the lot of *Æmilius* to command, he was entirely averse to engaging. The next day, however, it was *Varro's* turn to command, he, without asking his colleague's concurrence, gave the signal for battle; and passing the river *Ausidus* that lay between both armies, put his forces in array. The battle began with the light-armed infantry; the horse engaged soon after; and the Roman cavalry being unable to stand against those of *Numidia*, the legions came up to reinforce them. It was then that the conflict became general; the Roman soldiers for a long time endeavoured, but in vain, to penetrate the centre, where the Gauls and Spaniards fought; which *Haunibal* observing, ordered part of those troops to give way, and to permit the Romans to embosom themselves within a chosen body of his Africans, whom he had placed on their wing, so as to surround them; upon that a terrible slaughter of the Romans, fatigued with repeated attacks from the Africans, who were fresh and vigorous. At last the rout became general in every part of the Roman army; the boastings of *Varro* were no longer heard; while *Æmilius*, who had been terribly wounded in the very beginning of the engagement, still feebly led on his body of horse, and did all that could be done to make head against the enemy; however, being unable to sit on horseback, he was forced to dismount. It was in this deplorable condition of things, that one *Lentulus*, a tribune of the army, as he was flying on horseback from the enemy, which at some distance pursued him, met *Æmilius* sitting upon a stone, covered over with blood and wounds, and waiting for the coming up of the pursuers. "*Æmilius*," cried the generous tribune, "you at least are guiltless of this day's slaughter; take my horse and fly." "I thank thee, *Lentulus*," cried the dying consul, "all is over; my part is chosen: go, I command thee, and tell the senate to fortify Rome against the approach of the conqueror. Tell *Fabius* also, that *Æmilius*, while living, ever remembered his advice, and now dying approves it."—



While he was yet speaking, the enemy approached, and Lentulus, before he was out of view, saw the consul expire, feebly fighting in the midst of hundreds. In this battle the Romans lost fifty thousand men, and so many knights, that it is said Hannibal sent three bushels of gold rings to Carthage, which those of this order wore on their fingers.

When the first consternation was abated after this dreadful blow at Rome, the senate came to a general resolution to create a dictator, in order to give strength to their government. A short time after Varro arrived, having left behind him the wretched remains of his army; and, as he had been the principal cause of the late calamity, it was natural to suppose, that the senate would severely reprimand the rashness of his conduct. But far otherwise: the Romans went out in multitudes to meet him; and the senate returned him thanks that he had not despaired of the safety of Rome. Fabius, who was considered as the shield of Rome, and Marcellus as the sword, were appointed to lead the armies; and though Hannibal once more offered them peace, they refused it, but upon condition that he should quit Italy. Terms similar to these they had formerly insisted upon to Pyrrhus.

In the mean time, Hannibal, either finding the impossibility of marching directly to Rome, or willing to give his forces rest after such a mighty victory, led them to Capua, where he resolved to winter. This city had long been considered as the nurse of luxury, and the corrupter of all military virtue; here therefore a new scene of pleasure opened to his barbarian troops; and they at once gave themselves up to intoxication, till from being hardy veterans, they became infirm rioters.

Hitherto we have found this great man successful; but now we are to reverse the picture, and survey him struggling with accumulated misfortunes, and at last sinking beneath them.

His first loss was at the siege of Nola, where Marcellus the prætor made a successful sally. He some time after attempted to raise the siege of Capua, and attack-

ed the Romans in their trenches, but he was repulsed with considerable loss. He then made a feint of going to besiege Rome : but finding a superior army ready to receive him, he was obliged to retire. For U. C. 544. some years after he fought with various success ; Marcellus his opponent, sometimes gaining, and sometimes losing the advantage, but coming to no decisive engagement.

The senate of Carthage at length came to a resolution of sending his brother Asdrubal to his assistance, with a body of forces drawn out of Spain. Asdrubal's march being made known to the consuls Livius and Nero, they went against him with great expedition, and surrounding him in a place, into which he was led by the treachery of his guides, they cut his whole army to pieces. Hannibal had long expected these succours with impatience ; and the very night on which he had been assured of his brother's arrival, Nero ordered Asdrubal's head to be cut off, and thrown into his brother's camp. The Carthaginian general now therefore began to perceive the approaches of the downfall of Carthage, and could not help observing with a sigh, to those about him, that fortune seemed fatigued with granting her favours.

In the mean time fortune seemed to favour the Roman arms in other parts ; Marcellus took the city of Syracuse in Sicily, which was defended by the machines and the fires of Archimedes the mathematician.

The inhabitants were put to the sword, and among the rest Archimedes himself, who was found meditating in his study, by a Roman soldier. Marcellus, the general, was not a little grieved at his death. A passion for letters at that time began to prevail among the higher ranks of people in Rome. He therefore ordered his body to be honourably buried, and a tomb to be erected to his memory, which his own works have long survived.

As to their fortunes in Spain, though for a while they appeared doubtful, two of the Scipios being slain, and Claudius Nero, the governor of the province, appearing much an undermatch for the cunning of the Carthaginian general, yet they soon recovered their complexion under

the conduct of Scipio Africanus, who sued for the office of pro-consul to that kingdom, at a time when every one else wished to decline it. Scipio, who was now but twenty-four years old, had all the qualifications requisite for forming a great general and a good man; he united the greatest courage with the greatest tenderness; superior to Hannibal in the arts of peace, and almost his equal in those of war. His father had been killed in Spain, so that he seemed to have an hereditary claim to attack the country.

He therefore appeared irresistible, obtaining many great victories, yet subduing still more by his generosity, mildness, and benevolent disposition, than by the force of his arms.

It was shortly after, that he returned with an army from the conquest of Spain, and was made consul at the age of twenty-nine. It was at first supposed he intended meeting Hannibal in Italy, and that he would attempt driving him from thence; but he had already formed a wiser plan, which was to carry the war into Africa, and while the Carthaginians kept an army near Rome, to make them tremble for their own capital.

Scipio was not long in Africa without employment; for in a short time Hanno opposed him, but he was defeated and slain. Syphax, the usurper of Numidia, led up a large army against him. The Roman general for a while declined fighting, till finding an opportunity, he set fire to the enemy's tents, and attacking them in the midst of the confusion, killed forty thousand men, and took six thousand prisoners.

The Carthaginians, now beginning to be terrified at their repeated defeats, and at the fame of Scipio's successes, determined to recal Hannibal, their great champion, out of Italy, in order to oppose the Romans at home. Deputies were accordingly dispatched, with a positive command for him to return and oppose the Roman general, who at that time threatened Carthage with a siege. Nothing could exceed the regret and disappointment of Hannibal upon receiving this order. However, he obeyed the orders of his infatuated country, with the

same submission that the meanest soldier would have done, and took leave of Italy with tears in his eyes, after having kept possession of the most beautiful parts of it for above fifteen years.

Upon his arrival at Leptis in Africa, from whence he marched to Adrumetum, he at last approached Zama, a city within five days journey of Carthage. Scipio, in the mean time, led his army to meet him, joined by Massinissa with six thousand horse; and, to shew his rival in the field how little he feared his approach, sent back the spies which were sent to explore his camp, having previously shown them the whole, with directions to inform Hannibal of what they had seen. The Carthaginian general, conscious of his inferiority, endeavoured to discontinue the war by negociation, and desired a meeting with Scipio, to confer on terms of peace, to which the Roman general assented. But after a long conference, both sides parted dissatisfied; they returned to their camps to prepare for deciding the controversy by the sword. Never was a more memorable battle fought, whether we regard the generals, the armies, the two states that contended, or the empire that was in dispute. The disposition Hannibal made of his men is said by the most skillful in the art of war, to have been superior to any even of his former arrangements. The battle began with the elephants on the side of the Carthaginians, which being terrified at the cries of the Romans, and wounded by the slingers and archers, turned upon their drivers, and caused much confusion in both wings of their army, in which the cavalry was placed. Being thus deprived of the assistance of the horse, in which their greatest strength consisted, the heavy infantry joined on both sides; but the Romans being stronger of body the Carthaginians were obliged to give ground. In the mean time, Massinissa, who had been in pursuit of their cavalry, returned, and attacking them in their rear, completed their defeat. A total rout ensued, twenty thousand men were killed in the battle, or in the pursuit, and as many were taken prisoners. Hannibal, who had done all that a great general and an undaunted soldier could perform, fled with a small body of horse to Adra-

metum ; fortune seemed to delight in confounding his ability, his valour and experience.

This victory brought on a peace. The Carthaginians by Hannibal's advice, offered conditions to the Romans, which they dictated not as rivals, but as sovereigns. By this treaty, the Carthaginians were obliged to quit Spain and all the islands in the Mediterranean sea. They were bound to pay ten thousand talents in fifty years ; to give hostages for the delivery of their ships and their elephants ; to restore Massinissa all the territories they had taken from him, and not to make war in Africa, but by the permission of the Romans. Thus ended the second Punic war seventeen years after it had begun.

### *Exercises.*

What caution did Fabius exercise ? What stratagem did Hannibal invent to extricate his army from their danger ? Who succeeded Fabius ? What was the number of the Roman army ? What command did Æmilius give Lentulus ? What became of the Consul afterwards ? What was the loss of the Romans in this dreadful engagement ? Whom did the Senate appoint to lead the armies ? Where did Hannibal winter his army ? At what time did he sustain his first loss ? What became of Asdrubal ? What victory did Marcellus gain in Italy ? What was the character of Scipio ? What victory did he gain over Syphax in Africa ? What resolution did the Carthaginians adopt in their state of alarm ? What took place on Hannibal's arrival at Leptis ? What loss did the Carthaginians sustain ? On what conditions was peace concluded ?



## CHAPTER XIV.

*From the End of the Second Punic War, to the End of the Third, which terminated in the Destruction of Carthage.*

While the Romans were engaged with Hannibal, they carried on also a vigorous war against Philip, king of Macedonia, not a little incited thereto by the prayers of the Athenians, who, from once controlling the power of Persia, were now unable to defend themselves. The Rhodians, with Attalus, king of Pergamus, also entered into the confederacy against Philip. He was more than

once defeated by Galba, the consul, who was sent against him. He attempted to besiege Athens, but the Romans obliged him to raise the siege. He attempted to take possession of the straits of Thermopylæ, but was driven from them by Quintus Flaminius, with great slaughter. He attempted to take refuge in Thessaly, where he was again defeated with considerable loss, and obliged to beg a peace, upon condition of paying a thousand talents, half down, and the other half in the space of ten years. The peace with Philip gave the Romans an opportunity of shewing their generosity, by restoring liberty to Greece.

Antiochus, king of Syria, was next brought to submit to the Roman arms: after some embassies on the one side and the other, a war was declared against him five years after the conclusion of the Macedonian war.

After various mistakes and misconduct, he attempted to obtain a peace, by offering to quit all his places in Europe, and such in Asia as professed alliance to Rome. But it was now too late: Scipio, perceiving his own superiority, was resolved to avail himself of it. Antiochus thus driven into resistance, for some time retreated before the enemy, till, being pressed hard near the city of Magnesia, he was forced to draw out his men, to the number of seventy thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse. Scipio opposed him with forces as much inferior in number, as they were superior in courage and discipline. Antiochus therefore, was in a short time entirely defeated; his own chariots, armed with scythes, being driven back upon his men, contributed much to his overthrow. Being thus reduced to the last extremity, he was glad to procure peace of the Romans upon their own terms: which were to pay fifteen thousand talents towards the expences of the war, to quit all his possessions in Europe, and likewise all in Asia on that side mount Taurus, to give twenty hostages as pledges of his fidelity, and to deliver up Hannibal, the inveterate enemy of Rome.

In the mean time, Hannibal, whose destruction was one of the articles of this extorted treaty, endeavoured to avoid the threatened ruin. This consummate general

had been long a wanderer, and an exile from his ungrateful country. He had taken refuge at the court of Antiochus, who at first gave him a sincere welcome, and made him admiral of his fleet, in which situation he showed his usual skill in stratagem. But he soon sunk in the Syrian's esteem, for having advised schemes, which that monarch had neither genius to understand nor talents to execute. Sure therefore to find no safety or protection, he departed by stealth; and after wandering for a time among petty states, who had neither power nor generosity to protect him, he took refuge at the court of Prusias king of Bithynia. In the mean time the Romans, with a vindictive spirit, utterly unworthy of them, sent Emilius, one of their most celebrated generals, to demand him of this king, who, fearing the resentment of Rome, and willing to conciliate their friendship by this breach of hospitality, ordered a guard to be placed upon Hannibal, with an intent to deliver him up. The poor old general, thus implacably persecuted from one country to another, and finding all methods of safety cut off, determined to die; he therefore desired one of his followers to bring him poison, which he had ready for this exigence; and drinking it, he expired, as he had lived, with intrepid bravery.

A second Macedonian war was soon after U. C. 583. proclaimed against Perseus, the son of Philip, whom we have already seen obliged to beg peace of the Romans. Perseus, in order to secure the crown, had contrived to murder his brother Demetrius: and upon the death of his father, pleased with the hopes of imaginary triumphs, made war against Rome. During the course of the war, which continued about three years, many opportunities were offered him of cutting off the Roman army: but being perfectly ignorant how to take advantage of their rashness, he spent the time in empty overtures for a peace. At length Emilius gave him a decisive overthrow near the river Enipeus. He attempted to procure safety by flying into Crete; but being abandoned by all, he was obliged to surrender himself, and to grace the splendid triumph of the Roman general.

About this time, Massinissa, the Numidian, having

made some incursions into a territory claimed by the Carthaginians, they attempted to repel the invasion.— This brought on a war between that monarch and them ; while the Romans, who pretended to consider this conduct of theirs, as an infraction of the treaty, sent to make a complaint. The ambassadors who were employed upon this occasion, finding the city very rich and flourishing, from the long interval of peace, which it had enjoyed for near fifty years, either from motives of avarice to possess its plunder, or from fear of its growing greatness, insisted much on the necessity of a war, which was soon after proclaimed ; and the consuls set out, with a thorough resolution to demolish Carthage.

The wretched Carthaginians, finding that the conquerors would not desist from making demands while they had any thing left to supply, attempted to soften the victors by submission: but they received orders to leave their city, which was to be levelled with the ground.— This severe command they received with all the concern and distress of a despairing people: they implored for a respite from such a hard sentence ; they used tears and lamentations: but finding the consuls inexorable, they departed with a gloomy resolution, prepared to suffer the utmost extremities, and to fight to the last for their seat of empire.

Those vessels, therefore, of gold and silver, which their luxury had taken such pride in, were converted into arms. The women parted also with their ornaments, and even cut off their hair, to be converted into strings for the bowmen. Asdrubal, who had been lately condemned for opposing the Romans, was now taken from prison to head their army ; and such preparations were made, that when the consuls came before the city, which they expected to find an easy conquest, they met with such resistance as quite dispirited their forces, and shook their resolution. Several engagements were fought before the walls, with disadvantage to the assailants so that the siege would have been discontinued, had not Scipio Emilianus, the adopted son of Africanus, who was now appointed to command it, used as much skill to save his troops after a defeat, as to inspire them with fresh hopes



of victory. But all his arts would have failed, had he not found means to seduce Phæaracus, the master of the Carthaginian horse, who came over to his side. The unhappy townsmen soon saw the enemy make nearer approaches: the wall which led to the haven was quickly demolished; soon after the Forum itself was taken, which offered the conquerors a deplorable spectacle of houses nodding to their fall, heaps of men lying dead, hundreds of the wounded struggling to emerge from the carnage around them, and deploring their own and their country's ruin. The citadel soon after surrendered at discretion. All now but the temple was subdued, and that was defended by deserters from the Roman army, and those who had been most forward to undertake the war. These, however, expecting no mercy, and finding their consideration desperate, set fire to the building, and voluntarily perished in the flames. Thus was the end of one of the most renowned cities of the world, both for arts, opulence, and extent of dominions: it had rivalled Rome for above an hundred years, and at one time was thought to have the superiority.

This conquest over Carthage was soon followed by many over other states. Corinth, one of the noblest cities of Greece, in the same year sustained the same fate being entered by Mummius, the consul, and levelled to the ground. Scipio also having laid siege to Numantia, the strongest city in Spain, the wretched inhabitants, to avoid falling into the hands of the enemy, fired the city over their own heads, and all, to a man, expired in the flames. Thus, Spain became a province belonging to Rome, and was governed thenceforward by two annual prætors.

### *Exercises.*

What victories did the Romans gain over Philip? On what terms did they grant him peace? Who next engaged the attention of the Romans? What victory did Scipio gain over Antiochus? What became of Hannibal? When was war declared against Perseus? On what account was war again declared against Carthage? What endeavours did the Carthaginians make to soften the victors? Whom did they appoint general? Who commanded the besieging army? How long had Carthage rivalled Rome? Who destroyed Corinth? By whom was Spain afterwards governed?

## CHAPTER XV.

*From the Destruction of Carthage to the End of the Sedition of the Gracchi.*

The Romans now being left without a rival, the triumphs and the spoils of Asia, U. C. 621. brought in a taste for splendid expence : and this produced avarice and boundless ambition. The two Gracchi were the first who saw this strange corruption among the great, and resolved to repress it, by renewing the Licinian law, which had enacted that no person in the state should possess above five hundred acres of land.—Tiberius Gracchus, the elder of the two, was a person very considerable, both for the advantages of his body, and the qualities of his mind. Very different from Scipio, of whom he was the grandson, he seemed more ambitious of power than desirous of glory ; his compassion for the oppressed was equal to his animosity against the oppressors ; but unhappily his passions, rather than his reason, operated even in his pursuits of virtue : and these always drove him beyond the line of duty. This was the disposition of the elder Gracchus, who found the lower part of the people ready to second all his proposals. This law, though at first carried on with proper moderation, greatly disgusted the rich, who endeavoured to persuade the people, that the proposer only aimed at disturbing the government, and putting all things into confusion. But Gracchus, who was a man of the greatest eloquence of his time easily wiped off the impressions from the minds of the people, already irritated with their wrongs, and at length the law was passed.

The death of Attalus, king of Pergamus, furnished Tiberius Gracchus with a new opportunity of gratifying the meaner part of the people at the expence of the great. This king had by his last will left the Romans his heirs ; and it was now proposed that the money so left should be divided among the poor, in order to furnish them with proper utensils for cultivating the land, which became theirs by the late law of partition. This caused still greater disturbances than before. The senate assembled upon this occasion, in order to consult the most

proper method of securing these riches to themselves, which they now valued above the safety of the commonwealth: they had numerous dependents, who were willing to give up liberty for plenty and ease: these therefore were commanded to be in readiness to intimidate the people, who expected no such opposition, and who were now attending to the harangues of Tiberius Gracchus in the Capitol. Here, as a clamour was raised by the clients of the great on one side, and by the favourers of the law on the other, Tiberius found his speech entirely interrupted, and begged in vain to be attended to; till at last, raising his hand to his head, to intimate that his life was in danger, the partisans of the senate gave out that he wanted a diadem. In consequence of this an universal uproar spread itself through all ranks of people; the corrupt part of the senate were of opinion, that the consul should defend the commonwealth by force of arms; but this prudent magistrate declining such violence, Scipio Nasica, kinsman to Gracchus, immediately rose up, and preparing himself for the contest, desired that all who would defend the dignity and authority of the laws should follow him. Upon this, attended by a large body of senators and clients, armed with clubs, he went directly to the capitol, striking down all who ventured to resist. Tiberius, perceiving by the tumult that his life was sought for, endeavoured to fly: and throwing aside his robe to expedite his escape, attempted to get through the throng; but happening to fall over a person on the ground, Saturnius, one of his colleagues in the tribuneship, who was of the opposite faction, struck him dead with a piece of a seat; and not less than three hundred of his hearers shared the same fate, being killed in the tumult. Nor did the vengeance of the senate rest here, but extended to numbers of those who seemed to espouse his cause; many of them were put to death, many were banished, and nothing was omitted to inspire the people with an abhorrence of his pretended crimes.

Caius Gracchus, the brother of him who was slain, was but twenty-one upon the death of Tiberius, and as he was too young to be much dreaded by the great, so he was at first unwilling to incur their resentment by

aims beyond his reach ; he, therefore, lived in retirement, unseen and almost forgotten. But while he thus seemed desirous of avoiding popularity, he was employing his solitude in the study of eloquence, which was the readiest means to obtain it : at length, when he thought himself qualified to serve his country, he offered himself candidate for the præstorship to the army in Sardinia, which he readily obtained. His valour, affability, and temperance in his office, were remarked by all. The king of Numidia sending a present of corn to the Romans, ordered his ambassadors to say, that it was entirely as a tribute to the virtues of Caius Gracchus. This the senate treated with scorn, and ordered the ambassadors to be dismissed with contempt, as ignorant barbarians : which so inflamed the resentment of young Gracchus, that he immediately came from the army to complain of the indignity thrown upon his reputation, and to offer himself for the tribuneship of the people. It was then that the great found in this youth, who had been hitherto neglected upon account of his age, a more formidable antagonist than even his brother had been. Notwithstanding the warmest opposition from the senate, he was declared tribune by a very large majority, and was now prepared to run the same career which his brother had gone before him.

His first effort was to have Popilius, one of the most inveterate of his brother's enemies, cited before the people, who, rather than stand the event of a trial, chose to go into a voluntary banishment. He next procured an edict, granting the freedom of the city to the inhabitants of Latium, and soon after to all the people on that side of the Alps. He afterwards fixed the price of corn to a moderate standard, and procured a monthly distribution of it among the people. He then proceeded to an inspection into the late corruptions of the senate : in which the whole body being convicted of bribery, extortion, and the sale of offices ; (for at that time a total degeneracy seemed to have taken place,) a law was made, transferring the power of judging corrupt magistrates from the senate to the knights, which made a great alteration in the constitution.

Gracchus by these means, being grown not only very popular but very powerful in the state, was become an object, at which the senate aimed all their resentment. But he soon found the populace a faithless and unsteady support: they began to withdraw all their confidence from him, and to place it upon Drusus, a man insidiously set up against him by the senate. It was in vain that he revived the Licinian law in their favour, and called up several of the inhabitants of the different towns of Italy to his support: the senate ordered them all to depart Rome, and even sent one stranger to prison, whom Gracchus had invited to live with him, and honoured with his table and friendship. To this indignity was shortly after added a disgrace of a more fatal tendency; for standing for the tribuneship a third time, he was rejected, it being supposed that the officers, whose duty it was to make the return, were bribed to reject him, tho' fairly chosen.

It was now seen that the fate of Gracchus was resolved on. Opimius, the consul, was not contented with the protection of all the senate and the knights, with a numerous retinue of slaves and clients, but ordered a body of Caudians, that were mercenaries in the Roman service, to follow and attend him. Thus guarded and conscious of the superiority of his forces, he insulted Gracchus, wherever he met him, doing all in his power to produce a quarrel, in which he might have a pretence of dispatching his enemy in the fray. Gracchus avoided all recrimination, and, as if apprized of the consul's designs, would not even wear any kind of arms for his defence. His friend Flaccus however, a zealous tribune, was not so remiss, but resolved to oppose party against party, and for this purpose brought up several countrymen to Rome, who came under pretence of desiring employment. When the day for determining the controversy was arrived, the two parties early in the morning attended at the Capitol, where, while the consul was sacrificing according to custom, one of the lictors taking up the entrails of a beast that was slain in order to remove them, could not forbear crying out to Flaccus and his party,—

“ You, ye factious citizens, make way for honest men.” This insult so provoked the party to whom it was addressed, that they instantly fell upon him, and pierced him to death with the instruments used in writing, which they then happened to have in their hands. This murder caused a great disturbance in the assembly, but particularly Gracchus, who saw the consequences that were likely to ensue, reprimanded his party for giving his enemies such advantages over him, but now prepared to lead his followers to Mount Aventine. It was there he learned, that proclamation had been made by the consuls, that whoever should bring either his head or that of Flaccus, should receive its weight in gold as a reward. It was to no purpose that he sent the youngest son of Flaccus, who was yet a child, with proposals for an accommodation.— The senate and the consuls, who were sensible of their superiority, rejected all his offers, and resolved to punish his offence with nothing less than death : and they offered pardon also to all who should leave him immediately. This produced the desired effect ; the people fell from him by degrees, and left him with very inferior forces. In the mean time, Opimius, the consul, who thirsted for slaughter, leading his forces up to Mount Aventine, fell in among the forces with ungovernable fury : a terrible slaughter of the scarce resisting multitude ensued, and not less than three thousand citizens were slain upon the spot ; Flaccus attempted to find shelter in a ruinous cottage, but being discovered, was slain with his eldest son. Gracchus at first retired to the temple of Diana, where he was resolved to die by his own hand : but was prevented by two of his faithful friends and followers, Pomponius and Lucinius, who forced him to seek safety by flight. From thence he made the most of his way to cross a bridge that led from the city, still attended by his two generous friends, and a Grecian slave whose name was Philocrates. But his pursuers still pressed upon him from behind, and when come to the foot of the bridge, he was obliged to turn and face the enemy. His two friends were soon slain defending him against the crowd ; and he was forced to take refuge with his slave in a grove beyond the Tiber, which had

long been dedicated to the Furies. Here finding himself surrounded on every side, and no way left for escaping, he prevailed upon his slave to kill him, who, immediately after, killed himself, and fell upon the body of his beloved master. The pursuers soon coming up, cut off the head of Gracchus, and placed it for a while as a trophy upon the head of a spear. Soon after one Septimuleius carrying it home, there, first having secretly taken out the brain, he filled it with lead, in order to make it weigh heavier, and thus received of the consul seventeen pounds of gold as his recompence.

Thus died Caius Gracchus about ten years after his brother Tiberius, and six after he began to be active in the commonwealth. He is usually impeached by historians as guilty of sedition; but from what we see of his character, the disturbance of public tranquillity was rather owing to his opposers than to him; so that instead of calling the tumults of that time the sedition of the Gracchi, we should rather call them the sedition of the senate against the Gracchi, since the efforts of the latter were made in vindication of a law to which the senate had assented, and as the designs of the former were supported by an extraneous armed power from the country, that had never before meddled in the business of legislation, and whose introduction gave a most irrecoverable blow to the constitution. Whether the Gracchi were actuated by motives of ambition or of patriotism in the promulgation of these laws, it is impossible to determine, but certain it is, from what appears, that all justice was on their side, and all injury on that of the senate. In fact, this body was quite changed from that venerable assembly, which we have seen overthrowing Pyrrhus and Hannibal, as much by their virtues as by their arms. They were now only to be distinguished from the rest of the people by their superior luxuries, and ruled the commonwealth by the weight of that authority which is gained from riches and a number of mercenary dependencies. All the venal and the base were attached to them from motives of self-interest; and they who still ventured to be independent, were borne down, and entirely lost in the infamous majority. In short, the em-

pire, at this period came under the government of an hateful aristocracy; the tribunes, who were formerly accounted protectors of the people, becoming rich themselves, and having no longer opposite interests from those of the senate, concurred in their oppressions; since as has been said, it was not now the struggle between the patricians and plebeians, who only nominally differed, but between the rich and the poor. The lower orders of the state being by these means reduced to a degree of hopeless subjection, instead of looking after liberty, only sought for a leader; while the rich, with all the suspicion of tyrants, terrified at the slightest appearance of opposition, entrusted men with uncontrollable power, from whom they had no strength to withdraw it when the danger was over. Thus both parts of the state concurred in giving up their freedom; the fears of the senate first made the dictator, and the hatred of the people kept him in his office. Nothing can be more dreadful to a thinking mind, than the government of Rome from this period, till it found refuge under the protection of Augustus.

### *Exercises.*

What endeavours did the Gracchi make to repress the luxury and avarice of the Great? How did Tiberius act on the death of Attalus? What disturbances took place? In what manner did Seipio Nasici act? What became of Tiberius? What activity did Caius display when chosen Tribune? Whom did the Senate set up as his rival? What resolution did Flaccus adopt? What happened when the Consul was sacrificing? To what place did Gracchus lead his followers? In what manner did Opimius act? What became of Caius Gracchus? What was the character of the Senate at this period?

## CHAPTER XVI.

*From the Sedition of Gracchus, to the Perpetual Dictatorship of Sylla, which was the first step towards the ruin of the Commonwealth of Rome.*

### SECTION I.

While the Romans were in this state of deplorable corruption at home, they nevertheless, were very suc-



cessful in their transactions with regard to foreign powers.

Jugurtha was grandson to the famous Massinissa, who sided with Rome against Hannibal. He was educated with the two young princes, who were left to inherit the kingdom, and being superior in abilities to both, and greatly in favour with the people, he murdered Hiempsal, the eldest son, and attempted the same by Adherbal the younger, who made his escape, and fled to the Romans for succour. Whereupon Jugurtha, being sensible how much avarice and injustice had crept into the senate, sent his ambassadors with large presents to Rome, who so successfully prevailed, that the senate decreed him half the kingdom; which he had thus acquired by murder and usurpation, and sent ten commissioners to divide it between him and Adherbal. The commissioners, of whom Opius, the murderer of Gracchus, was one, willing to follow the example which the senate had set them, were also bribed to bestow the most rich and populous part of the kingdom upon the usurper, who for all that, resolved to possess himself of the whole. But, willing to give a colour to his ambition, he only made, in the beginning, incursions upon his colleague's territories, in order to provoke reprisals, which he knew how to convert into seeming aggression, in case it came before the senate. This failing, he resolved to throw off the mask; and besieging Adherbal in Cirta, his capital, he at length got him into his power, and murdered him.—The people of Rome, who had still some generosity remaining, unanimously complained of this treachery, and procured a decree, that Jugurtha should be summoned in person before them, to give an account of all such as had accepted bribes. Jugurtha made no great difficulty in throwing himself upon the clemency of Rome; but giving the people no satisfaction, he had orders to depart the city; and in the mean time, Albanus, the consul, was sent with an army to follow him, who giving up the direction of the army to Aulus, his brother, a person every way unqualified for the command, the Romans were compelled to hazard a battle upon disadvantageous terms, and the whole army, to avoid being cut to pieces, were obliged to pass under the yoke.

In this condition, Metellus, the succeeding consul, found affairs upon his arrival in Numidia ; officers without confidence, an army without discipline, and an enemy ever watchful and intriguing. However, by his great attention to business, and an integrity that shuddered at corruption, he soon began to retrieve the affairs of Rome, and the credit of the army. In the space of two years, Jugurtha was overthrown in several battles, forced out of his own dominions, and constrained to beg a peace. Thus, all things promised Metellus an easy and certain victory, but he was frustrated in his expectations by the intrigues of Caius Marius his lieutenant, who came to reap that harvest of glory which the other's industry had sown.

Caius Marius was born in a village near Arpinium, of poor parents, who gained their living by their labour. As he had been bred up in a participation of their toils, his manners were as rude as his countenance was frightful. He was a man of extraordinary stature, incomparable strength, and undaunted bravery. When Metellus, as had been said, was obliged to solicit at Rome for a continuance of his command, Marius, whose ambition knew no bounds, was resolved to obtain it for himself, and thus gain all the glory of putting an end to the war. To that end he privately inveighed against Metellus by his emissaries at Rome ; and having excited a spirit of discontent against him, he had leave given him to go to Rome to stand for the consulship himself, which he obtained contrary to the expectation and interest of the nobles.

Marius being thus invested with the supreme power of managing the war, shewed himself every way fit for the commission. His vigilance was equal to his valour, and he quickly made himself master of the cities which Jugurtha had yet remaining in Numidia. This unfortunate prince finding himself unable to make opposition singly, was obliged to have recourse for assistance to Bocchus king of Mauritania, to whose daughter he was married. A battle soon after ensued, in which the Numidians surprised the Roman camp by night, and gained a temporary advantage. However, it was but of

short continuance ; for Marius soon after overcame them in two signal engagements, in one of which not less than ninety thousand of the African army were slain. Bocchus now finding the Romans too powerful to be resisted, did not think it expedient to hazard his own crown to protect that of his ally ; he therefore determined to make peace upon whatever conditions he might obtain it, and accordingly sent to Rome imploring protection. The senate received the ambassadors with their request, granted the suppliant, not their friendship, but their pardon. Notwithstanding, after some time, he was given to understand, that the giving up of Jugurtha to the Romans would, in some measure conciliate their favour, and soften their resentment. At first the pride of Bocchus struggled against such a proposal, but a few interviews with Sylla, who was quæstor to Marius, reconciled him to this treacherous measure. At length, therefore, Jugurtha was given up, being drawn into an ambuscade by the specious pretence of his ally, who deluded him, and being made a prisoner, he was carried by Marius to Rome, loaded with chains, a deplorable instance of blasted ambition. He did not long survive his overthrow, being condemned by the senate to be starved to death in prison, a short time after he had adorned the triumph of the conqueror.

Marius, by this and two succeeding victories over the Gauls, having become very formidable to distant nations in war, became soon after much more dangerous to his fellow citizens in peace.

The strength which he had given the popular party every day grew more conspicuous ; and the Italians being frustrated in their aims of gaining the freedom of Rome by the intrigues of the senate, resolved upon obtaining by force, what was refused them as a favour. This gave rise to the Social war, in which most of the states of Italy entered into a confederacy against Rome, in order to obtain a redress of this and all the rest of their grievances.

After a lapse of two years, this war having continued to rage with doubtful success, the senate began to reflect that whether conquered or conquerors, the power of the

Romans was in danger of being totally destroyed. In order, therefore to soften their compliance by degrees, they began by giving the freedom of the city to such of the Italian states as had not revolted. They then offered it to such as would soonest lay down their arms.— This unexpected bounty had the desired effect: the allies with mutual distrust, offered each a separate treaty; the senate took them one by one into favour, but gave the freedom of the city in such a manner, that, not being empowered to vote until all the other tribes had given their suffrages, they had very little weight in the constitution. In this manner they were made free, all but the Samnites and Lucanians, who seemed excluded from the general compromise, as if to leave Sylla, who commanded against them, the glory of putting an end to the war: this he performed with great conduct, storming their camps, overthrowing them in several battles and obliging them to submit to such terms as the senate were pleased to impose.

### *Exercises.*

What is the general history of Jugurtha? Whom did he murder? To whom did Adherbal appeal? What decision did the Roman Senate make? What became of Adherbal? What disgrace did the Roman army under Aulus suffer? What change did Metellus make in the face of affairs? Who frustrated his expectations? What was the character of Marius? By what means did he procure the Consulship? What victories did he obtain over Jugurtha? What became of Jugurtha? Whom did Marius next conquer? What gave rise to the Social war? In what manner did the Senate put an end to it?



### SECTION II.

This destructive war being concluded, which, as Paternulus says, consumed above three hundred thousand of the flower of Italy, the senate now began to think of turning their arms against Mithridates, the most powerful monarch of the East.

For this expedition, Marius had long been preparing: but Sylla, who now began to make a figure in the commonwealth, had interest enough to get Marius set aside, and himself appointed to the expedition. Marius, how-

ever, tried all his arts with the people to get this appointment reversed, and at length procured a law to be enacted, that the command of the army appointed to oppose Mithridates was to be transferred from Sylla to Marius.

In consequence of this, Marius immediately sent down officers from Rome to take the command in his name.— But instead of obeying their orders, they fell upon and slew the officers, and then entreated Sylla, that he would lead them directly to take signal vengeance upon all his enemies at Rome.

Accordingly, his soldiers entered the city sword in hand, as a place taken by storm. Marius and Sulpicius, at the head of a tumultuary body of their partisans, attempted to oppose their entrance; and the citizens themselves, who feared the sackage of the place, threw down stones and tiles from the tops of the houses upon the intruders. So unequal a conflict lasted longer than could have been expected: at length Marius and his party were obliged to seek safety by flight, after having in vain offered liberty to all the slaves who would assist them in this emergency.

Sylla now finding himself master of the city, began by modelling the laws, so as to favour his outrages.— While Marius, driven out of Rome, and declared a public enemy, at the age of seventy, was obliged to save himself, unattended and on foot, from the numerous pursuits of those who sought his life. After having wandered for some time in this deplorable condition, he found every day his dangers increase, and his pursuers making nearer advances. In this distress, he was obliged to conceal himself in the marshes of Minturnæ, where he spent the night up to the chin in a quagmire. At break of day he left this dismal place, and made towards the sea-side, in hopes of finding a ship to facilitate his escape; but being known and discovered by some of the inhabitants, he was conducted to a neighbouring tower with an halter round his neck, without clothes, and covered over with mud, was sent to prison. The governor of the place, willing to conform to the orders of the senate, soon after sent a Cimbrian slave to dispatch him; but the barbarian no sooner entered the dungeon for

purpose, than he stopt short, intimidated by the dreadful visage, and awful voice of the fallen general, who sternly demanded, if he had the presumption to kill Caius Marius? The slave, unable to reply, threw down his sword, and rushing back from the prison, cried out, that he found it impossible to kill him! The governor considering the fear of the slave, as an omen in the unhappy exile's favour, gave him once more his freedom: and commending him to his fortune, provided him with a ship to convey him from Italy. He from thence made the best of his way to the island of Ænaria, and sailing onward, was forced by a tempest on the coast of Sicily. There a Roman quæstor who happened to be at the same place, resolved to seize him, by which he lost sixteen of his crew, who were killed in their endeavours to cover his retreat to the ship. He afterwards landed in Africa, near Carthage, and went in a melancholy manner to place himself amongst the ruins of that desolated place. He soon however, had orders from the prætor who governed there to retire. Marius, who remembered his having once served this very man when in necessity, could not suppress his sorrow at finding ingratitude in every quarter of the world, and preparing to obey, desired the messenger to tell his master, that he had seen Marius sitting among the ruins of Carthage, intimating the greatness of his own fall by the desolation that was round him. He then embarked once more, and not knowing where to land without encountering an enemy, spent the winter at sea, expecting every hour the return of a messenger from his son, whom he had sent to solicit protection from an African prince, whose name was Mandrastal. After long expectation, instead of the messenger, his son, himself arrived, having escaped from the inhospitable court of that monarch, where he had been kept, not as a friend, but a prisoner, and had returned just time enough to prevent his father from sharing the same fate. It was in this situation that they were informed that Cinna, one of their party, who had remained at Rome, had restored their affairs, and headed a large army of the Italian states in their cause.

Nor was it long before they joined their forces, and presented themselves at the gates of Rome. Sylla was

at that time absent on his command against Mithridates, while Cinna marched into the city, accompanied by his guards : but Marius stopped, and refused to enter, alledging, that having been banished by a public decree, it was necessary to have another to authorize his return. It was thus that he desired to give his meditated cruelties the appearance of justice ; and, while he was about to destroy thousands, to pretend an implicit veneration for the law. In pursuance of his desire, an assembly of the people being called, they began to reverse his banishment ; but they had scarce gone through three of the tribes, when incapable of containing his desire of revenge, he entered the city at the head of his guards, and massacred all that had ever been obnoxious to him, without remorse or pity. Several who sought to propitiate the tyrant's rage, were murdered by his command in his presence ; many, even of those who had never offended him, were put to death ; and at last even his own officers never approached him but with terror. Having in this manner punished his enemies, he next abrogated all the laws which were made by his rival, and then made himself consul with Cinna. Thus gratified in his two favourite passions, vengeance and ambition, having once saved his country, and now deluged it with blood, at last, as if willing to crown the pile of slaughter which he had made, with his own body, he died the month after, aged seventy, not without suspicion of having hastened his end.

In the mean time these accounts were brought to Sylla, who was sent against Mithridates, and who was performing many signal services against him ; but concluding a peace with that monarch, he resolved to return home to take revenge of his enemies at Rome.

In the mean time nothing could intimidate Cinna from making preparations to repel his opponent. Being joined by Carbo, who was now elected in the room of Valerius who had been slain, together with young Marius, who inherited all the abilities and the ambition of his father, he determined to send over part of the forces he had raised into Dalmatia to oppose Sylla before he entered Italy. Some troops were accordingly embarked ;

but those being dispersed by a storm, the rest, that had not yet put to sea, absolutely refused to go. Upon this, Cinna, quite furious at their disobedience, rushed forward to persuade them to their duty. In the mean time one of the most mutinous of the soldiers being struck by an officer, returned the blow, and was apprehended for his crime. This ill timed severity produced a tumult and mutiny through the whole army; and while Cinna did all he could to prevent or appease it, he was run through the body by one of the crowd.

Scipio, the consul, who commanded against Sylla, was soon after allured by proposals for coming to a treaty; but a suspension of arms being agreed upon, Sylla's soldiers went into the opposite camp, displaying those riches which they had acquired in their expeditions, and offering to participate with their fellow-citizens, in case they changed their party. Accordingly, the whole army declared unanimously for Sylla; and Scipio scarce knew that he was forsaken and deposed, till he was informed of it by a party of the enemy, who entering his tent, made him and his son their prisoners.

In this manner, both factions, exasperated to the highest degree, and expecting no mercy on either part, gave vent to their fury in several engagements. The forces on the side of young Marius, who now succeeded his father in command, were the most numerous, but those of Sylla better united and more under subordination. Carbo, who commanded for Marius in the field, sent eight legions to Præneste, to relieve his colleague, but they were met by Pompey, afterwards surnamed the Great, in a defile, who slew many of them, and dispersed the rest, Carbo, joined by Urbanus, soon after engaged Metellus, but was overcome with the loss of ten thousand men slain, and six thousand taken prisoners. In consequence of this defeat Urbanus killed himself, and Carbo fled to Africa, where, after wandering a long time, he was at last delivered up to Pompey, who, to please Sylla, ordered him to be beheaded. Sylla, now become undisputed master of his country, entered Rome at the head of his army. Happy, had he sup-



ported in peace the glory which he had acquired in war, or had ceased to live when he ceased to conquer.

Eight thousand men who had escaped the general carnage, offered themselves to the conqueror; he ordered them to be put into the Villa Publica, a large house in the Campus Martius, and at the same time convoked the senate; there he spoke with great fluency, and in a manner no way discomposed, of his own exploits; and in the mean time gave private directions, that all those wretches whom he had confined should be slain. The senate, amazed at the horrid outcries of the sufferers, at first thought that the city was given up to plunder: but Sylla, with an unembarrassed air, informed them that it was only some criminals who were punished by his order, and that they needed not to make themselves uneasy about their fate. The day after, he proscribed forty senators and sixteen hundred knights; and, after an intermission of two days, forty senators more, with an infinite number of the richest citizens of Rome.

He next resolved to invest himself with the dictatorship, and that for a perpetuity; and thus uniting all civil as well as military power in his own person, he was conscious he might thence give an air of justice to every oppression.

In this manner, he continued to govern with capricious tyranny, none daring to resist his power, until, contrary to the expectations of mankind, he laid down the dictatorship, having held it not quite three years.

After this he retired into the country, in order to enjoy the pleasures of tranquillity and social happiness: but he did not long survive his abdication; he died of that disease which is called *morbus pedicularis*, a loathsome and mortifying object, and capable of showing the futility of human ambition.

### *Exercises.*

What number fell in the Social war? Against whom did the Senate next turn their arms? What commotions did Sylla and Marius excite in Rome? What dangers did Marius encounter? By what means did he escape from Italy? What took place in Sicily? What reception did he meet with from the Prætor in Africa? What change now took place in

his affairs? What cruelty did he exercise on his return to Rome? What became of Marius? What occasioned the death of Cinna? By what means did Sylla gain over Scipio's army? What cruelty did Sylla exercise when he became master of Rome? What became of Sylla?

## CHAPTER XVII.

*From the Perpetual Dictatorship of Sylla, to the Triumvirate of Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus.*

U. C. 680. Upon the death of Sylla, the jealousies of Pompey and Crassus, the two most powerful men in the empire, began to excite fresh dissensions. Pompey was the most beloved general, and Crassus was the richest man in Rome.

The first opportunity that was afforded of discovering their mutual jealousy, was upon the disbanding their troops, with which they had conquered. Neither chose to begin; so that the most fatal consequences threatened from their dissension; but at length Crassus, stifling his resentment, laid down his command: and the other followed his example immediately after. The next trial between them was, who would be foremost in obtaining the favour of the people. Crassus entertained the people at a thousand different tables, distributing corn to the families of the poor, and fed the greatest part of the citizens for near three months. Pompey, on the other hand, laboured to abrogate the laws made against the people's authority by Sylla; he restored the power of judging to the knights, which had been formerly granted them by Gracchus, and gave back to the tribunes of the people all their former privileges. It was thus that each gave his private aims a public appearance; so that what was in reality ambition in both, took with one the name of liberality, with the other that of freedom.

An expedition in which Pompey cleared the Mediterranean, which was infested by pirates, having added greatly to his reputation, the tribunes of the people hoped it would be easier to advance their favourite still higher; wherefore Manlius, one of the number, prefer-

red a law, that all the armies of the empire, with the government of all Asia, together with the management of the war, which was renewed against Mithridates, should be committed to him alone. The law passed with little opposition, and the decree was confirmed by all the tribes of the people.

Being thus appointed to the command of that important war, he immediately departed for Asia, having made the proper preparations towards forwarding the campaign. Mithridates had been obliged by Lucullus to take refuge in Lesser Armenia, and thither that general was preparing to follow him, when his whole army abandoned him, so that it remained for Pompey to terminate the war, which he affected with great ease and expedition, adding a large extent of dominion to the Roman empire, and returning to Rome in triumph, at the head of his conquering army.

But all the victories of Pompey rather served to heighten the glory, than to increase the power of Rome; they only made it a more glaring object of ambition, and exposed its liberties to greater danger. Those liberties indeed seemed devoted to ruin on every side; for even while he was pursuing his conquests abroad, Rome was at the verge of ruin from a conspiracy at home.— This conspiracy was projected and carried on by Sargius Cataline, a patrician by birth, who resolved to build his own power on the downfall of his country. He was singularly formed, both by art and nature, to conduct a conspiracy: he was possessed of courage equal to the most desperate attempts, and eloquence to give a colour to his ambition; ruined in his fortunes, profligate in his manners, and vigilant in pursuing his aims, he was insatiable after wealth, only with a view to lavish it on his guilty pleasures.

Cataline having contracted many debts, by the looseness of such an ill spent life, was resolved to extricate himself from them by any means, however unlawful.

Accordingly he assembled about thirty of his debauched associates, and informed them of his aims, his hopes and his settled plan of operations. It was resolved among them that a general insurrection should be raised

throughout Italy, the different parts of which were assigned to the different leaders. Rome was to be fired in several places at once, and Cataline, at the head of an army raised in Etruria, was in the general confusion, to possess himself of the city, and massacre all the senators. Lentulus, one of his profligate assistants, who had been prætor, or judge in the city, was to preside in their general councils; Cethegus, a man who sacrificed the possession of great present power to the hopes of gratifying his revenge against Cicero, was to direct the massacre through the city; and Cæsius was to conduct those who fired it. But the vigilance of Cicero being a chief obstacle to their designs, Cataline was very desirous to see him taken off before he left Rome; upon which two knights of the company undertook to kill him the next morning in his bed in an early visit, on pretence of business. But the meeting was no sooner over, than Cicero had information of all that passed in it; for by the intrigues of a woman named Fulvia, he had gained over Curius, her lover, and one of the conspirators, to send him a punctual account of all their deliberations.— Having taken proper precautions to guard himself against the designs of his morning visitors, who were punctual to the appointment, he next took care to provide for the defence of the city, and assembling the senate, consulted what was best to be done in this time of danger. The first step taken, was to offer considerable rewards for further discoveries, and then to prepare for the defence of the state. Cataline, to shew how well he could dissemble or justify any crime, went boldly to the senate, declaring his innocence; but when confronted by the eloquence of Cicero, he hastily withdrew, declaring aloud, that since he was denied a vindication of himself, and driven headlong by his enemies, he would extinguish the flames which were raised about him, in universal ruin. Accordingly, after a short conference with Lentulus and Cethegus, he left Rome by night with a small retinue, to make the best of his way towards Etruria, where Manlius, one of the conspirators, was raising an army to support him.

In the mean time, Cicero took proper precautions to

secure all those of the conspiracy who remained in Rome. Lentulus, Cethegus, Cæsius, and several others, were put in confinement ; and soon after, by the command of the senate, being delivered over to the executioners, were strangled in prison.

While his associates were put to death in the city, Cataline had raised an army of twelve thousand men ; of which a fourth part only was completely armed, the rest being furnished only with what chance afforded, darts, lances, and clubs. He refused at first to enlist slaves, who had flocked to him in great numbers, trusting to the proper strength of the conspiracy ; but upon the approach of the consul, who was sent against him, and upon the arrival of the news, that his confederates were put to death in Rome, the face of his affairs was entirely altered. His first attempt, therefore, was by long marches, to make his escape over the Appenines into Gaul ; but in this his hopes were disappointed, all the passes being strictly guarded by an army under Metellus, superior to his own. Being thus hemmed in on every side, and seeing all things desperate, with nothing left him but either to die or conquer, he resolved to make one vigorous effort against that army which pursued him. Antonius, the consul, being himself sick, the command devolved upon his lieutenant Petreius, who after a fierce and bloody action, in which he lost a considerable part of his best troops, put Cataline's forces to the rout, and destroyed his whole army, which fought desperately to the last man.

The extinction of this conspiracy seemed only to leave an open theatre for the ambition of the great men of the state to display itself in. Pompey was now returned in triumph from conquering the East, as he had before been victorious in Europe and Africa.

Crassus, as we had already observed, was the richest man in Rome ; and, next to him, possessed of the greatest authority ; his party in the senate was even stronger than that of Pompey his rival, and the envy raised against him was less. He and Pompey had long been disunited by an opposition of interests and of characters ; however, it was from a continuance of their mutual jealous-

ies that the state was, in some measure, to expect its future safety. It was in this situation of things that Julius Cæsar, who had lately gone prætor into Spain, and had returned with great riches and glory, resolved to convert their mutual jealousies to his own advantage. This celebrated man was nephew to Marius by the female line, and descended from one of the most illustrious families in Rome; he had already mounted by the regular gradations of office, having been quæstor, ædile, grand pontiff, and prætor in Spain. Being descended from popular ancestors, he warmly espoused the side of the people: and shortly after the death of Sylla, procured those whom he had banished to be recalled. He had all along declared for the populace against the senate, and by this became their most favourite magistrate. This consummate statesman began first by offering his services to Pompey, promising him his aid in having all his acts passed, notwithstanding the senate's opposition: Pompey pleased at the acquisition of a person of so much merit, readily granted him his confidence and protection. He next applied to Crassus, who, from former connections, was disposed to become still more nearly his friend: at length, finding neither averse to an union of interest, he took an opportunity of bringing them together; and remonstrating to them upon the advantage, as well as the necessity of reconciliation, he had art enough to persuade them to forget former animosities. A combination was thus formed, by which these three agreed, that nothing should be done in the commonwealth, but what received their mutual concurrence and approbation. This was called the first Triumvirate, by which we find the constitution weakened by a new interest, that had not hitherto taken place in the government, very different from that of either the senate or the people, and yet dependent on both.

### *Exercises.*

What endeavours did Pompey and Crassus make to gain the favour of the people? By what means did Pompey acquire reputation? What success attended him in Asia? Who projected a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome? What was the character of Cataline? Who were

his associates? What defensive measures did Cicero adopt? What force did Cataline raise? Who destroyed his army? Who were the principal rivals in Rome? What was the general history of Cæsar? What art did he employ to reconcile Crassus and Pompey? What change took place in the Government?

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### *From the Beginning of the First Triumvirate, to the Death of Pompey.*

#### SECTION I.

U. C. 694. The first thing Cæsar did upon being taken into the Triumvirate, was to avail himself of the interest of his confederates to obtain the consulship. The senate had still some small influence left; and though they were obliged to concur in choosing him, yet they gave him for a colleague one Bibulus, who they supposed, would be a check upon his power; but the opposition was too strong for even superior abilities to resist it, so that Bibulus, after a slight attempt in favour of the senate, remained inactive. Cæsar began his schemes for empire, by ingratiating himself with the people: he procured a law for dividing certain lands in Campania among such of the poor citizens as had at least three children. The proposal was just enough in itself and only criminal from the views of the proposer.

Having thus strengthened himself at home, he next deliberated with his confederates about sharing the foreign provinces of the empire between them. The partition was soon made; Pompey chose Spain for his own part; for being fatigued with conquest, and satiated with military fame, he was willing to take his pleasures at Rome. Crassus chose Syria for his part of the empire; which province, as it had hitherto enriched the generals who had subdued it, would, he hoped, gratify him in his most favourite pursuit. To Cæsar was left the province of Gaul; composed of many fierce and powerful nations, most of them unsubdued, and the rest only pro-

fessing a nominal subjection. Wherefore, as it was rather appointing him to conquer than command, this government was granted him for five years, as if by the continuance, to compensate for its danger.

It would be impossible in this narrow compass, to enumerate all the battles Cæsar fought, and the states he subdued, in his expeditions in Gaul and Britain, which continued eight years. The Helvetians were the first that were brought into subjection, with the loss of near two hundred thousand men; those who remained after the carnage, were sent by Cæsar in safety to the forests from whence they had issued. The Germans, with Ariovistus at their head, were next cut off, to the number of eighty thousand: their monarch himself narrowly escaping in a little boat across the Rhine. The Belgi were cut off with so great slaughter, that marshes and deep rivers were rendered passable from the heaps of slain. The Nervians, who were the most warlike of these barbarous nations, made head for a short time, and fell upon the Romans with such fury, that their army was in danger of being totally routed: but Cæsar himself hastily catching up a buckler, rushed through his army into the midst of the enemy, by which means he so turned the fate of the day, that the barbarians were all cut off to a man. The Celtic Gauls, who were powerful by sea, were next brought into subjection. After them the Suevi, the Menappi, and all the nations from the Mediterranean to the British sea. From thence stimulated by the desire of conquest, he crossed over into Britain, upon pretence that the natives had furnished his enemies with continual supplies. Upon approaching the shores, he found them covered with men to oppose his landing, and his forces were in danger of being driven back, till the standard-bearer of the tenth legion boldly leaped ashore, and being well assisted by Cæsar, the natives were put to flight. The Britons being terrified at Cæsar's power, sent to desire a peace, which was granted them, and some hostages delivered. A storm, however, soon after destroying great part of his fleet, they resolved to take advantage of the disaster, and marched against him with a powerful army. But



what could a naked undisciplined army do against forces that had been exercised under the greatest generals, and hardened by the conquests of the greatest part of the world ! being overthrown, they were obliged once more to sue for peace, which Cæsar granted them, and then returned to the continent. Thus, in less than nine years he conquered, together with Britain, all that country which extends from the Mediterranean to the German ocean.

While Cæsar was thus increasing his reputation and riches abroad, Pompey, who remained all the time in Rome, steadily co-operated with his ambition, and advanced his interests, while he vainly supposed he was forwarding his own. By his means, Cæsar was continued five years longer in Gaul ; nor was he roused from his lethargy, till the fame of that great commander's valour, riches, and humanity, began secretly to give him pain, and to make him suppose they began to eclipse his own ; for, as being more recent, they were more talked of. He now, therefore, began to do all in his power to diminish Cæsar's reputation, obliging the magistrates not to publish any letters they received from him, till he had diminished the credit of them, by spreading disadvantageous reports : one or two accidents also helped to widen the separation ; namely, the death of Julia, Pompey's wife, who had not a little contributed to improve the harmony that subsisted between them : and the destruction of Crassus, who had conducted the war against the Parthians with so little prudence, that he suffered the enemy to gain the advantage of him in almost every skirmish : and incapable of extricating himself from the difficulties in which he was involved, he fell a sacrifice to his own rashness, being killed, bravely defending himself to the last.

Cæsar, who now began to be sensible of the jealousies of Pompey, took occasion to solicit for the consulship, together with the prolongation of his government in Gaul, desirous of trying whether Pompey would thwart or promote his pretensions. In this Pompey seemed to be quite inactive ; but at the same time privately employed two of his creatures who alledged that the laws

did not permit a person that was absent to offer himself for that high office. Pompey's view in this was to allure Cæsar from his government, in order to stand for the consulship in person. Cæsar, however, perceiving his artifice, chose to remain in his province, convinced that while he headed such an army as was now devoted to his interest, he could at any time give laws as well as magistrates to the state.

The senate, which was now devoted to Pompey, because he had for some time attempted to defend them from the encroachments of the people, ordered the two legions which were in Cæsar's army, belonging to Pompey, home, as it was pretended, to oppose the Parthians, but, in reality, to diminish Cæsar's power. Cæsar easily saw their motive; but as his plans were not ready for execution, he sent them home in pursuance of the orders of the senate, having previously attached the officers to him with benefits, and the soldiers with a bounty. The next step the senate took, was to recall Cæsar from his government, as his time was now very near expiring. But Curio, his friend, in the senate, proposed that Cæsar should not leave his army, till Pompey had set him the example. This for a while perplexed Pompey; however, during the debate, one of the senate declaring that Cæsar was passing the Alps, and marching with his whole army directly towards Rome, the consul immediately quitting the senate, went with his colleague forth from the city to an house where Pompey at that time resided. He there presented him with a sword, commanding him to march against Cæsar, and fight in defence of the commonwealth. Pompey declared he was ready to obey; but, with an air of pretended moderation, added, that it was only in case more gentle expedients could not be employed.

Cæsar, who was instructed in all that passed, by his partisans at Rome, though he was still in Gaul, was willing to give his aims all the appearance of justice.—He agreed to lay down his employment, when Pompey should do the same. But the senate rejected all his propositions, blindly confident of their own power, and relying on the assurances of Pompey. Cæsar, still unwilling to come to an open rupture with the state, at last was content to ask the government of Illyria with two

legions, but this also was refused him. Now, therefore finding all hopes of an accommodation fruitless, and conscious, if not of the goodness of his cause, at least of the goodness of his troops, he began to draw them down towards the confines of Italy, and passing the Alps with his third legion, stopt at Ravenna, a city of Cisalpine Gaul, from whence he once more wrote a letter to the consuls, declaring that he was ready to resign all command in case Pompey did so too. On the other hand, the senate decreed, that Cæsar should lay down his government, and disband his forces within a limited time; and if he refused obedience, that he should be declared an enemy to the commonwealth. Cæsar, however seemed no way disturbed at these violent proceedings; the night before his intended expedition into Italy, he sat down to table, cheerfully conversing with his friends on subjects of literature and philosophy, and apparently disengaged from every ambitious concern. After some time, rising up, he desired the company to be cheerful in his absence, and that he would be with them in a moment; in the mean time, having ordered his chariot to be prepared, he immediately set out, attended by a few friends, for Arminium, a city upon the confines of Italy, whither he had dispatched a part of his army the morning before. This journey by night, which was very fatiguing, he performed with great diligence, sometimes walking, and sometimes on horseback, till at the break of day, he came up with his army, which consisted of about five thousand men, near the Rubicon, a little river which separates Italy from Gaul, and which terminated the limits of his command. The Romans had ever been taught to consider this river as the sacred boundary of their domestic empire: Cæsar, therefore, when he advanced at the head of his army to the side of the river, stopt short upon the bank, as if impressed with terror at the greatness of his enterprise. He pondered for some time in fixed melancholy, looking upon the river, and debating with himself whether he should venture in. "If I pass this river," said he to one of his generals who stood by him, "what miseries shall I bring upon my country! and if now I stop short, I am undone."—

Thus saying, and resuming all his former alacrity, he plunged in, crying out, "that the die was cast, and all was now over." His soldiers followed him with equal promptitude, and quickly arriving at Arminium, made themselves masters of the place without resistance.

This unexpected enterprise excited the utmost terrors in Rome, every one imagining that Cæsar was leading his army to lay the city in ruins. At one time were to be seen the citizens flying into the country for safety, and the inhabitants of the country coming up to seek shelter in Rome. In this universal confusion, Pompey felt all that repentance and self-condemnation, which must necessarily arise from the remembrance of having advanced his rival to his present pitch of power; wherever he appeared, many of his former friends were ready to tax him with his supineness, and sarcastically to reproach his ill grounded presumption. "Where is now," cried Favonius, a ridiculous senator of his party, "the army that is to rise at your command? Let us see if it will appear by stamping." Cato reminded him of the many warnings he had given him: which however, as he was continually boding nothing but calamities, Pompey might very justly be excused from attending to. But being at length wearied with these reproaches which were offered under colour of advice, he did all that lay in his power to encourage and confirm his followers; he told them that they should not want an army, for that he would be their leader; he confessed, indeed, that he had all along mistaken Cæsar's aims, judging of them only from what they ought to be: however, if his friends were still inspired with the love of freedom, they might yet enjoy it in whatever place their necessities should happen to conduct them. He let them know that their affairs were in a very promising situation; that his two lieutenants were at the head of a very considerable army in Spain, composed of veteran troops that had made the conquest of the East: besides these there were infinite resources both in Asia and Africa, together with the succours they were sure to expect from all the kingdoms in alliance with Rome. This speech served in some measure to revive the hopes of the confederacy. The great-

est part of the senate, his own private friends and dependents, together with all those who expected to make their fortunes in his cause, agreed to follow him. Being in no capacity to resist Cæsar at Rome, he resolved to lead his forces to Capua, where he commanded the two legions that served under Cæsar in Gaul.

### *Exercises.*

What new office did Cæsar obtain? How did he strengthen his power at home? What partition was made of the Foreign Provinces? What nations did Cæsar subdue during his command in Gaul? What opposition did the Britons make? How was Pompey employed during this period? What endeavours did he make to diminish Cæsar's reputation? What became of Crassus? In what manner did Pompey thwart Cæsar's pretensions? How did the Senate attempt to diminish Cæsar's power? In what manner did Cæsar act when recalled by the Senate? What endeavours did he make towards an accommodation? What decree did the Senate make? How did Cæsar express himself at the Rubicon? How was the news of his approach received at Rome? What reproaches did Pompey endure? By what means did he revive the hopes of his Confederates? Whither did he retire with his troops?

### SECTION II.

Cæsar in the mean time, after having vainly attempted to bring Pompey to an accommodation, resolved to pursue him into Capua before he could collect his forces. Accordingly, he marched on to take possession of the cities that lay between him and his rival, not regarding Rome, which he knew would fall of course to the conqueror.

Corlinium was the first city that attempted to stop the rapidity of his march. It was defended by Domitius, who had been appointed by the senate to succeed him in Gaul, and was garrisoned by twenty cohorts which were levied in the countries adjacent; Cæsar, however, quickly invested it; and, though Domitius sent frequently to Pompey, exhorting him to come and raise the siege, he was at last obliged to endeavour to escape privately.—His intentions happening to be divulged, the garrison were resolved to consult their own safety, by delivering him up to the besiegers. Cæsar readily accepted their offers, but kept his men from immediately entering the

town. After some time, Lentulus the consul, who was one of the besieged, came out to implore forgiveness for himself and the rest of the confederates, putting Cæsar in mind of their ancient friendship, and acknowledging the many favours he had received at his hands. To this Cæsar, who would not wait the conclusion of his speech, generously replied, that he came into Italy not to injure the liberties of Rome and its citizens, but to restore them. This humane reply being quickly carried into the city, the senators, and the knights, with their children, and some officers of the garrison, came out to claim the conqueror's protection, who just glancing at their ingratitude, gave them their liberty, with permission to go wheresoever they should think proper. But while he dismissed the leaders, he, upon this, as upon all other occasions, took care to attach the common soldiers to his own interest; sensible that he might stand in need of an army, but that, while he lived, his army could never stand in need of a commander.

Pompey, who was unable to continue in Rome, having intelligence of what passed upon this occasion, immediately retreated to Brundisium, where he resolved to stand a siege, to retard the enemy until the forces of the empire should be united to oppose him. His aim in this succeeded to his wish; and after having employed Cæsar some time in a fruitless siege, he privately passed his forces over to Dyrrachium, where the consul had levied a body of forces for his assistance. However, though he made good his escape, he was compelled to leave the whole kingdom of Italy at the mercy of his rival, without either a town or an army that had strength to oppose his progress.

Cæsar, finding he could not follow Pompey for want of shipping, went back to Rome to take possession of the public treasures, which his opponent, by a most unaccountable oversight, had neglected taking with him. However, upon his coming up to the door of the treasury, Metellus, the Tribune, who guarded it, refused to let him pass; but Cæsar with more than usual emotion, laying his hand upon his sword, threatened to strike him dead: "And know, young man," cried he,

“that it is easier to do this than to say it.” This menace had its effect ; Metellus retired, and Cæsar took out of the treasury, to the amount of three thousand pounds weight of gold, besides an immense quantity of silver.

Having thus provided for continuing the war, he departed from Rome, resolving to subdue Pompey’s lieutenants Afranius and Petreius, who had been long in Spain at the head of a veteran army, composed of the choicest legions of the empire, who had been ever victorious under all its commanders. Cæsar, however, who knew the abilities of its two present generals, jocosely said, as he was preparing to go thither, that he went to fight an army without a general, and upon conquering it, would return to fight a general without an army.

The first conflict which he had with Afranius and Petreius was rather unfavourable. It was fought near the city of Herda, and both sides claimed the victory. But by various stratagems, he reduced them at last to such extremities of hunger and drought, that they were obliged to yield at discretion. Clemency was his favourite virtue: he dismissed them all with the kindest professions, and sent them home to Rome, laden with shame and obligations, to publish his virtues, and confirm the affections of his adherents. Thus, in the space of about forty days, he became master of all Spain, and returned victorious to Rome. The citizens upon this occasion received him with fresh demonstrations of joy, and created him dictator and consul ; but the first of these offices he laid down after he had held it eleven days.

While Cæsar was thus employed, Pompey was equally active in making preparations in Epirus and Greece to oppose him. All the monarchs of the East had declared in his favour, and sent very large supplies. He was master of nine effective Italian legions, and had a fleet of five hundred large ships, under the conduct of Bibulus, an active and experienced commander. Added to these, he was supplied with large sums of money, and all the necessaries for an army, from the tributary provinces round him. He had attacked Antony and Dolabella, who commanded for Cæsar in that part of the

empire, with such success, that the former was obliged to flee, and the latter was taken prisoner. Crowds of the distinguished citizens and nobles from Rome came every day to join him. He had at one time above two hundred senators in his camp, among whom were Cicerō and Cato, whose approbation of his cause was equivalent to an army.

Notwithstanding these preparations, Cæsar shipped off five of his twelve legions at Brundisium, and weighing anchor, fortunately steered through the midst of his enemies, timing it so well that he made his passage in one day. Still, however, convinced that the proper time for making proposals for a peace was after gaining an advantage, he sent one Rufus, whom he had taken prisoner, to effect an accommodation with Pompey, offering to refer all to the senate and people of Rome; but Pompey once more rejected the overture, holding the people of Rome too much in Cæsar's interest to be relied on.

Pompey had been raising supplies in Macedonia, when first informed of Cæsar's landing upon the coasts of Epirus: he, now, therefore, resolved immediately to march to Dyrrachium, in order to cover that place from Cæsar's attempts, as all his ammunition and provisions were deposited there. The first place where both armies came in sight of each other, was on the opposite banks of the river Aspus: and as both were commanded by the two greatest generals then in the world, the one renowned for his conquest of the East; the other celebrated for his victories over the Western parts of the empire, a battle was eagerly desired by the soldiers on either side: but neither general was willing to hazard it upon this occasion: Pompey could not rely upon his new levies, and Cæsar would not venture an engagement, till he was joined by the rest of his forces.

Cæsar had now waited some time with extreme impatience for the coming up of the remainder of his army, and even ventured out alone in an open fishing boat to hasten its arrival, but he was driven back by a storm. However, his disappointment was soon relieved, by information of the landing of the troops he had long ex-



pected at Apollonia, from whence they were approaching under the conduct of Anthony and Calenus, to join him; he, therefore, decamped in order to meet them, and prevent Pompey, with his army, from engaging them on their march, as he lay on that side of the river, where the succours had been obliged to come on shore.

Pompey being compelled to retreat, led his forces to Asparagus, nigh Dyracchium, where he was sure of being supplied with every thing necessary for his army, by the numerous fleets which he employed along the coasts of Epirus: there he pitched his camp upon a tongue of land, (as mariners express it) that jutted into the sea, where also was a small shelter for ships, where few winds could annoy them. In this place, being most advantageously situated, he immediately began to entrench his camp, which Cæsar perceiving, and finding that he was not likely soon to quit so advantageous a post, began to entrench behind him: and as all beyond Pompey's camp toward the land side, was hilly and steep, he built redoubts upon the hills, stretching round from shore to shore, and then caused lines of communication to be drawn from hill to hill, by which he blocked up the camp of the enemy. He hoped, by this blockade, to force his opponent to a battle, which he ardently desired. Thus, both sides continued for some time employed in designs and stratagems, the one to annoy, the other to defend. Cæsar's men daily carried on their works to straiten the enemy: those of Pompey did the same to enlarge themselves, having the advantage of numbers, and severely galled the enemy with their slingers and archers. Cæsar, however, was indefatigable; he caused blinds or mantles to be made of skins of beasts, to cover his men while at work; he cut off all the water that supplied the enemy's camp, and forage from the horses, so that there remained no more subsistence for them. But Pompey at last resolved to break through his lines, and gain some other part of the country more convenient for encampment. Accordingly, having informed himself of the condition of Cæsar's fortifications from some deserters who came over to him, he ordered his light infantry and archers on board his ships, with

directions to attack Cæsar's entrenchments by sea, where they were least defended. This was done with such effect, that though Cæsar and his officers used their utmost endeavours to hinder Pompey's designs, yet, by means of reiterated attempts, he at last effected his purpose of extricating his army from his former camp, and of encamping in another place by the sea, where he had the conveniency of forage and shipping also. Cæsar being thus frustrated in his views of blocking up the enemy, and perceiving the loss he had sustained, resolved to force Pompey to a battle, though upon disadvantageous terms. The engagement began, by attempting to cut off a legion which was posted in a wood, and this brought on a general battle. The conflict was for some time carried on with great ardour, and with equal fortune : but Cæsar's army being entangled in the entrenchments of the old camp lately abandoned, began to fall into disorder : upon which Pompey pressing his advantage, they, at last fled with great precipitation. Great numbers perished in the trenches, and the banks of the river, or were pressed to death by their fellows. Pompey pursued his successes to the very camp of Cæsar : but either surprised with the suddenness of his victory, or fearful of an ambuscade, he withdrew his troops into his own camp, and thus lost an opportunity of securing his victory.

### *Exercises.*

What resolution did Cæsar adopt on learning Pompey's departure ? What city first attempted to stop his march ? How did the garrison act ? What reply did Cæsar make to the speech of Lentulus ? In what manner did he discover his generosity ? To what place did Pompey retreat ? Whither did he pass after the siege of Brundisium ? For what purpose did Cæsar visit Rome ? In what manner did he address Metellus ? Who next engaged his attention ? What took place in the first conflict with Afranius and Petreius ? In what manner did he act after they had yielded ? What honours were conferred upon him after his return from Spain ? How was Pompey meanwhile, engaged in Greece ? What victory did he obtain over Cæsar's Lieutenants ? What terms of accommodation did Cæsar propose on his arrival in Greece ? How did Pompey act on learning that Cæsar had landed ? What prevented a battle at the river Asopus ? Where did the remainder of Cæsar's forces land ? To what place did Pompey lead his troops ? In what manner did Cæsar block up Pompey's camp ? How did he cut off Pompey's subsistence ? By what means did Pompey extricate his army ? Who was victorious in the battle ensued ?

## SECTION III.

After this defeat, which was by no means decisive, Cæsar marched, with all his forces united into one body directly to Gomphi, a town in the province of Thessaly. But the news of his defeat at Dyrrachium had reached this place before him: the inhabitants therefore, who had before promised him obedience, now changed their minds, and with a degree of baseness equal to their imprudence, shut their gates against him. Cæsar was not to be injured with impunity; wherefore, having represented to his soldiers the great advantage of forcing a place so very rich, he ordered the machines for scaling to be got ready; and causing an assault to be made, proceeded with such vigour, that notwithstanding the great height of the walls, the town was taken in a few hours, Cæsar left it to be plundered, and without delaying his march, went forward to Metropolis, another town of the same province, which yielded at his approach. By this means he soon became possessed of all Thessaly, except Larissa, which was garrisoned by Scipio, with his legion, who commanded for Pompey. During this interval, Pompey's officers were continually soliciting their commander to come to a battle, and incessantly teasing him with importunities to engage, he at length resolved to renounce his own judgment in compliance with those about him, and to give up all schemes of prudence for those dictated by avarice and passion. Wherefore advancing into Thessaly, within a few days after the taking of Gomphi, he drew down upon the plains of Pharsalia, where he was joined by Scipio, his lieutenant with the troops under his command. There he waited the coming up of Cæsar, resolved upon engaging, and upon deciding the fate of the kingdoms at a single battle.

Cæsar had employed all his art for some time in sounding the inclinations of his men, and finding his army once more resolute and vigorous, he caused them to advance towards the plains of Pharsalia, where Pompey was now encamped, and prepared to oppose him.

The approach of these two great armies, composed of

the best and bravest troops in the world, together with the greatness of the prize for which they contended, filled all minds with anxiety, though with different expectations. Pompey's army being most numerous, turned all their thoughts to the enjoyment of the victory : Cæsar's, with better aims, considered only the means of obtaining it : Pompey's army depended upon their numbers and their many generals ; Cæsar's upon their own discipline, and the conduct of their single commander : Pompey's partizans hoped much from the justice of their cause ; Cæsar's alledging the frequent proposals which they had made without effect. Thus, the views, hopes and motives of both seemed different, but their hatred and ambition were the same. Cæsar, who was foremost in offering battle, led out his army in array to meet the enemy ; but Pompey, either suspecting his troops, or dreading the event, kept his advantageous situation for some time : he drew indeed sometimes out of his camp, but always kept himself under his trenches, at the foot of the hill near which he was posted. Cæsar being unwilling to attack him at a disadvantage, resolved to decamp next day, hoping to harass out his antagonist, who was not a match for him, in sustaining the fatigues of duty. Accordingly, the order for marching was given, and the tents struck, when word was brought him that Pompey's army had quitted their entrenchments, and had advanced farther into the plain than usual, so that he might engage them at less disadvantage : whereupon he caused his troops that were upon their march to halt, and, with a countenance of joy informed them, that the happy time was at length come, which they had so long wished for, and which was to crown their glory, and terminate their fatigues. Upon this he drew up his troops in order, and advanced towards the place of battle.—His forces did not amount to above half those of Pompey : the army of the one amounting to above forty-five thousand foot, and seven thousand horse : that of the other not exceeding twenty-two thousand foot, and about a thousand horse. This disproportion, particularly in the cavalry, had filled Cæsar with apprehensions, wherefore he had some days before picked out the strong-

at and nimblest of his foot soldiers, and accustomed them to fight between the ranks of his cavalry. By their assistance his thousand horse was a match for Pompey's seven thousand, and had actually got the better in a skirmish that happened between them some days before.

Pompey on the other hand, had strong expectations of success ; he boasted that he could put Cæsar's legions to flight without striking a single blow ; presuming that as soon as the armies formed, his cavalry on which he placed his greatest expectations, would outflank and surround the enemy ; Labienus commended this scheme of Pompey, alledging also that the present troops, of which Cæsar's army was composed, were but the shadow of those old legions that had fought in Britain and Gaul ; that all the veterans were worn out, and had been replaced by new levies made in a hurry in Cisalpine Gaul. To increase the confidence of the army still more, he took an oath, which the rest followed him in, never to return to the camp but with victory. In this disposition and under these advantageous circumstances, Pompey led his troops to battle.

Pompey's order of battle was good and well judged : In the centre, and on the two flanks, he placed all his veterans, and distributed his new-raised troops between the wings and the main body. The Syrian legions were placed in the centre, under the command of Scipio ; the Spaniards, on whom he greatly relied, were put on the right under Domitius Ænobarbus, and on the left were stationed the two legions, which Cæsar had restored in the beginning of the war, led on by Pompey himself ; because from thence he intended to make the attack which was to gain the day ; and for the same reason he had there assembled all his horse, slingers, and archers, of which his right wing had no need, being covered by the river Enipius. Cæsar, likewise, divided his army into three bodies, under three commanders ; Domitius Calvinus being placed in the centre, and Mark Antony on the left, while he himself led on the right wing, which was to oppose the left, commanded by Pompey. It is remarkable enough, that Pompey chose to put himself at

the head of those troops which were disciplined and instructed by Cæsar, an incontestible proof how much he valued them above any of the rest of his army. Cæsar, on the contrary, placed himself at the head of his tenth legion, that had owed all its merit and fame to his own training. As he observed the enemy's numerous cavalry to be all drawn to one spot, he guessed at Pompey's intention; to obviate which, he made a draught of six cohorts from his rear line, and forming them into a separate body, concealed them behind his right wing, with instructions not to throw their javelins on the approach of Pompey's horse, as was customary, but to keep them in their hands, and push them directly in the faces and eyes of the horsemen, who being composed of the younger part of the Roman nobility, valued themselves much upon their beauty, and dreaded a scar in the face more than a wound in the body. He lastly placed the little cavalry he had, so as to cover the right of the tenth legion, ordering his third line not to march till they had received the signal from him.

As the armies approached, the two generals went from rank to rank, encouraging their men, warming their hopes, and lessening their apprehensions. Pompey represented to his men, that the glorious occasion which they had long besought him to grant, was now before them; "and indeed," cried he, "what advantages could you wish over an enemy that you are not now possessed of? Your numbers, your vigour, a late victory, all assure a speedy and an easy conquest of those harassed and broken troops, composed of men worn out with age, and imprest with the terrors of a recent defeat; but there is still a stronger bulwark for our protection than the superiority of our strength, the justice of our cause. You are engaged in the defence of liberty and of your country; you are supported by its laws, and followed by its magistrates; you have the world spectators of your conduct, and wishing you success; on the contrary, he whom you oppose is a robber and an oppressor of his country, and almost already sunk with the consciousness of his crimes, as well as the bad success of his arms.—Shew, then, on this occasion, all that ardour and detestation of tyranny that should animate Romans, and do

justice to mankind." Cæsar on his side, went among his men with that steady serenity for which he was so much admired in the midst of danger. He insisted on nothing so strongly to his soldiers as his frequent and unsuccessful endeavours for peace. He talked with terror of the blood he was going to shed, and pleaded only the necessity that urged him to it. He deplored the many brave men that were to fall on both sides, and the wounds of his country whoever should be victorious. His soldiers answered his speech with looks of ardour and impatience; which observing, he gave the signal to begin. The word on Pompey's side was Hercules the invincible: that on Cæsar's, Venus the victorious. There was only so much space between both armies as to give room for fighting; wherefore Pompey ordered his men to receive the first shock without moving out of their places, expecting the enemy's ranks to be put into disorder by their motion. Cæsar's soldiers were now rushing on with their usual impetuosity, when perceiving the enemy motionless, they all stopt short as if by general consent and halted in the midst of their career. A terrible pause ensued, in which both armies continued to gaze upon each other with mutual terror and dreadful serenity; at length Cæsar's men having taken breath, ran furiously upon the enemy, first discharging their javelins, and then drawing their swords. The same method was observed by Pompey's troops, who as vigorously sustained the attack. His cavalry also were ordered to charge at the very onset, which, with the multitude of archers and slingers soon obliged Cæsar's men to give ground; whereupon Cæsar immediately ordered the six cohorts, that were placed as a reinforcement to advance, with orders to strike at the enemy's faces. This had its desired effect: the cavalry that were but just now sure of victory, received an immediate check; the unusual method of fighting pursued by the cohorts, their aiming entirely at the visages of the assailants, and the horrible disfiguring wounds they made, all contributed to intimidate them so much, that instead of defending their persons, their only endeavour was to save their faces. A total rout ensued of their whole body, which

fled in great disorder to the neighbouring mountains, while the archers and slingers, who were thus abandoned, were cut to pieces. Cæsar now commanded the cohorts to pursue their success; and advancing, charged Pompey's troops upon the flank: this charge the enemy withstood for some time with great bravery, till he brought up his third line which had not yet engaged.—Pompey's infantry being thus doubly attacked, in front by fresh troops, and in rear by the victorious cohorts, could no longer resist, but fled to their camp. The flight began among the strangers, though Pompey's right wing still valiantly maintained their ground. Cæsar, however, being convinced that the victory was certain, with his usual clemency, cried out, to pursue the strangers, but to spare the Romans; upon which they all laid down their arms and received quarter. The greatest slaughter was among the auxiliaries, who fled on all quarters, but principally went for safety to the camp. The battle had now lasted from the break of day till noon, the weather being extremely hot; nevertheless the conquerors did not remit their ardour, being encouraged by the example of their general, who thought his victory not complete, till he was master of the enemy's camp. Accordingly, marching on foot at their head, he called upon them to follow and strike the decisive blow. The cohorts, which were left to defend the camp, for some time made a formidable resistance, particularly a body of Thracians, and other barbarians who were appointed for its defence; but nothing could resist the ardour of Cæsar's victorious army; they were at last driven from their trenches, and all fled to the mountains not far off. Cæsar seeing the field and camp strewn with his fallen countrymen, was strongly affected at so melancholy a prospect, and could not help crying out to one that stood near him, "They would have it so." Upon entering the enemy's camp, every object presented fresh instances of the blind presumption and madness of his adversaries: on all sides were to be seen tents adorned with ivy, and branches of myrtle; couches covered with purple, and sideboards loaded with plate. Every thing gave proof of the highest luxury, and seemed rather the preparatives for a



banquet, or the rejoicings for a victory, than the dispositions for a battle. A camp so richly furnished might have been able to engage the attention of any troops but Cæsar's; there was still something to be done, and he would not permit them to pursue any other object than their enemies, till they were entirely subdued. A considerable body of these having retired to the mountains, he prevailed on his soldiers to join in the pursuit; in order to oblige these to surrender. He began by enclosing them with a line drawn at the foot of the mountain; but they quickly abandoned a post which was not tenable for want of water, and endeavoured to reach the city of Larissa. Cæsar led a part of his army by a shorter way, and intercepted their retreat, drawing up in order of battle between them and the city. However these unhappy fugitives once more found protection from a mountain, at the foot of which a rivulet ran, which supplied them with water. Now night approaching, Cæsar's men were almost spent, and ready to faint with their incessant toil since morning, yet still he prevailed upon them once more to renew their labours, and to cut off the rivulet that supplied the defendants. The fugitives, thus deprived of all hopes of succour or subsistence, sent deputies to the conquerors, offering to surrender at discretion. During this interval of negociation, a few senators that were among them took the advantage of the night to escape, and the rest next morning gave up their arms and experienced the conqueror's clemency. In fact, he addressed them with great gentleness, and forbade his soldiers to offer them any violence, or to take any thing from them. Thus Cæsar, by his conduct, gained the most complete victory that had ever been obtained; and by his great clemency after the battle seemed to have deserved it. His loss amounted to but two hundred men, and that of Pompey to fifteen thousand, as well Romans as auxiliaries; twenty-four thousand men surrendered themselves prisoners of war, and the greatest part of these entered into Cæsar's army, and were incorporated with the rest of his forces. As to the senators and Roman knights who fell into his hands, he generously

gave them liberty to retire whether they thought proper; and as for the letters which Pompey had received from several persons who wished to be thought neutral, he burnt them all without reading them, as Pompey had done on a former occasion. Thus, having performed all the duties of a general and a statesman, he sent for the legions which had passed the night in the camp, to relieve those which had accompanied him in the pursuit, and arrived the same day at Larissa.

As for Pompey, who had formerly shewn such instances of courage and conduct, when he saw his cavalry routed, on which he placed his sole dependence, he absolutely lost his reason. Instead of thinking how to remedy this disorder, by rallying such troops as fled, or by opposing fresh troops to stop the progress of the conquerors, being totally amazed by this first blow, he returned to the camp, and in his tent waited the issue of an event, which it was his duty to direct, not to follow: there he remained for some moments without speaking, till being told that the camp was attacked, "What," says he, "are we pursued to our very intrenchments;" and immediately quitting his armour for a habit more suitable to his circumstances, he fled away on horseback to Larissa; from whence, perceiving he was not pursued, he slackened his pace, giving way to all the agonizing reflections which his deplorable situation must naturally suggest. In this melancholy manner, he passed along the vale of Tempe, and pursuing the course of the river Peneus, at last arrived at a fisherman's hut, in which he passed the night. From thence he went on board a little bark, and keeping along the sea-shore, he descried a ship of some burden, which seemed preparing to sail, in which he embarked, the master of the vessel still paying him the homage which was due to his former station. From the mouth of the river Peneus, he sailed to Amphipolis, where finding his affairs desperate, he steered to Lesbos to take in his wife Cornelia, whom he had left there at a distance from the dangers and hurry of the war. She, who had long flattered herself with the hopes of victory, felt the reverse of her fortune in an agony of distress; she was desired by the messenger,

whose tears more than words proclaimed the greatness of her misfortunes, to hasten if she expected to see Pompey, with but one ship, and that not his own : her grief, which before was violent, became then insupportable ; she fainted away, and lay a considerable time without any signs of life. At length, recovering herself and reflecting it was now no time for vain lamentations, she ran quite through the city to the sea-side. Pompey embraced her without speaking a word, and for some time supported her in his arms in silent despair.

Having taken in Cornelia, he now continued his course, steering to the south-east, and stopping no longer than was necessary to take in provisions at the ports that occurred in his passage. He was at last prevailed upon to apply to Ptolemy king of Egypt, to whose father Pompey had been a considerable benefactor. Ptolemy, who was as yet a minor, had not the government in his own hands, but he and his kingdom were under the direction of Photinus, an eunuch, and Theodotus, a master of the art of speaking. These advised that Pompey should be invited on shore, and there slain ; and accordingly, Achilles, the commander of the forces, and Septimius, by birth a Roman, and who had formerly been a centurion in Pompey's army, were appointed to carry their opinions into execution. Being attended by three or four more, they went into a little bark, and rowed off from land towards Pompey's ship that lay about a mile from the shore. Pompey, after having taken leave of Cornelia, who wept at his departure, and having repeated two verses of Sophocles, signifying, that he who trusts his freedom to a tyrant, from that moment becomes a slave, gave his hand to Achilles, and stepped into the bark with only two attendants of his own. They had now rowed from the ship a good way, and as during that time they all kept a profound silence, Pompey, willing to begin the discourse, accosted Septimius, whose face he recollected. " Methinks, friend," cried he, " you and I were once fellow-soldiers together." Septimius gave only a nod with his head, without uttering a word, or instancing the least civility. Pompey, therefore, took out

a paper, on which he had minuted a speech he intended making to the king, and began reading it. In this manner they approached the shore, and Cornelia, whose concern had never suffered her to lose sight of her husband, began to conceive hope, when she perceived the people on the strand crowding down along the coasts, as if willing to receive him: but her hopes were soon destroyed: for that instant, as Pompey rose, supporting himself upon his freed-man's arm, Septimius stabbed him in the back, and was instantly seconded by Achillas. Pompey perceiving his death inevitable, only disposed himself to meet it with decency, and covering his face with his robe, without speaking a word, with a sigh resigned himself to his fate. At this horrid sight, Cornelia shrieked so loud as to be heard to the shore; but the danger she herself was in, did not allow the mariners time to look on; they immediately set sail, and the wind proving favourable, fortunately they escaped the pursuit of the Egyptian galleys. In the mean time, Pompey's murderers having cut off his head, caused it to be embalmed, the better to preserve its features, designing it for a present to Cæsar. The body was thrown naked on the strand, and exposed to the view of all those whose curiosity led them that way. However, his faithful freed-man Philip, still kept near it, and when the crowd was dispersed, he washed it in the sea, and looking round for materials to burn it, he perceived the wreck of a fishing-boat, of which he composed a pile. While he was thus piously employed, he was accosted by an old Roman soldier who had served under Pompey in his youth. "Who art thou," said he, "that art making these humble preparations for Pompey's funeral?" Philip having answered that he was one of his freed-men: "Alas," replied the soldier, "permit me to share in this honour also: among all the miseries of my exile it will be my last sad comfort, that I have been able to assist at the funeral of my old commander, and touch the body of the bravest general that ever Rome produced." After this, they both joined in giving the corpse the last rites, and collecting his ashes buried them under a little rising earth, scraped together with their hands, over which was afterwards placed the

following inscription :—" He, whose merits deserve a Temple, can now scarce find a Tomb."

### *Exercises.*

1. In what manner did Cæsar treat the inhabitants of Gomphi? What success attended him afterwards? What solicitations did Pompey's Officers make? Where did both armies again meet? What was the number of Pompey's army? What of Cæsar's? What was Pompey's order of battle? How did Cæsar divide his army? What instructions did he give his cohorts? What was the word on Pompey's side? What on Cæsar's? By what means was Pompey's cavalry routed? How did his infantry act? Was Pompey's camp taken? What became of those who had retired to the mountains? What was the loss in both armies? In what manner did Cæsar treat the prisoners who fell into his hands? What became of Pompey? Who performed his funeral rites?

## CHAPTER XIX

*From the Destruction of the Commonwealth to the Establishment of the First Emperor Augustus.*

### SECTION I.

Cæsar has been much celebrated for his fortune, and yet his abilities seem equal to his U.C.706. highest success. He possessed many shining qualities, without the intermixture of any defect but that of ambition. His talents were such as would have rendered him victorious at the head of any army he commanded, and he would have governed in any republic that had given him birth. Having now gained a most complete victory, his success only seemed to increase his activity; and inspire him with fresh resolution to face new dangers.—He resolved therefore to pursue his last advantage, and to follow Pompey to whatever country he should retire; convinced that during his life, he might gain new triumphs, but could never enjoy security.

Accordingly, losing no time, he set sail for Egypt, and arrived at Alexandria, with about forty thousand men; a very inconsiderable force to keep such a powerful kingdom under subjection. Upon his landing, the first accounts he received were of Pompey's miserable end; and soon after, the murderers came with his head and ring, as a most grateful present to the conqueror. But Cæsar had too much humanity to be pleased with such an horrid spectacle: he turned away from it with disgust, and, after a short pause, gave vent to his pity in a flood of tears. He shortly after ordered a magnificent tomb to be erected to his memory, on the spot where he was murdered, and a temple near the place to Nemesis, who was the goddess that punished those that were cruel to men in adversity.

It should seem that the Egyptians by this time had some hopes of breaking off alliance with the Romans, which they considered, as in fact it was, but a specious subjection. They first began to take offence at Cæsar's carrying the ensigns of Roman power before him as he entered the city. Photinus the eunuch, also treated him with great disrespect, and even attempted his life. Cæsar, however, concealed his resentment till he had a force sufficient to punish his treachery; and sending privately for the legions which had been formerly inrolled for Pompey's service, as being the nearest to Egypt, he in the mean time pretended to repose an entire confidence in the king's minister, making great entertainments, and assisting at the conferences of the philosophers, who were in great numbers at Alexandria. However, he soon changed his manner, when he found himself in no danger from the minister's attempts, and declared, that as being a Roman consul, it was his duty to settle the succession of the Egyptian crown.

There were at that time two pretenders to the crown of Egypt; Ptolemy the acknowledged king, and the celebrated Cleopatra, his sister, to whom, by the custom of the country, he also was married; and who, by his father's will, shared jointly in the succession. Not being contented with a bare participation of power, Cleopatra aimed at governing alone; but being opposed in her

views by the Roman senate, who confirmed her brother's title to the crown, she was banished into Syria, with Arsinoë, her younger sister. Cæsar gave her new hopes of aspiring to the kingdom, and sent both to her and her brother to plead their cause before him. Photinus, the young king's guardian, disdained accepting this proposal, and backed his refusal, by sending an army of twenty thousand men to besiege him in Alexandria. Cæsar bravely repulsed the enemy for some time; but finding the city of too great extent to be defended by so small an army as he then commanded, he retired to the palace which commanded the harbour, where he proposed to make his stand. Achilles, who commanded the Egyptians, attacked him there with great vigour, and still aimed at making himself master of the fleet that was before the palace. Cæsar, however, too well knew the importance of those ships in the hands of an enemy, and therefore burnt them all in spite of every effort to prevent him. He next possessed himself of the isle of Pharos, which was the key to the Alexandrian port; by which he was enabled to receive the supplies sent him from all sides; and in this situation he determined to withstand the united force of all the Egyptians.

In the mean time, Cleopatra having heard of the present turn in her favour, resolved to depend rather on Cæsar's favour, for gaining the government, than her own forces. But no arts, as she justly conceived, were so likely to influence Cæsar as the charms of her person, which, though not faultless, were yet extremely seductive. She was now in the bloom of youth, and every feature borrowed grace from the lively turn of her temper. To the most enchanting address, she joined the most harmonious voice. With all these accomplishments, she possessed a great share of the learning of the times, and could give audience to the ambassadors of seven different nations without an interpreter. The difficulty was how to get at Cæsar, as her enemies were in possession of all the avenues that led to the palace. For this purpose, she went on board a small vessel, and in the evening landed near the palace, where being wrapt up in a coverlet, she was carried by one Aspolodorus into the

very chamber of Cæsar. Her address at first pleased him ; her wit and understanding still fanned the flame ; but her caresses, which were carried beyond the bounds of innocence, entirely brought him over to second her claims.

While Cleopatra was thus employed in forwarding her own views, her sister Arsinoë was also strenuously engaged in the camp in pursuing a separate interest. She had found means, by the assistance of one Ganymede, her confidant, to make a large division in the Egyptian army in her favour ; and soon after, by one of those sudden revolutions which are common in barbarian camps to this day, she caused Achilles to be murdered, and Ganymede to take the command in his stead, and to carry on the siege with greater vigour than before. Ganymede's principal effort was by letting in the sea upon those canals which supplied the palace with fresh water ; but this inconvenience Cæsar remedied, by digging a great number of wells. His next endeavour was to prevent the junction of Cæsar's twenty-fourth legion, which he twice attempted in vain. He soon after made himself master of a bridge which joined the isle of Pharos to the continent, from which post Cæsar was resolved to dislodge him. In the heat of the action some mariners, partly through curiosity, and partly ambition, came in and joined the combatants ; but, being seized with a panic, instantly fled, and spread a general terror through the army. All Cæsar's endeavours to rally his forces were in vain, the confusion was past remedy, and numbers were drowned or put to the sword in attempting to escape. Now, therefore, seeing the irremediable disorder of his troops, he retired to a ship, in order to get to the palace that was just opposite, however, he was no sooner on board, than great crowds entered at the same time with him : upon which, apprehensive of the ship sinking, he jumped into the sea and swam two hundred paces to the fleet that lay before the palace, all the time holding his own commentaries in his left hand above water, and his coat of mail in his teeth.

The Alexandrians, finding their efforts to take the palace ineffectual, endeavoured at least, to get their king



out of Cæsar's power, as he had seized upon his person in the beginning of their disputes. For this purpose they made use of their customary arts of dissimulation, professing the utmost desire of peace, and only wanting the presence of their lawful prince to give a sanction to the treaty. Cæsar, who was sensible of their perfidy, nevertheless concealed his suspicions, and gave them their king, as he was under no apprehensions from the abilities of a boy. Ptolemy, however, the instant he was set at liberty, instead of promoting the peace, made every effort to give vigour to their hostilities.

In this manner Cæsar was hemmed in for some time by this artful and insidious enemy, with all manner of difficulties against him; but he was at last relieved from this mortifying situation by Mithridates Pergamenus, one of his most faithful partisans, who came with an army to his assistance. This general, collecting a numerous army in Syria, marched into Egypt, took the city of Pelusium, repulsed the Egyptian army with loss, and at last joining with Cæsar, attacked their camp with a great slaughter of the Egyptians; Ptolemy himself, attempting to escape on board a vessel that was sailing down the river, was drowned by the ship's sinking, and Cæsar thus became master of all Egypt without any farther opposition. He therefore, appointed Cleopatra, with her younger brother, who was then but an infant, as joint governors, according to the intent of their father's will, and drove out Arsinoë, with Ganymede into banishment.

### *Exercises.*

What was the character of Cæsar? Where did he conduct his army after the battle of Pharsalia? What honour did he pay to the memory of Pompey? In what manner did Photinus treat Cæsar? Who were the pretenders to the Crown of Egypt? In what manner did Photinus treat Cæsar's proposal? To what place did Cæsar retire? What became of the Fleet? What art did Cleopatra employ to gain the favour of Cæsar? What exertions did Ganymede make to reduce him? In what danger was Cæsar at this time? What art did the Alexandrians employ to get their King? Who at last relieved Cæsar from his mortifying situation? What became of Ptolemy? Whom did Cæsar appoint to govern Egypt?

## SECTION II.

Cæsar having thus given away kingdoms, for a while seemed to relax from the usual activity of his conduct captivated with the charms of Cleopatra. Instead of quitting Egypt to go and quell the remains of Pompey's party, he there abandoned himself to his pleasures, passing whole nights in feasting, and all the excesses of high wrought luxury with the young queen. He even resolved to attend her up the Nile into Æthiopia; but the brave veterans, who had long followed his fortune, boldly reprehended his conduct, and refused to be partners in so infamous an expedition. Thus, at length, roused from his lethargy, he resolved to prefer the call of ambition to that of love, and to leave Cleopatra, (by whom he had a son, who was afterwards named Cæsario) in order to oppose Pharnaces, the king of Cosphorus, who had made some inroads upon the dominions of Rome.

This prince, who was the son of the great Mithridates, being ambitious of recovering his father's dominions, seized upon Armenia and Colchis, and overcame Domitius, who had been sent against him. Upon Cæsar's march to oppose him, Pharnaces, who was as much terrified at the name of the general, as at the strength of his army, laboured, by all the arts of negociation, to avert the impending danger. Cæsar, exasperated at his crimes and ingratitude, at first dissembled with the ambassadors, and using all expedition, fell upon the enemy unexpectedly, and in a few hours, obtained a speedy and complete victory. Pharnaces, attempting to take refuge in his capital, was slain by one of his own commanders. A just punishment for his former parricide. But Cæsar conquered him with so much ease, that in writing to a friend at Rome, he expressed the rapidity of his victory in three words, "*Veni, vidi, vinci.*" A man so accustomed to conquest, thought a slight battle scarce worth a longer letter.

Cæsar having settled affairs in this part of the empire as well as time would permit, embarked for Italy, where he arrived sooner than his enemies could expect, but not before his affairs there absolutely required his presence.

He had been, during his absence, created consul for five years, dictator for one year, and tribune of the people for life. But Antony, who in the mean time governed in Rome for him, had filled the city with riot and debauchery, and many commotions ensued, which nothing but the arrival of Cæsar so opportunely could appease. However, by his moderation and humanity, he soon restored tranquillity to the city, scarce making any distinction between those of his own and the opposite party. Having by gentle means, restored his authority at home, he prepared to march into Africa, where Pompey's party had found time to rally under Scipio and Cato, assisted by Juba, king of Mauritania; and with his usual diligence landed with a small body in Africa, while the rest of his army followed him. Scipio coming to a battle soon after, received a complete and final overthrow, with little or no loss on the side of the victor. Juba and Petreius his general, killed each other in despair; Scipio, attempting to escape by sea into Spain, fell in among the enemy and was slain; so that of all the generals of that undone party, Cato was now the only one that remained.

This extraordinary man, whom no prosperity could elate, nor misfortunes depress, having retired into Africa after the battle of Pharsalia, had led the wretched remains of that defeat through burning deserts, and tracts infested with serpents of various malignity, and was now in the city of Utica, which he had been left to defend. Still, however, in love with even the shew of Roman government, he had formed the principal citizens into a senate, and conceived a resolution of holding out the town. But the enthusiasm for liberty subsiding among his followers, he was resolved no longer to force men to be free, who seemed naturally prone to slavery. He now, therefore, desired some of his friends to save themselves by sea, and bade others to rely on Cæsar's clemency; observing, that, as to himself, he was at last victorious. After this, snapping cheerfully among his friends, he retired to his apartment, where he behaved with unusual tenderness to his son, and to all his friends. When he came into his bed-chamber, he

laid himself down, and took up Plato's dialogues on the immortality of the soul ; and having read for some time, happening to cast his eyes to the head of his bed, he was much surprised not to find his sword there, which had been taken away by his son's order, while they were at supper. Upon this, calling one of his domestics, to know what was become of his sword, and receiving no answer, he resumed his studies, but some time after called for his sword again. When he had done reading, and perceiving nobody obeyed him in bringing his sword, he called his domestics one after the other, and with a peremptory air, demanded his sword once more. His son came in soon after, and with tears besought him in the most humble manner to change his resolution ; but receiving a stern reprimand, he desisted from his persuasions. His sword being at length brought him he seemed satisfied, and cried out, " Now again I am master of myself." He then took up the book again, which he read twice over, and fell into a sound sleep. Upon awaking, he called one of his freed-men to know if his friends were embarked, or if any thing yet remained that could be done to serve them. The freed-man assuring him that all was quiet, he was then ordered again to leave the room ; and Cato was no sooner alone, than he stabbed himself with his sword, below the chest, but not with that force he intended, for the wound not dispatching him, he fell upon his bed, and at the same time overturned a table on which he had been drawing some geometrical figures. At the noise he made in his fall, his servants gave a shriek, and his son and friends immediately entered the room. They found him weltering in his blood, and his bowels pushed out through the wound. The physician who attended his family, perceiving that his intestines were yet untouched, was for replacing them ; but when Cato had recovered his senses, and understood their intention to preserve his life, he pushed the physician from him and with a fierce resolution, tore out his bowels, and expired.

Upon the death of Cato, the war in Africa being completed, Cæsar returned in triumph to Rome ; and, as if he had abridged all his former triumphs only to increase

splendor of this, the citizens were astonished at the magnificence of the procession, and the number of the countries he had subdued. It lasted four days; the first was for Gaul, the second for Egypt, the third for his victories in Asia, and the fourth for that over Juba in Africa. His veteran soldiers, all scarred with wounds, and now laid up for life, followed their triumphant general, crowned with laurels, and conducted him to the Capitol. To every one of these he gave a sum equivalent to about an hundred and fifty pounds of our money, double that sum to the centurions, and four times as much to the superior officers. The citizens also shared his bounty; to every one of whom he distributed ten bushels of corn, ten pounds of oil, and a sum of money equal to about two pounds sterling of ours. He after this entertained the people at about twenty thousand tables, treated them with the combat of gladiators, and filled Rome with a concourse of spectators from every part of Italy.

The people, intoxicated with the allurements of pleasure, thought their freedom too small a return for such benefits: they seemed eager only to find out new modes of homage and unusual epithets of adulation for their great enslaver. He was created by a new title *Magister Morum*, or master of the morals of the people: he received the title of Emperor, Father of his country; his person was declared sacred; and in short, upon him alone were devolved for life all the great dignities of the state. It must be owned, however, that so much power could not have been entrusted to better keeping. He immediately began his empire by repressing vice and encouraging virtue. He committed the court of judicature to the senators and the knights alone, and by many sumptuary laws restrained the scandalous luxuries of the rich. He proposed rewards to all such as had many children, and took the most prudent methods of repeopling the city that had been exhausted in the late commotions.

Having thus restored prosperity once more to Rome, he again found himself under a necessity of going into Spain to oppose an army which had been raised there un-

der the two sons of Pompey, and also Labienus, his former general. He proceeded in this expedition with his usual celerity, and arrived in Spain before the enemy thought him yet departed from Rome. Cneius and Sextus, Pompey's sons, profiting by their unhappy father's example, resolved as much as possible to protract the war; so that the first operations of the two armies were spent in sieges and fruitless attempts to surprise each other. At length Cæsar, after taking many cities from the enemy, and pursuing Pompey with unwearied perseverance, at last compelled him to come to a battle upon the plains of Munda. Pompey drew up his men by break of day, upon the declivity of an hill, with great exactness and order. Cæsar drew up his men likewise in the plain below: and, after advancing a little way from his trenches, he ordered his men to make a halt, expecting the enemy to come down from the hill. This delay made Cæsar's soldiers begin to murmur, while Pompey's with full vigour poured down upon them, and a dreadful conflict ensued. The first shock was so dreadful, that Cæsar's men, who had hitherto been used to conquer, now began to waver. Cæsar was never in so much danger as now: he threw himself several times into the very throng of battle: "What," cried he, "are you going to give up your general, who is grown grey in fighting at your head, to a parcel of boys." Upon this the tenth legion exerted themselves with more than former bravery; and a party of horse being detached by Labienus from the camp in pursuit of a body of Numidian cavalry, Cæsar cried aloud that they were flying. This cry instantly spreading itself through both armies excited the one as much as it depressed the other. Now, therefore, the tenth legion pressed forward, and a total rout soon ensued. Thirty thousand men were killed on Pompey's side, among whom was Labienus, whom Cæsar ordered to be buried with the funeral honours of a general officer. Cneius Pompey escaped with a few horsemen to the sea-side, but finding his passage intercepted by Cæsar's lieutenant, he was obliged to seek for a retreat in an obscure cavern. He was quickly discovered by some of Cæsar's troops, who presently cut off

his head, and brought it to the conqueror. His brother Sextus, however, concealed himself so well that he escaped all pursuit, and afterwards became very noted and formidable, from his piracies to the people of Rome.

Cæsar, by this last blow, subdued all his avowed enemies, and the rest of his life was employed for the advantage of the state. He adorned the city with magnificent buildings; he rebuilt Carthage and Corinth, sending colonies to both cities; he undertook to level several mountains in Italy: to drain the Pomptine marshes near Rome, and designed to cut through, the isthmus of Peloponnesus. Thus, with a mind that could never remain inactive, he pondered mighty objects and designs beyond the limits of the longest life; but the greatest of all was his intended expedition against the Parthians, by which he designed to revenge the death of Crassus, who having penetrated too far into their country, was overthrown, himself taken prisoner, and put to a cruel death, by having molten gold poured down his throat, as a punishment for his former avarice. From thence Cæsar intended to pass through Hyrcania, and enter Scythia, along the banks of the Caspian sea, then to open himself a way through the immeasurable forests of Germany into Gaul, and so to return to Rome. These were the aims of ambition: the jealousy of a few individuals put an end to them all.

### *Exercises.*

In what manner did Cæsar now conduct himself? Who at length roused him from his lethargy? Whom did he march to oppose? How did he express the rapidity of his victory? By what means did Cæsar restore tranquillity? Where did he afterwards march? What consequences resulted at Rome from his victory over Scipio? How did Cato act after the battle of Pharsalia? What became of him afterwards? What took place on Cæsar's return to Rome? How long did this triumph last? What homage did the people pay him? What occasioned his march to Spain? What took place on the plains of Munda? What endeavours did Cæsar make to rally his troops? What number were slain on Pompey's side? What became of Pompey and Labienus? What great designs did Cæsar afterwards undertake? What put a stop to all these?

## SECTION III.

Having been made perpetual dictator, and received from the senate accumulated honours, it began to be rumoured that he intended to make himself king, and, though in fact he was possessed of the power, the people, who had an utter aversion to the name, could not bear his assuming the title. Whether he really designed to assume that empty honour, must now for ever remain a secret ; but certain it is, that the unsuspecting openness of his conduct, marked something like a confidence in the innocence of his intentions. When informed by those about him of the jealousies of many persons who envied his power, he was heard to say, that he had rather die once by treason, than to live continually in apprehension of it. When advised of some to beware of Brutus, in whom he had for some time reposed the greatest confidence, he opened his breast all scared with wounds, saying, " Can you think that Brutus cares for such poor pillage as this ;" and being one night at supper, as his friends disputed among themselves what death was easiest, he replied that which was most sudden and least foreseen. But to convince the world how little he had to apprehend from his enemies he disbanded his company of Spanish guards, which facilitated the the enterprise against his life.

A deep conspiracy was therefore laid against him, composed of no less than sixty senators. They were still the more formidable, as the generality of them were of his own party, who having been raised above other citizens, felt more strongly the weight of a single superior. At the head of this conspiracy was Brutus, whose life Cæsar had spared after the battle of Pharsalia, and Cassius, who was pardoned soon after ; both prætors for the present year. Brutus made it his chief glory to be descended from that Brutus who first gave liberty to Rome. The passion for freedom seemed to have been transmitted with the blood of his ancestors down to him. But though he detested tyranny, yet he could not forbear loving the tyrant, from whom he had received the most signal benefits.



The conspirators, to give a colour of justice to their proceedings, remitted the execution of their design to the ides of March, the day on which Cæsar was to be offered the crown. The augurs had foretold that this day would be fatal to him, and the night preceding he heard his wife Culpurnia lamenting in her sleep ; and being awakened, she confessed to him that she dreamed of his being assassinated in her arms. These omens, in some measure, began to change his intention of going to the senate, as he had resolved that day ; but one of the conspirators coming in, prevailed upon him to keep his resolution, telling him of the reproach that would attend his staying at home till his wife had lucky dreams, and of the preparations that were made for his appearance. As he went along to the senate, a slave, who hastened to him with information of the conspiracy, attempted to come near him, but could not for the crowd. Artemidorus, a Greek philosopher, who had discovered the whole plot, delivered him a memorial containing the heads of the information : but Cæsar gave it with other papers, to one of his secretaries without reading, as was usual in things of this nature. Being at length entered the senate-house, where the conspirators were prepared to receive him, he met one Spurina an augur, who had foretold his danger, to whom he said smiling, " Well Spurina, the ides of March are come." " Yes," replied the augur, " but they are not yet over." As soon as he had taken his place, the conspirators came near him, under pretence of saluting him ; and Cimber, who was one of them, approached in a suppliant posture, pretending to sue for his brother's pardon, who had been banished by his order. All the conspirators seconded him with great earnestness ; and Cimber, seeming to sue with greater submission, took hold of the bottom of his robe, holding him so as to prevent his rising. This was the signal agreed on. Casea, who was behind, stabbed him, though slightly, in the shoulder. Cæsar instantly turned round, and, with the steel of his tablet wounded him in the arm. However, all the conspirators were now alarmed, and inclosing him round, he received another stab from an unknown hand in the breast, while Cassius

wounded him in the face. He still defended himself with great vigour, rushing among them, and throwing down such as opposed him, till he saw Brutus among the conspirators, who coming up, struck his dagger into his thigh. From that moment, Cæsar thought no more of defending himself: but looking upon this conspirator, cried out, "And you, my son." Then covering his head, and spreading his robe before him, in order to fall with greater decency, he sunk down at the base of Pompey's statue, after receiving three and twenty wounds, from hands which he vainly supposed he had disarmed by his benefits.

U. C. 710. Cæsar was killed in the fifty-sixth year of his age, and about fourteen years after he began the conquest of the world. If we examine his history, we shall be equally at a loss whether most to admire his great abilities or his wonderful fortune. To pretend to say that from the beginning he planned the subjugation of his native country, is doing no great credit to his well known penetration, as a thousand obstacles lay in his way, which fortune, rather than conduct was to surmount. No man therefore, of his sagacity, would have begun a scheme in which the chances of succeeding were so many against him: it is most probable that like all very successful men, he only made the best of every occurrence; and his ambition rising with his good fortune, from at first being contented with humbler aims, he at length began to think of governing the world, when he found scarce any obstacle to oppose his designs.—Such is the disposition of man, whose cravings after power are always most insatiable when he enjoys the greatest share.

As soon as the conspirators had dispatched Cæsar they all retired to the Capitol, and guarded its accesses by a body of gladiators which Brutus had in pay.

The friends of the late dictator now began to find that this was the time for coming into greater power than before, and the satisfying their ambition under the veil of promoting justice: of this number was Antony, whom we have already seen acting as a lieutenant under Cæsar, and governing Rome in his absence. He was a man of

moderate abilities and excessive vices, ambitious of power, only because it gave his pleasures a wider range to riot in, but skilled in war, to which he had been trained from his youth. He was consul for this year, and resolved, with Lepidus, who was fond of commotions like himself, to seize the opportunity of gaining that power which Cæsar had died for usurping. Lepidus therefore, took possession of the forum, with a band of soldiers at his devotion: and Antony, being consul, was permitted to command them. The first step was to possess themselves of all Cæsar's papers and money, and the next to convene the senate. Never had this august assembly been convened on so delicate an occasion, as it was to determine whether Cæsar had been a legal magistrate or a tyrannical usurper: and whether those who killed him merited rewards or punishments. There were many of these who had received all their promotions from Cæsar, and had acquired large fortunes in consequence of his appointment: to vote him innocent, might endanger the state. In this dilemma, they seemed willing to reconcile extremes; wherefore, they approved all the acts of Cæsar, and yet granted a general pardon to all the conspirators.

This decree was very far from giving Antony satisfaction, as it granted security to a number of men who were the avowed enemies of tyranny, and who would be foremost in his schemes of restoring absolute power. As, therefore, the senate had ratified all Cæsar's acts without distinction, he formed a scheme upon this of making him rule when dead, as imperiously as he had done when living. Being, as was said, possessed of Cæsar's books of accounts, he so far gained upon his secretary as to make him insert whatever he thought proper. By these means, great sums of money, which Cæsar would never have bestowed, were there distributed among the people; and every man who had any seditious designs against the government, was there sure of finding a gratuity. Things being in this situation, Antony demanded of the senate that Cæsar's funeral obsequies should be performed, which they could not decently forbid, as they had never declared him a tyrant; accordingly, the

body was brought forth into the forum with the utmost solemnity : and Antony, who charged himself with the last duties of friendship, began his operations upon the passions of the people, by the prevailing motives of private interest. He first read them Cæsar's will, in which he had left Octavius, his sister's grandson, his heir, permitting him to take the name of Cæsar, and three parts of his private fortune : and Brutus was to inherit in case of his death. The Roman people were left the gardens which he had on the other side of the Tyber : and every Roman citizen in particular was to receive three hundred aesterces ; and unfolding Cæsar's bloody robe in sight of the multitude, he took care they should observe the number of stabs in it ; he then displayed an image which to them appeared the body of Cæsar all covered with wounds. They could no longer contain their indignation, but unanimously cried out for revenge, and ran with flaming brands from the pile to set fire to the houses of the conspirators. In this rage of resenting, meeting with one Cinna, whom they mistook for another of the same name, who was in the conspiracy, they tore him in pieces. The conspirators themselves, however, being well guarded, repulsed the multitude with no great trouble, but perceiving the rage of the people, they thought it soon after safest to retire from the city.

In the mean time Antony, who had excited this flame, revolved to make the best of the occasion. But an obstacle to his ambition seemed to arise from a quarter on which he least expected it, namely from Octavius Cæsar, afterwards called Augustus, who was the grand-nephew and adopted son of Cæsar. A third competitor also for power appeared in Lepidus, a man of some authority, and great riches in Rome. At first the ambition of these three seemed to threaten fatal consequences to each other ; but, uniting soon after in the common cause, they resolved to revenge the death of Cæsar, and dividing all power among themselves, formed what was called the Second Triumvirate.

The meeting of these three usurpers of their country's freedom, was near Mutina, upon a little island of the river Panarus. Their mutual suspicions were the cause

of their meeting in a place where they could not fear any treachery : for even in their union they could not divest themselves of mutual diffidence. Lepidus first entered, and finding all things safe, made the signal for the other two to approach. They embraced each other upon their first meeting : and Augustus began the conference by thanking Antony for his zeal in putting Decimus Brutus to death, who being abandoned by his army, was taken, as he was designing to escape into Macedonia, and beheaded by Antony's command. They then entered upon the business that lay before them, without any retrospection of the past. Their conference lasted for three days ; and in this period, they fixed the division of government, and determined upon the fate of thousands. The result of which was that the supreme authority should be lodged in their hands, under the title of the Triumvirate, for the space of five years ; that Antony should have Gaul, Lepidus Spain, and Augustus Africa, and the Mediteranean islands. As for Italy and the Eastern provinces, they were to remain in common, until their general enemy was entirely subdued : among other articles of union it was also agreed, that all their enemies should be destroyed, of which each presented a list. In these were comprised not only the enemies, but the friends of the Triumvirate, since the partisans of the one were often found among the opposers of the other. Thus Lepidus gave up his brother Paulus to the vengeance of his colleague ; Antony permitted the proscription of his uncle Lucius ; and Augustus delivered up the great Cicero, who was assassinated shortly after by Antony's command.

### *Exercises.*

What rumours were raised respecting Cæsar? What reply did he make when advised to beware of Brutus? Who were the Principal Conspirators? What day was fixed for the execution of their design? Who prevailed upon him to go to the Senate? Who attempted to discover the plot to him on his way thither? Who laid hold of his robe when he had taken his place? What defence did Cæsar make? In what manner did he address Brutus? What number of wounds did he receive? To what place did the conspirators retire? What advantage did Antony and Lepidus resolve to make of these commotions? What scheme did

Antony form upon the Senate's decree? In what manner did he inflame the passions of the people? What were the consequences? With whom did Antony form a Second Triumvirate? What division of the Empire did they make?



## SECTION IV.

In the mean time, Brutus and Cassius, the principal of the conspirators against Cæsar, being compelled to quit Rome, went into Greece, where they persuaded the Roman students at Athens to declare in the cause of freedom: then parting, the former raised a powerful army in Macedonia, and the adjacent countries, while the latter went into Syria, where he soon became master of twelve legions, and reduced his opponent Dollabella to such straits as to kill himself. Both armies, soon after joining at Smyrna, the sight of such a formidable force began to revive the declining spirits of the party, and to reunite the two generals more closely, between whom there had been some time before a slight misunderstanding. In short, having quitted Italy like distressed exiles, without having one single soldier, or one town that owned their command, they now found themselves at the head of a flourishing army, furnished with all the necessaries for carrying on the war, and in a condition to support a contest, where the empire of the world depended on the event. This success in raising levies was entirely owing to the justice, moderation, and great humanity of Brutus, who in every instance seemed studious of the happiness of his country, and not his own.

It was in this flourishing state of their affairs that the conspirators had formed a resolution of going against Cleopatra, who had made great preparations to assist their opponents. However, they were diverted from this purpose, by information that Augustus and Antony were now upon their march with forty legions to oppose them. Brutus, therefore, moved to have their army pass over into Greece and Macedonia, and there meet the enemy; but Cassius so far prevailed as to have the Rhodians and Lycians first reduced, who had refused their usual con-

tributions. This expedition was immediately put in execution, and extraordinary contributions were raised by that means, the Rhodians having scarce any thing left them but their lives. The Lycians suffered still more severely; for having shut themselves up in the city of Zanthius, they defended the place against Brutus with such fury, that neither his arts nor his entreaties could prevail upon them to surrender. At length, the town being set on fire, by their attempting to burn the works of the Romans, Brutus, instead of laying hold of this opportunity to storm the place, made every effort to preserve it, entreating his soldiers to try all means of extinguishing the fire: but the desperate phrenzy of the citizens was not to be mollified. Far from thinking themselves obliged to their generous enemy for the efforts which were made to save them, they resolved to perish in the flames. Wherefore, instead of extinguishing, they did all in their power to augment the fire by throwing in wood, dry reeds, and all kinds of fuel. Nothing could exceed the distress of Brutus upon seeing the townsmen thus resolutely bent on destroying themselves; he rode about the fortifications, stretching out his hands to the Xanthians, and conjuring them to have pity on themselves and their city; but, insensible to his expostulations, they rushed into the flames with desperate obstinacy, and the whole soon became an heap of undistinguishable ruin. At this horrid spectacle Brutus melted into tears, offering a reward to every soldier who would bring him a Lycian alive. The number of those whom it was possible to save from their own fury, amounted to no more than one hundred and fifty.

Brutus and Cassius met once more at Sardis, where after the usual ceremonies were past between them, they resolved to have a private conference together. They shut themselves up, therefore, in the first convenient house, with express orders to their servants to give no admission. Brutus began, by reprimanding Cassius for having disposed of offices which should ever be the reward of merit, and for having overtaxed the tributary states. Cassius retorted the imputation of avarice with more bitterness, as he knew the charge to be groundless.

The debate grew warm, till from loud speaking, they burst into tears. Their friends who were standing at the door, overheard the increasing vehemence of their voices, and began to dread for the consequences, till Favonius, who valued himself upon a cynical boldness that knew no restraint, entering the room, with a jest, calmed their mutual animosity. Cassius was ready enough to forego his anger, being a man of great abilities, but of uneven disposition; not averse to pleasure in private company; and upon the whole, of morals not quite sincere. But the conduct of Brutus was always perfectly steady. An even gentleness, a noble elevation of sentiment, a strength of mind, over which neither vice nor pleasure could have any influence; an inflexible firmness in the defence of justice, composed the character of that great man. After their conference, night coming on, Cassius invited Brutus and his friends to an entertainment, where freedom and cheerfulness for a while took place of political anxiety, and softened the severity of wisdom. Upon retiring home, it was that Brutus, as Plutarch tells the story, saw a spectre in his tent. He naturally slept but little, and he had increased this state of watchfulness by habit and great sobriety. He never allowed himself to sleep in the day-time, as was then common in Rome, and only gave so much of the night to sleep as could barely renew the animal functions. But especially now, when opprest with such various cares, he only gave a short time after his nightly repast to rest; and waking about midnight, generally read or studied till morning. It was in the dead of night, when the whole camp was perfectly quiet, that Brutus was thus employed in reading by a lamp that was just expiring. On a sudden he thought he heard a noise as if somebody entered, and looking towards the door, he perceived it open. A gigantic figure, with a frightful aspect stood before him, and continued to gaze upon him with silent severity. At last Brutus had courage to speak to it:—"Art thou a demon, or a mortal man? and why comest thou to me?" "Brutus," replied the phantom, "I am thy evil genius: thou shalt see me again at Philippi." "Well then," answered Brutus, without being



discomposed, "we shall meet again." Upon which the phantom vanished, and Brutus calling to his servants, asked if they had seen any thing? to which replying in the negative, he again resumed his studies. But as he was struck with so strange an occurrence, he mentioned it next day to Cassius, who being an Epicurean, ascribed it to the effects of an imagination too much exercised by vigilance and anxiety. Brutus appeared satisfied with this solution of his late terrors; and as Antony and Augustus were now advanced into Macedonia, he and his colleague passed over into Thrace, and drew near to the city of Philippi, where the forces of the Triumviri were posted to receive them.

All mankind now began to regard the approaching armies with terror and suspense. The empire of the world depended upon the fate of a battle; as from victory on one side, they had to expect freedom; but from the other, a sovereign with absolute command. Brutus was the only man who looked upon these great events before him with calmness and tranquillity. Indifferent as to success, and satisfied with having done his duty, he said to one of his friends, "If I gain the victory, I shall restore liberty to my country; if I lose it by dying, I shall be delivered from slavery myself; my condition is fixed, and I run no hazards." The republican army consisted of fourscore thousand foot, and twenty thousand horse. The army of the Triumviri amounted to an hundred thousand foot, and thirteen thousand horse. Thus, complete on both sides, they met and encamped near each other upon the plains of Philippi, a city upon the confines of Thrace. This city was situated upon a mountain, towards the west of which a plain stretched itself, by a gentle declivity, almost fifteen leagues to the banks of the river Strymon. In this plain about two miles from the town were two little hills, at about a mile distant from each other, defended on one side by mountains, on the other by a marsh, which communicated with the sea. It was upon these two hills that Brutus and Cassius fixed their camps; Brutus on the hill towards the north, Cassius on that towards the south;

O 2

and in the intermediate space which separated them they cast up lines and a parapet from one hill to the other. Thus, they kept a firm communication between the two camps, which mutually defended each other.

In this commodious situation, they could act as they thought proper, and give battle only when it was thought to their advantage to engage. Behind them was the sea, which furnished them with all kind of provisions; and at twelve miles distance, the isle of Thasos, which served them for a general magazine. The Triumviri on the other hand, were encamped on the plain below, and were obliged to bring their provisions from fifteen leagues distance: so that their scheme and interest was to bring on a battle as soon as they could. This they offered several times, drawing out their men from their camp, and provoking the enemy to engage.

On the contrary, these contented themselves with drawing up their troops at the head of their camps, but without descending to the plain. This resolution of postponing the battle was all that the republican army had for it; and Cassius, who was aware of his advantage, resolved to harass the enemy rather than engage them. But Brutus began to suspect the fidelity of some of his officers, so that he used all his influence to persuade Cassius to change his resolution, "I am impatient," said he, "to put an end to the miseries of mankind, and in that I have hopes of succeeding, whether I fall or conquer." His wishes were soon gratified; for Antony's soldiers having with great labour, made a road through the marsh which lay to the left of Cassius' camp, by that means opened a communication with the island of Thasos which lay behind him. Both armies in attempting to possess themselves of this road, resolved at last to come to a general engagement. This, however, was contrary to the advice of Cassius, who declared that he was forced, as Pompey had been, to expose the liberty of Rome to the hazard of a battle.—The ensuing morning, the two generals gave the signal of engaging, and conferred together a little while before the battle began. Cassius desired to know how Brutus intended to act, in case they were unsuccessful: to which

the other replied, "That he had formerly, in his writings, condemned the death of Cato, and maintained, that to avoid calamities by suicide, was an insolent attempt against Heaven that sent them ; but he had now altered his opinion, and having given up his life to his country, he thought he had a right to his own way of ending it ; wherefore, he was resolved to exchange at miserable being here for a better hereafter, if fortune proved against him." "Well said my friend," cried Cassius, embracing him, "now we may venture to face the enemy : for either we shall be conquerors ourselves, or we shall have no cause to fear those that are so." Augustus being sick, the forces of the Triumviri were commanded alone by Antony, who began the battle by a vigorous attack upon the lines of Cassius. Brutus, on the other side, made a dreadful irruption on the army of Augustus, and drove forward with so much intrepidity, that he broke them upon the very first charge. Upon this he penetrated as far as the camp, and, cutting in pieces those who were left for its defence, his troops immediately began to plunder ; but in the mean time the lines of Cassius were forced, and his cavalry put to flight. There was no effort that this unfortunate general did not use to make his infantry stand, stopping those that fled, and seizing himself the colours to rally them. But his own valour alone was not sufficient to inspire his timorous army ; wherefore, despairing of success, he caused himself to be slain by one of his freed-men. Brutus was soon informed of the defeat of Cassius, and soon after of his death, as he drew near the camp. He seemed scarce able to restrain the excess of his grief for a man whom he called the last of the Romans.

But his first care when he became the sole general, was to assemble the dispersed troops of Cassius, and animate them with fresh hopes of victory. As they had lost all they possessed by the plundering of their camp, he promised them two thousand denarii each man to make up their losses. This once more inspired them with new ardour, they admired the liberality of their ge-

neral, and with loud shouts proclaimed his former intrepidity. Still, however, he had not confidence sufficient to face the adversary, who offered him battle the ensuing day. His aim was to starve his enemies, who were in extreme want of provisions, their fleet having been lately defeated. But his single opinion was over-ruled by the rest of his army, who grew every day more confident of their strength, and more arrogant to their new general. He was therefore at last, after a respite of twenty days, obliged to comply with their solicitations to try the fate of a battle. Both armies being drawn out, they remained a long time opposite to each other, without offering to engage. But it is said that he himself had lost much of his natural ardour by having seen a spectre the night preceding: however, he encouraged his men as much as possible, and gave the signal for another battle. He had as usual, the advantage where he commanded in person, bearing down the enemy at the head of his infantry, and supported by his cavalry, making a very great slaughter. But the troops which belonged to Cassius, communicated their terror to the rest of the forces: so that at last the whole army gave way. Brutus, surrounded by the most valiant of his officers, fought for a long time with amazing valour. The son of Cato fell fighting by his side, as also the brother of Cassius; so that at last he was obliged to yield to necessity, and fled. In the mean time, the Triumviri, now assured of a victory, expressly ordered by no means to suffer the general to escape, for fear he should renew the war.—Thus the whole body of the enemy seemed chiefly intent on Brutus alone, and his capture seemed inevitable.

In this deplorable exigence, Lucilius, his friend, was resolved by his own death to effect his general's delivery. Upon perceiving a body of Thracian horse closely pursuing Brutus, and just upon the point of taking him, he boldly threw himself in their way, telling them that he was Brutus. The Thracians overjoyed with so great a prize, immediately dispatched some of their companions with the news of their success to the army. Upon which the ardour of the pursuit now abating, Antony marched out to meet his prisoner, and hasten his death or insult

his misfortunes. He was followed by a great number of officers and soldiers, some silently deploring the fate of so virtuous a man; others reproaching that mean desire of life for which he consented to undergo captivity. Antony now seeing the Thracians approach, began to prepare himself for the interview: but the faithful Lucidius, advancing with a cheerful air, "It is not Brutus," said he, "that is taken; fortune has not yet had the power of committing so great an outrage upon virtue. As for my life it is well spent in preserving his honour; take it, for I have deceived you." Antony, struck with so much fidelity, pardoned him upon the spot; and from that time forward loaded him with benefits, and honoured him with his friendship.

In the mean time Brutus, with a small number of friends, passed over a rivulet, and, night coming on, sat down under a rock, which concealed him from the pursuit of the enemy. After taking breath for a little time and casting his eyes up to heaven, he repeated a line from Euripides, containing a wish to the gods, "that guilt should not pass in this life without punishment."—To this he added another from the same poet, "O virtue! thou empty name, I have worshipped thee as a real good, but thou art only the slave of fortune." He then called to mind, with great tenderness, those whom he had seen perish in battle, and sent out one Statilius to give him some information of those that remained; but he never returned, being killed by a party of the enemy's horse. Brutus judging very rightly of his fate, now resolved to die likewise, and spoke to those who stood round him to lend him their last sad assistance.—None of them however, would render him so melancholy a service. He therefore called to one of his slaves to perform what he so ardently desired; but Strato, his tutor, offered himself, crying out, "that it should never be said that Brutus, in his last extremity, stood in need of a slave for want of a friend." Thus saying, and averting his head, he presented the sword's point to Brutus, who threw himself upon it, and immediately expired.

*Exercises.*

To what place did Brutus and Cassius retire? What success attended their exertions? Who marched to oppose them? What desperate obstinacy were the Lycians guilty of? What took place when Brutus and Cassius met at Sardis? What was the character of Cassius? What of Brutus? To what place did Brutus and Cassius lead their army? In what manner did Brutus address his friends? What was the number of the Republican army? What of the Triumviri? Where did Brutus and Cassius fix their camps? Who began the battle? What became of Cassius? How did Brutus inspire his troops with ardour? What took place in the second battle? What endeavour did Lucilius make to save Brutus? What became of Brutus?



## SECTION VI.

From the moment of Brutus' death the Triumviri began to act as sovereigns, and to divide the Roman dominions between them, as theirs by right of conquest. However, though there were apparently three who participated all power, yet in fact only two were actually possessed of it, since Lepidus was at first admitted merely to curb the mutual jealousy of Antony and Augustus; and was possessed neither of interest in the army, nor authority among the people. Their first care was to punish those whom they had formerly marked for vengeance. Hortensius, Drusus, and Quintilius Varus, all men of the first rank in the commonwealth, either killed themselves or were slain. A senator and his son were ordered to cast lots for their lives, but both refused it: the father voluntarily gave himself up to the executioner, and the son stabbed himself before his face. Another begged to have the rites of burial after his death, to which Augustus replied, "That he should find a grave in the vultures that devoured him." But chiefly the people lamented to see the head of Brutus sent to Rome, to be thrown at the foot of Cæsar's statue. His ashes were sent to his wife Porcia, Cato's daughter, who, following the example of her husband and father, killed herself by swallowing burning coals. It is observed, that of all those who had a hand in the death of Cæsar, not one died a natural death.

The power of the Triumviri being thus established upon the ruin of the commonwealth, they now began to think of enjoying that homage to which they had aspired. Antony went into Greece to receive the flattery of that refined people, and spent some time at Athens, conversing among the philosophers, and assisting at their disputes in person. From thence he passed over into Asia, where all the monarchs of the East, who acknowledged the Roman power came to pay him their obedience while the fairest princesses strove to gain his favour by the greatness of their presents or allurements of their beauty. In this manner he proceeded from kingdom to kingdom, attended by a crowd of sovereigns, exacting contributions, distributing favours, and giving away crowns with capricious insolence. He presented the kingdom of Cappadocia to Sysenes, in prejudice of Ariarathes, only because he found pleasure in the beauty of Glaphyra, the mother of the former. He settled Herod in the kingdom of Judea, and supported him against every opposer. But among all the sovereigns of the East who shared his favours, none had so large a part as Cleopatra, the celebrated queen of Egypt.

It happened that Serapion, her governor in the island of Cyprus, had formerly furnished some succours to the conspirators; and it was thought proper that she should answer for his conduct on that occasion. Accordingly, having received orders from Antony to come and clear herself of this imputation of infidelity, she readily complied, equally conscious of the goodness of her cause, and the power of her beauty. She was now in her twenty-seventh year, and consequently had improved those allurements by art, which in earlier age, are seldom attended to. Her address and wit were still further heightened, and though there were some women in Rome that were her equals in beauty, none could rival her in the charms of seducing conversation. Antony was now in Tarsus, a city of Cilicia, when Cleopatra resolved to attend his court in person. She sailed to meet him down the river Cydnus, at the mouth of which the city stood, with the most sumptuous pageantry. Her galley was covered with gold, the sails of purple, large, and floating

in the wind. The oars of silver, kept time to the sound of flutes and cymbals. She herself lay reclined on a couch spangled with stars of gold, and with such ornaments as poets and painters had usually ascribed to Venus. On each side were boys like Cupids, who fanned her by turns; while the most beautiful nymphs, dressed like Nereides and Graces, were placed at proper distances around her. Upon the banks of the river were kept burning the most exquisite perfumes, while an infinite number of people gazed upon the sight with a mixture of delight and admiration. Antony was captivated with her beauty, and leaving all his business to satisfy his passion, shortly after followed her into Egypt. There he continued in all that ease and softness to which his vicious heart was prone, and which that luxurious people were able to supply.

While he remained thus idle in Egypt, Augustus, who took upon him to lead back the veteran troops, and settle them in Italy, was assiduously employed in providing for their subsistence. He had promised them lands at home, as a recompense for their past services; but they could not receive their new grants without turning out the former inhabitants. In consequence of this, multitudes of women, with children in their arms, whose years and innocence excited universal compassion, daily filled the temples and the streets with their distresses.—Numbers of husbandmen and shepherds came to deprecate the conqueror's intention, or to obtain an habitation in some other part of the world. Among this number was Virgil, the poet, to whom mankind owe more obligations than to a thousand conquerors, who in a humble manner begged permission to retain his patrimonial farm: Virgil obtained his request, but the rest of his countrymen of Mantua and Cremona, were turned out without mercy.

Italy and Rome now felt the most extreme miseries; the insolent soldiers plundered at will, while Sextus Pompey, being master of the sea, cut off all foreign communication, and prevented the people's receiving their usual supplies of corn. To these mischiefs were added the commencement of another civil war. Fulvia,



the wife of Antony, who had been left behind him at Rome, had felt for some time all the rage of jealousy, and resolved to try every method of bringing back her husband from the arms of Cleopatra. She considered a breach with Augustus as the only probable means of rousing him from his lethargy; and accordingly, with the assistance of Lucius, her brother-in-law, who was then consul, and entirely devoted to her interest, she began to sow the seeds of dissension. The pretext was, that Antony should have a share in the distribution of lands as well as Augustus. This produced negotiations between them, and Augustus offered to make the veterans themselves umpires in the dispute. Lucius refused to acquiesce; being at the head of more than six legions, mostly composed of such as were dispossessed, he resolved to compel Augustus to accept of whatever terms he should offer. Thus a new war was excited between Augustus and Antony, or at least the generals of the latter assumed the sanction of his name. Augustus, however, was victorious; Lucius was hemmed in between two armies, and constrained to retreat to Perusia, a city of Etruria, where he was closely besieged by the opposite party. He made many desperate sallies, and Fulvia did all in her power to relieve him, but without success. He was at last, therefore, reduced to such extremity by famine, that he came out in person, and delivered himself up to the mercy of the conqueror. Augustus received him every honourably, and generously pardoned him and all his followers.

Antony having heard of his brother's overthrow, and his wife's being compelled to leave Italy, was resolved to oppose Augustus without delay. He accordingly sailed at the head of a considerable fleet, from Alexandria to Tyre, and from thence to Cyprus and Rhodes, and had an interview with Fulvia, his wife, at Athens. He much blamed her for occasioning the late disorders, testified the utmost contempt for her person, and leaving her upon her death-bed at Scion, hastened into Italy to fight Augustus. They both met at Brundisium, and it was now thought that the flames of a civil war were going to blaze out once more. The forces of Antony were nume-

rous, but mostly new raised ; however, he was assisted by Sextus Pompeius, who, in these oppositions of interest, was daily coming into power. Augustus was at the head of those veterans who had always been irresistible, but who seemed no way disposed to fight against Antony, their former general. A negotiation was therefore proposed, and by the activity of Coccius, a friend to both, a reconciliation was effected, all offences and affronts were mutually forgiven ; and to cement the union, a marriage was concluded between Antony and Octavia, the sister of Augustus. A new division of the Roman empire was made between them ; Augustus was to have the command of the West, Antony of the East, while Lepidus was obliged to content himself with the provinces in Africa. As for Sextus Pompeius, he was permitted to retain all the islands he had already possessed, together with Peloponnesus ; he was also granted the privilege of demanding the consulship in his absence, and of discharging that office by any of his friends. It was likewise stipulated to leave the sea open, and pay the people what corn was due out of Sicily. Thus a general peace was concluded to the great satisfaction of the people, who now expected a cessation from all their calamities.

This calm seemed to continue for some time ; Antony led his forces against the Parthians, over whom his lieutenant Ventidius had gained some advantages. Augustus drew the greatest part of his army into Gaul, where there were some disturbances ; and Pompey went to secure his newly ceded province to his interest. It was on this quarter that fresh motives were given for renewing the war. Antony, who was obliged by treaty to quit Peloponnesus, refused to evacuate it, till Pompey had satisfied him for such debts as were due to him from the inhabitants. This Pompey would by no means comply with, but immediately fitted out a new fleet, and renewed his former enterprises, by cutting off such corn and provisions as were consigned to Italy. Thus, the grievances of the poor were again renewed, and the people began to complain, that instead of three tyrants, they were now oppressed by four.

In this exigence, Augustus, who had long meditated the best means of diminishing the number, resolved to begin by getting rid of Pompey, who kept the state in continual alarms. He was master of two fleets; one which he had caused to be built at Ravenna, and another which Menodorus, who revolted from Pompey, brought to his aid. His first attempt was to invade Sicily; but being overpowered in his passage by Pompey, and afterwards shattered in a storm, he was obliged to defer his designs to the ensuing year. During this interval he was reinforced by a noble fleet of one hundred and twenty ships, given him by Antony, with which he resolved once more to invade Sicily on three several quarters. But fortune seemed still determined to oppose him. He was a second time disabled and shattered by a storm, which so raised the vanity of Pompey, that he began to style himself the son of Neptune. However, Augustus was not to be intimidated by any disgrace: for having shortly after refitted his navy, and recruited his forces, he gave the command of both to Agrippa, his faithful friend and associate in war. Agrippa proved himself worthy of the trust reposed in him; he began his operations by a victory over Pompey; and though he was shortly after worsted himself, he soon after gave his adversary a complete and final overthrow. Thus undone Pompey resolved to flee to Antony, from whom he expected refuge, as he had formerly obliged that triumvir, by giving refuge to his mother. However, a gleam of hope offering, he tried once more, at the head of a small body of men, to make himself independent, and even surprised Antony's lieutenants, who had been sent to accept of his submission. Nevertheless, he was at last abandoned by his soldiers, and delivered up to Titus, Antony's lieutenant, who shortly after caused him to be slain.

### *Exercises.*

In what manner did the Triumviri act after the death of Brutus? Who fell victims to their rage? How was Antony afterwards engaged? Whom did he settle in Judea? What effect did Cleopatra's beauty produce? How was Augustus meanwhile employed? What miseries did the ink-

bitants of Italy and Rome suffer? In what manner did Augustus treat Lucius? How did Antony act on learning these disasters? By what means was a reconciliation effected? What new division of the empire took place? What advantages did Sextus Pompeius obtain? What occasioned the renewal of hostilities? What advantage did Pompey gain over Augustus? What success attended Agrippa? What became of Pompey?

## SECTION VI.

The death of Pompey removed one very great obstacle to the ambition of Augustus, and he resolved to take the earliest opportunity to get rid of the rest of his associates.

An offence soon after this was furnished by Lepidus, that served as a sufficient pretext to Augustus for depriving him of his share in the triumvirate. Being at the head of twenty-two legions, with a strong body of cavalry, he idly supposed that his present power was more than an equivalent to the popularity of Augustus. He therefore resolved upon adding Sicily, where he then was to his province, pretending a right, as having first invaded it. Augustus sent to expostulate upon these proceedings, but Lepidus fiercely replied, "That he was determined to have his share in the administration, and would no longer submit to let one alone possess all the authority." Augustus was previously informed of the disposition of Lepidus' soldiers; for he had, by his secret intrigues and largesses, entirely attached them to himself. Wherefore, without farther delay, he, with great boldness, went alone to the camp of Lepidus, and with no other assistance than his private bounties, and the authority he had gained by his former victories, he deposed his rival. Lepidus was deprived of all his former authority, and banished to Circæum, where he continued the rest of his life, despised by his friends, and to all a melancholy object of blasted ambition.

There remained now but one obstacle to his ambition,

which was Antony, whom he resolved to remove, and for that purpose began to render his character, as contemptible as he possibly could at Rome. In fact Antony's conduct did not a little contribute to promote the endeavours of his ambitious partner. He had marched against the Parthians with a prodigious army, but was forced to return with the loss of the fourth part of his forces, and all his baggage. However Antony seemed quite regardless of contempt: alive only to pleasure, and totally disregarding the business of the state, he spent whole days and nights in the company of Cleopatra, who studied every art to increase his passion and vary his entertainments. Few women have been so much celebrated for the art of giving novelty to pleasure, and making trifles important: still ingenious in filling up the languid pauses of sensual delight with some new strokes of refinement, she was at one time a queen, then a bacchanal, and sometimes an huntress. She invented a society called the Inimitable; and those of the court who made the most sumptuous entertainments, carried off the prize. Not contented with sharing in her company all the delights which Egypt could afford, Antony was resolved to enlarge the sphere of luxury, by granting her many of those kingdoms which belonged to the Roman empire. He gave her all Phœnicia, Celo-Syria, and Cyprus, with a great part of Cilicia, Arabia, and Judea, gifts which he had no right to bestow, which he pretended to grant in imitation of Hercules. This complication of vice and folly at last totally exasperated the Romans, and Augustus, willing to take the advantage of their resentment, took care to exaggerate all his defects. At length when he found the people sufficiently irritated against him, he resolved to send Octavia, who was then at Rome, to Antony, as if with a view of reclaiming her husband; but in fact, to furnish a sufficient pretext of declaring war against him, as he knew she would be dismissed with contempt.

Antony was now at the city of Leucopolis, revelling with his insidious paramour, when he heard that Octavia was at Athens upon her journey to visit him. This

was very unwelcome news as well to him as to Cleopatra, who, fearing the charms of her rival, endeavoured to convince Antony of the strength of her passion, by sighs, languishing looks, and well feigned melancholy. He frequently caught her in tears, which she seemed as if willing to hide, and often entreating her to tell him the cause, which she seemed willing to suppress. These artifices, together with the ceaseless flattery and importunity of her creatures, prevailed so much upon Antony's weakness, that he commanded Octavia to return home without seeing her : and still more to exasperate the people of Rome, he resolved to repudiate her and take Cleopatra as his wife. He accordingly assembled the people of Alexandria in the public theatre, where was raised an alcove of silver, under which were placed two thrones of gold, one for himself, and the other for Cleopatra. There he seated himself, dressed like Bacchus, while Cleopatra sat beside him clothed in the ornaments and attributes of Isis, the principal deity of the Egyptians. On that occasion he declared her queen of all the countries which he had already bestowed upon her ; while he associated Cæsario, her son by Cæsar, as her partner in the government. To the two children whom he had by her himself, he gave the title of kings, with very extensive dominions ; and to crown his absurdities, he next sent a minute account of his proceedings to the two consuls at Rome.

In the mean time, Augustus had now a sufficient pretext for declaring war, and informed the senate of his intentions. However, he deferred the execution of his designs for a while, being then employed in quelling an insurrection of the Illyrians. The following year was chiefly taken up in preparations against Antony, who, perceiving his design, remonstrated to the senate, that he had many causes of complaint against his colleague, who had seized upon Sicily without affording him a share : alledging that he also dispossessed Lepidus, and keeping himself the province he had commanded ; and that he had divided all Italy among his own soldiers, leaving nothing to recompense those in Asia. To this complaint, Augustus was content to make a sarcastic answer, im-

plying that it was absurd to complain of his distribution of a few trifling districts in Italy, when Antony having conquered all Parthia, he might now reward his soldiers with cities and provinces. This sarcasm provoked him to send his army without delay, into Europe to meet Augustus, while he and Cleopatra followed to Samos, in order to prepare for carrying on the war with vigour.—When arrived there, it was ridiculous enough to behold the odd mixture of preparations for pleasure and for war. On one side, all the kings and princes, from Egypt to the Euxine sea, had orders to send him supplies both of men, provisions, and arms; on the other side, all the comedians, dancers, buffoons, and musicians of Greece were ordered to attend him.

This delay at Samos, and afterwards at Athens, where he carried Cleopatra to receive new honours, was extremely favourable to the arms of Augustus, who was at first scarcely in a condition to oppose him, had he gone into Italy: but he soon found time to put himself in a condition for carrying on the war, and shortly after declared against him in form. At length both sides found themselves in readiness to begin the war, and their armies were answerable to the empire they contended for. The one was followed by all the forces of the East, the other drew all the forces of the West to support his pretensions. Antony's force composed a body of an hundred thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse, while his fleet amounted to five hundred ships of war. The army of Augustus mustered but eighty thousand foot, but equaled his adversary in the number of cavalry; his fleet was but half as numerous as Antony's; however, his ships were better built, and manned with better soldiers.

The great decisive engagement, which was a naval one, was fought near Actium, a city of Epirus, at the entrance of the gulph of Ambracia. Antony ranged his ships before the mouth of the gulph, and Augustus drew up his fleet in opposition. Neither general assumed any fixed station to command in, but went about from ship to ship, wherever his presence was necessary. In the mean time, the two land armies, on opposite sides of the gulph, were drawn up, only as spectators of the engage-

ment, and encouraged the fleets by their shouts to engage. The battle began on both sides with great ardour; and after a manner not practised on former occasions.

The prows of their vessels were armed with brazen points, and with these they drove furiously against each other. They fought for some time with great fury; nor was there any advantage on either side, except a small appearance of disorder in the centre of Antony's fleet. But all of a sudden Cleopatra determined the fortune of the day. She was seen flying from the engagement, attended by sixty sail, struck perhaps with the terrors natural to her sex: but what increased the general amazement, was to behold Antony himself following soon after, leaving his fleet at the mercy of the conquerors; and the army at land soon after followed their example.

When Cleopatra fled, Antony pursued her in a five oared galley, and coming along side of her ship, entered it without seeing her, or being seen by her. She was in the stern, and he went to the prow, where he remained for some time silent, holding his head between his hands. In this manner he continued for three whole days, during which, either through indignation or shame, he neither saw nor spoke to Cleopatra. At last when they were arrived at the promontory of Tenerus, the queen's female attendants reconciled them, and every thing went on as before. Still however, he had the consolation to suppose his army continued faithful to him, and accordingly dispatched orders to his lieutenant Canidius, to conduct it into Asia. However, he was soon undeceived when he arrived in Africa, where he was informed of their submission to his rival. This account so transported him with rage, that he was hardly prevented from killing himself; but at length, at the entreaty of his friends he returned to Alexandria. Cleopatra, however, seemed to retain that fortitude in her misfortunes which had utterly abandoned her admirer. Having amassed considerable riches, by means of confiscations, and other acts of violence, she formed a very singular and unheard of project: this was to convey her whole fleet over the isthmus of Suez into the Red Sea, and thereby save



herself in another region, beyond the reach of Rome, with all her treasures. Some of her vessels were actually transported thither, but the Arabians having burnt them, and Antony dissuading her from the design, she abandoned it for the more improbable scheme of defending Egypt against the conqueror. She omitted nothing in her power to put this advice in practice, and made all kinds of preparations for war, at least hoping thereby to obtain better terms from Augustus. In fact, she had always loved Antony's fortunes better than his person; and if she could have fallen upon any method of saving herself, though even at his expence, there is no doubt but she would have embraced it with gladness. She even still had some hopes from the power of her charms, though she was arrived almost at the age of forty, and was desirous of trying upon Augustus those arts which had been so successful with the greatest men of Rome. Thus in three embassies, which were sent one after another, from Antony to Augustus in Asia, the queen had always her secret agents charged with particular proposals in her name. Antony desired no more than that his life might be spared, and to have the liberty of passing the remainder of his days in obscurity. To these proposals Augustus made no reply. Cleopatra sent him also public proposals in favour of her children; but at the same time privately resigned him her crown, with all the ensigns of royalty. To the queen's public proposal no answer was given; to her private offer he replied, by giving her assurances of his favour, in case she sent away Antony, or put him to death.

These negociations were not so private but they came to the knowledge of Antony, whose jealousy and rage every occurrence now contributed to heighten. He built a small solitary house upon a mole in the sea, and there shut himself up, a prey to all those passions that are the tormentors of unsuccessful tyranny. There he passed his time, shunning all commerce with mankind, and professing to imitate Timon the man-hater. However, his furious jealousy drove him even from this retreat into society; for hearing that Cleopatra had many secret conferences with one Thyrus, an emissary from Augustus,

he seized upon him, and having ordered him to be cruelly scourged, he sent him back to his patron. At the same time he sent letters by him, importing that he had chastised Thyrsus for insulting a man in misfortunes; but withal he gave Augustus permission to avenge himself, by scourging Hiparchus, Antony's freed-man, in the same manner. The revenge in his case would have been highly pleasing to Antony, as Hiparchus had left him to join the fortune of his more successful rival.

### *Exercises.*

What resolution did Augustus adopt? What became of Lepidus? What endeavours did Augustus make to render Antony's character contemptible? What arts did Cleopatra employ to increase Antony's passion? What kingdoms did he confer upon her? What advantage did Augustus take of these circumstances? In what manner did Antony disgrace Octavia? Did Augustus now prepare for war? What remonstrance did Antony make to the Senate? What was the number of Antony's army? What of Augustus? Where was this decisive engagement fought? Who determined the fortune of the day? How did Antony receive the tidings of the submission of his army? What terms did he solicit from Augustus? What secret intrigues did Cleopatra carry on?

### SECTION VII.

Meanwhile the operations of the war were carried vigorously forward, and Egypt soon after became again the theatre of the contending armies of Rome. Gallus the lieutenant of Augustus, took Paretonium, which opened the whole country to his incursions. On the other side Antony, who had still considerable forces by sea and land, wanted to take that important place from the enemy. He therefore marched towards it, and flattered himself that, as soon as he should show himself to the legions which he had once commanded, the affection for their ancient general would revive. He approached therefore, and exhorted them to remember their former

vows of fidelity. Gallus, however, ordered all the trumpets to sound, in order to hinder Antony from being heard, so that he was obliged to retire.

Augustus himself was in the mean time advancing with another army before Pelusium, which, by its strong situation, might have retarded his progress for some time. But the governor of the city, either wanting courage to defend it, or previously instructed by Cleopatra to give it up, permitted him to take possession of the place : so that Augustus had now no obstacle in his way to Alexandria, whither he marched with all expedition. Antony, upon his arrival, sallied out to oppose him, fighting with great desperation, and putting the enemy's cavalry to flight. This slight advantage once more revived his declining hopes ; and, being naturally vain, he re-entered Alexandria in triumph. Then going all armed as he was, to the palace, he embraced Cleopatra, and presented her a soldier who distinguished himself in the late engagement. The queen rewarded him very magnificently, presenting him with an head-piece and breast-plate of gold. With these, however, the soldier went off the next night to the other army, prudently resolving to secure his riches by keeping on the strongest side. Antony could not bear this defection without fresh indignation : he resolved therefore, to make a bold aspiring effort by sea and land, but previously offered to fight his adversary in single combat.—Augustus too well knew the inequality of their situations to comply with this forlorn offer : he only therefore coolly replied, that Antony had ways enough to die besides by single combat.

The day after, he posted the few troops he had remaining upon a rising ground near the city, from whence he sent orders to his galleys to engage the enemy. There he waited to be a spectator of the combat ; and at first he had the satisfaction to see them advance in good order ; but his approbation was soon turned into rage, when he saw his ships only saluting those of Augustus, and both fleets uniting together, and sailing back into the harbour. At the very same time his cavalry deserted him. He tried, however, to lead on his infantry,

which were easily vanquished, and he himself compelled to return into the town. His anger was now ungovernable. He could not help crying out aloud as he passed, that he was betrayed by Cleopatra, and delivered by her to those who, for her sake alone, were his enemies. In these suspicions he was not deceived; for it was by secret orders from the queen that the fleet had passed over to the enemy.

Cleopatra had for a long while dreaded the effects of Antony's jealousy, and had some time before prepared a method of obviating any sudden sallies it might produce. Near the Temple of Isis, she had erected a building, which was seemingly designed for a sepulchre. Hither she removed all her treasure and most valuable effects, covering them over with torches, faggots, and other combustible matter. This sepulchre she designed to answer a double purpose, as well to screen her from the sudden resentment of Antony, as to make Augustus believe that she would burn all her treasures, in case he refused her proper terms of capitulation. Here therefore she retired from Antony's present fury, shutting the gates which were fortified with bolts and bars of iron; but in the mean time gave orders that a report should be spread of her death, which news soon reached Antony, and recalled all his former love and tenderness. This poor wretch was now a being, subject to the gust of every passion, and each of them in extreme. He now lamented her death with the same violence he had but a few minutes before seemed to desire it. "Wretched man," cried he to himself, "what is there worth living for, since all that could soothe or soften my cares is departed! O Cleopatra," continued he, being got to his chamber, "our separation does not so much afflict me, as the disgrace I suffer in permitting a woman to instruct me in the way of dying." He called one of his freed-men, named Eros, whom he had engaged by oath to kill him, whenever fortune should drive him to this last resource. Eros being commanded to perform his promise, this faithful foilower drew the sword as if going to execute his orders; but turning his face, plunged it into his own bosom, and died at his master's feet.

Antony for a while hung over his faithful servant, and commending his fidelity, took up the sword, with which stabbing himself in the belly, he fell backward upon a little couch. Though the wound was mortal, yet the blood stopping, he recovered his spirits, and earnestly conjured those who were come into the room to put an end to his life, but they all fled, being seized with fright and horror. He therefore continued in this manuer for some time, still crying out and writhing with pain, till he was informed by one of the queen's secretaries that his mistress was still alive. He then earnestly desired to be carried to the place where she was. They accordingly brought him to the gate of the sepulchre ; but Cleopatra, who would not permit it to be opened, appeared at the window, and threw down cords, with which, with some difficulty, they pulled him up. They gently laid him on a couch, where she gave way to her sorrow, tearing her clothes, beating her breast, and kissing the wound of which he was dying. Antony entreated her to moderate the transports of her grief, asked for wine, and exhorting her not to lament for his misfortunes, but to congratulate him upon his former felicity, to consider him as one who had lived the most powerful of men, and at last died by the hands of a Roman. Just as he had done speaking he expired, and Proculus made his appearance by command of Augustus, who had been informed of Antony's desperate conduct. He was sent to try all means of getting Cleopatra into his power. Augustus having a double motive for his solitude on this occasion : one, to prevent her destroying the treasures she had taken with her into the tomb ; the other, to preserve her person, as an ornament to grace his triumph. Cleopatra, however, was upon her guard, and would not confer with Proculus, except through the gate, which was very well secured. In the mean time Gallus, one of Augustus' soldiers, entered with two more by the window at which Antony had been drawn up ; upon which Cleopatra, perceiving what had happened, drew a pionard, and attempted to stab herself, but was prevented.

Augustus was extremely pleased at finding

power ; he sent Epaphroditus to bring her to his palace and to watch her with the utmost circumspection. He was likewise ordered to use her in every respect with the deference and submission which were due to her rank and to do every thing in his power to render her captivity agreeable. She was permitted to have the honour of granting Antony the rites of burial, and furnished with every thing she desired that was becoming her dignity to receive, or her love to offer. Yet still she languished under her new confinement ; her excessive sorrow, her losses, and the blows she had given her bosom, produced a fever which she seemed willing to increase. She resolved to abstain from taking any nourishment, under the pretence of a regimen necessary for her disorder : but Augustus, being made acquainted with the real motive by her physician, began to threaten her with regard to her children in case she persisted.

In the mean time, Augustus made his entry into Alexandria, taking care to mitigate the fears of the inhabitants, by conversing familiarly as he went along with Areus, a philosopher, a native of that place. The citizens however, trembled at his approach ; and when he placed himself upon the tribunal, they prostrated themselves with their faces to the ground before him, like criminals who waited the sentence of their execution. Augustus presently ordered them to rise, telling them that three motives induced him to pardon them. His respect for Alexander, who was the founder of their city ; his admiration of its beauty, and his friendship for Areus, their fellow-citizen. Two only of particular note were put to death on this occasion : Antony's eldest son Antyllus, and Cæsario, the son of Julius Cæsar, both betrayed into his hands by their respective tutors, who themselves suffered for their perfidy shortly after. As for the rest of Cleopatra's children, he treated them with great gentleness, leaving them to the care of those who were entrusted with their education, who had orders to provide them with every thing suitable to their birth.—As for her, when she was recovered from her late indisposition, he came to visit her in person ; she received

him lying on a couch in a careless manner ; and, upon his entering the apartment, rose up to prostrate herself before him. She was dressed in nothing but a loose robe. Her misfortunes had given an air of severity to her features, her hair was dishevelled, her voice trembling, her complexion pale, and her eyes red with weeping : yet still her natural beauty seemed to gleam through the distress that surrounded her ; and the graces of her motion, and the alluring softness of her looks, still bore testimony to the power of her charms. Augustus raised her with his usual complaisance, and desiring her to sit, placed himself beside her. Cleopatra had been prepared for this interview, and made use of every method she could think of to propitiate the conqueror. She tried apologies, entreaties, and allurements, to obtain his favour, and soften his resentment. She began by attempting to justify her conduct ; but when her art and skill failed against manifest proofs, she turned her defence into supplications. She talked of Cæsar's humanity to those in distress ; she read some of his letters to her, full of tenderness, and enlarged upon the long intimacy that had passed between them. " But of what service," cried she, " are now all his benefits to me ! Why could I not die with him ! Yet he still lives ; methinks I see him still before me ; he revives in you." Augustus was no stranger to this method of address ; but he remained firm against all attacks, answering always with a cold indifference, which obliged her to give her attempts a different turn. She now addressed his avarice, presenting him with an inventory of her treasure and jewels. This gave occasion to a singular scene, which shews that the little decorums of breeding were then by no means so carefully attended to as at present. One of her stewards having alledged that the inventory was defective, and that she had secreted a part of her effects, she fell into a violent passion, started from her couch, and catching him by the hair, gave him several blows on the face.—Augustus smiled at her indignation, and leading her to the couch, desired her to be pacified. To this she replied, that she could not bear being insulted in the presence of one whom she so highly esteemed, " And sup-

posing," cried she, "that I have secreted a few trifles, am I to blame, when they are reserved not for myself, but for Livia and Octavia, whom I hope to make my intercessors with you?" This excuse, which intimated a desire of living, was not disagreeable to Augustus, who politely assured her that she was at liberty to keep whatever she had reserved, and that in every thing she would be indulged to the height of her expectations. He then took leave and departed, imagining he had reconciled her to life, and to the indignity of being shown in the intended triumph which he was preparing for his return to Rome; but in this he was deceived. Cleopatra, all this time had kept a correspondence with Dolabella, a young Roman of high birth in the camp of Augustus, who, perhaps from compassion or stronger motives, was interested in her misfortunes: by him she was secretly informed that Augustus determined to send her off in three days, together with her children to Rome, to grace his triumphant entry. She now, therefore, determined upon dying: she threw herself upon Antony's coffin, bewailing her captivity, and renewed her protestations not to survive him. Having bathed, and ordered a sumptuous banquet, she attired herself in the most splendid manner. She then feasted as usual, and soon after ordered all but her two attendants, Charmion and Iras, to leave the room. Then, having previously ordered an asp to be secretly conveyed in a basket of fruit, she sent a letter to Augustus, informing him of her fatal purpose, and desiring to be buried in the same tomb with Antony. Augustus, upon receiving the letter, instantly dispatched messengers to stop her intentions, but they arrived too late. Upon entering the chamber, they beheld Cleopatra lying dead upon a gilded couch, arrayed in her royal robes. Near her Iras, one of her faithful attendants, was stretched lifeless at the foot of her mistress; and Charmion herself, almost expiring, was settling the diadem upon Cleopatra's head. "Alas!" cried one of the messengers, "was this well done Charmion?" "Yes," replied she, "it is well done; such a death becomes a glorious queen, descended from a race of noble ancestors."



On pronouncing these words, she fell down, and died with her much loved mistress.

### *Exercises.*

What advantage did Gallus obtain? What fruitless attempt did Antony make? To what place did Augustus march his army? What slight advantage did Antony gain? In what manner did his fleet and cavalry act? What report did Cleopatra cause to be spread? In what language did Antony express his grief? Of what deed was he now guilty? In what manner did Cleopatra receive him? By whose means did Augustus become master of her person? In what manner did he treat her? What motives induced Augustus to pardon the Alexandrians? In what manner did Cleopatra receive Augustus? How did she discover her indignation at her steward? What resolution did Cleopatra adopt? How did Augustus act on learning her fatal purpose?

## CHAPTER XX.

*From the Beginning of the Reign of Augustus, to the Death of Domitian, the Last of the Twelve Cæsars.*

### SECTION I.

By the death of Antony, Augustus was now become master of the Roman empire. He soon after returned to Rome in triumph, where, by sumptuous feasts and magnificent shows, he began to obliterate the impressions of his former cruelty, and from thenceforward resolved to secure, by his clemency, a throne, the foundations of which were laid in blood. He was now at the head of the most extensive empire that mankind had ever concurred in obeying. The former spirit of the Romans, and the characteristic marks that distinguished them from others, were totally lost. The city was now inhabited by a concourse from all the countries of the world, and being consequently divested of all just patriotic principles, perhaps monarchy was the best form of government that could be found to unite its members. How-

ever, it was very remarkable, that during these long contentions among themselves, and these horrid devastation by civil war, the state was daily growing more formidable, and powerful, and completed the destruction of all the kings who presumed to oppose it.

His first care was to assure himself of the friends of Antony: to which end he publicly reported that he had burnt all Antony's letters and papers without reading, convinced that while any thought themselves suspected they would be fearful of even offering him their friendship.

As he had gained the kingdom by his army, so also he resolved to govern it by the senate. This body, though greatly fallen from their ancient splendour, he knew to be the best ordered, and most capable of wisdom and justice. To these, therefore, he gave the chief power in the administration of his government, while he still kept the people and the army stedfast to him, by donative and acts of favour. By these means, all the odium of justice fell upon the senate, and all the popularity of pardon was solely his own. Thus restoring to the senate their ancient splendour, and discountenancing all corruption, he pretended to reserve to himself a very moderate share of authority which none could refuse him; namely an absolute power to compel all ranks of the state to do their duty. This in fact was reserving absolute dominion in his own hands: but the misguided people began to look upon his moderation with astonishment, they considered themselves as restored to their former freedom except in the capacity of promoting sedition; and the senate supposed their power re-established in all things but their tendency to injustice. It was even said that the Romans, by such a government, lost nothing of the happiness that liberty could produce, and were exempt from all the misfortunes it could occasion. This observation might have some truth under such a monarch as Augustus now seemed to be; but they were taught to change their sentiments under his successors, when they found themselves afflicted with all the punishments tyranny could inflict, or sedition make necessary.

After having established this admirable order, Augustus

thus found himself agitated by different inclinations, and considered a long time whether he should keep the empire, or restore the people to their ancient liberty. But he adopted the advice of Mæcenas, who desired him to continue in power, and was afterwards swayed by him, not only in this instance, but on every other occasion.—By the instructions of that minister, he became gentle, affable, and humane. By his advice it was that he encouraged men of learning, and gave them much of his time and his friendship. They in their turn, relieved his most anxious hours, and circulated his praises through the empire.

Thus having given peace and happiness to the empire, and being convinced of the attachment of all the orders of the state to his person, he resolved upon impressing the people with an idea of his magnanimity also. This was nothing less than making a show of resigning his authority; wherefore having previously instructed his creatures in the senate how to act, he addressed them in a studied speech, importing the difficulty of governing so extensive an empire; a task which, he said, none but the gods were equal to. He modestly urged his own inability, though impelled by every motive to undertake it; and then, with a degree of seeming generosity, freely gave up all that power, which, as he observed, his arms had gained, and the senate had confirmed. This power he repeatedly offered to restore, giving them to understand, that the true spirit of the Romans was not lost in him. This speech operated upon the senate variously, as they were more or less in the secret; many believed the sincerity of his professions, and therefore regarded his conduct as an act of heroism, unequalled by any thing that had hitherto appeared in Rome; others equally ignorant of his motives, distrusted his designs. Some there were who having greatly suffered during the late popular commotions, were fearful of having them renewed; but the majority, who were entirely devoted to his interest, and instructed by his ministers, frequently attempted to interrupt him while speaking, and received his proposal with pretended indignation. These unanimously besought him not to resign the administration: but upon his con-

tinuing to decline their request, they in a manner compelled him to comply. However, that his person might be in greater security, they immediately decreed the number of his guard to be doubled. On the other hand, that he might seem to make some concessions on his side, he permitted the senate to govern the weak internal provinces, and those that required the greatest armies for their defence, were taken entirely under his own command. Over these he assumed the government but for ten years, leaving the people still in hopes of regaining their ancient freedom, but at the same time laying his measures so well, that his government was renewed every ten years to his death.

This show of a resignation only served to confirm him in the empire and the hearts of the people. New honours were heaped upon him. He was then first called Augustus, a name I have hitherto used as that by which he is best known in history. A laurel was ordered to be planted at his gates. His house was called the palace, to distinguish it from that of ordinary citizens. He was confirmed in the title of father of his country, and his person declared sacred and inviolable. In short, flattery seemed on the rack to find out new modes of pleasing him; but though he despised the arts of the senate, he permitted their homage, well knowing, that, among mankind, titles produce a respect which enforces authority.

Upon entering into his tenth consulship, the senate by oath approved of all his acts, and set him wholly above the power of the laws. They some timeafter offered to swear not only to all the laws he had made, but such as he should make for the future. It was then customary with fathers upon their death-beds to command their children to carry oblations to the Capitol, with this inscription, that at the day of their death they left Augustus in health. It was determined that no man should be put to death on such days as the emperor entered the city.— Upon a dearth of provisions, the people in a body intreated him to accept of the title of dictatorship; but, though he undertook to be procurator of the provisions, he would by no means accept of the title of dictator, which had

been abolished by a law made when Antony was consul.

This accumulation of titles and employments did not in the least diminish his assiduity in filling the duties of each. Several very wholesome edicts were passed by his command, tending to suppress corruption in the senate, and licentiousness in the people. He ordained that none should exhibit a shew of gladiators without orders from the senate, and no oftener than twice a-year; nor with more than a hundred and twenty at a time. This law was extremely necessary at so corrupt a period of the empire; when whole armies of these unfortunate men were brought at once upon the stage, and compelled to fight, often till half of them were slain. It had been usual also with the knights, and some women of the first distinction, to exhibit themselves as dancers upon the theatre, he ordered that not only they, but their children and grand-children, should be restrained from such exercises for the future. He fined many who had refused to marry at a certain age, and rewarded such as had many children. He ordained that virgins should not be married till twelve years of age, and permitted any person to kill an adulterer taken in the act. He enacted that the senators should be always held in great reverence, adding to their authority what he had taken from their power. He made a law that no man should have the freedom of the city without a previous examination into his merit and character. He appointed new rules and limits to the manumission of slaves, and was himself very strict in the observance of them. With regard to players, of whom he was very fond, he severely examined their morals, not allowing the least licentiousness in their lives nor indecency in their actions. Though he encouraged the athletic exercises, yet he would not permit women to be present at them, holding it unbecoming the modesty of the sex to be spectators of these sports which were performed by naked men. In order to prevent bribery in suing for offices, he took considerable sums of money from the candidates by way of pledge; and if any indirect practices were proved against them they were obliged to forfeit all. Slaves had been hitherto dis-

allowed to confess any thing against their own masters ; but he abolished the practise, and first sold the slaves to another, which altering the property, his examination became free. These and many other laws, all tending to reform vice, or deter from crimes, gave the manners of the people another complexion ; so that the rough character of the Roman was now softened into that of the refined citizen.

Indeed his own example tended a good deal to humanize his fellow-citizens ; for being placed above all equality he had nothing to fear from condescension ; wherefore he was familiar with all, and suffered himself to be reprimanded with the most patient humility. Though he was by the single authority of his station, capable of condemning or acquitting whomsoever he thought proper, yet he gave the laws their proper course, and even sometimes pleaded for those he desired to protect. Thus Primus, the governor of Macedonia, having a day assigned him for having made war upon the Odrisi, a neighbouring state, as he said, by the command of Augustus, the latter denied the charge. Upon which the advocate for Primus desired to know, with an insolent air, what brought Augustus into court, or who had sent for him ? To this the emperor submissively replied—“ The commonwealth :” an answer which greatly pleased the people. Upon another occasion, one of his veteran soldiers entreated his protection in a certain cause : but Augustus, taking little notice of his request, desired him to apply to an advocate. “ Ah !” replied the soldier, “ it was not by proxy that I served you at the battle of Actium.” This reply pleased Augustus so much, that he pleaded his cause in person, and gained it for him. He was extremely affable, and returned the salutations of the meanest persons. One day a person presented him a petition, but with so much awe, that Augustus was displeased with his meanness. “ What, friend,” cried he, “ you seem as if you were offering something to an elephant, and not to a man ; be bolder.” One day as he was sitting on the tribunal in judgment, Mæcenas, perceiving by his temper that he was inclined to be severe, attempted to speak to him : but not being

able to get up to the tribunal for the crowd, he threw a paper into his lap, on which was written, "Arise executioner." Augustus read it without any displeasure, and immediately rising, pardoned those whom he was disposed to condemn. But what most of all showed a total alteration in his disposition, was his treatment of Cornelius Cinna, Pompey's grandson. This nobleman had entered into a very dangerous conspiracy against him; but the plot was discovered before it was ripe for execution. Augustus for some time debated with himself how to act; but at last his clemency prevailed; he, therefore, sent for those who were guilty, and, after reprimanding them, dismissed them all. But he was resolved to mortify Cinna by the greatness of his generosity; for, addressing him in particular, "I have twice," says he, "given you your life, first as an enemy, now as a conspirator; I now give you the consulship: let us only contend in shewing whether my confidence or your fidelity shall be victorious." This generosity, which the emperor very happily timed, had so good an effect, that from that instant, all conspiracies ceased against him.

### *Exercises.*

In what situation was Augustus placed by the death of Antony? What resolution did he adopt? On whom did he bestow the chief power? In what manner did the people view his moderation? What advice did Mæcenas give him? How did his speech operate upon the Senate? What new honours were conferred upon him? What wholesome edicts were passed by his command? How did he improve the citizens by his example? In what manner did one of his veterans address him? What effect did it produce on Augustus? How did Mæcenas act whilst Augustus sat in judgment? In what terms did he address Cinna?

### SECTION II.

In the practice of such virtues as these, he passed a long reign of above forty years, in which the happiness of the people seemed to conspire with his own; not but that there were wars in the distant provinces of the em-

pire during almost the whole reign ; but they were rather the quelling of insurrections, than the extending of dominions ; for he had made it a rule to carry on no operations, in which ambition, and not the safety of the state was concerned. In fact, he seemed the first Roman who aimed at gaining a character by the acts of peace alone, and who obtained the affections of his soldiers without any military talents of his own. Nevertheless the Roman arms under his lieutenants were crowned with success. The Cantabrians in Spain, who had revolted, were more than once quelled by Tiberius, his step-son : Agrippa, hisson-in-law, and Ælius Lanna, who followed them to their inaccessible mountains, there blocked them up, and compelled them by famine to surrender at discretion. The Germans also gave some uneasiness, by their repeated incursions into the territories of Gaul, but were repressed by Lollius. The Rhetians were conquered by Drusus, the brother of Tiberius.—The Bessi and Sialatæ, barbarous nations, making an irruption into Thrace, were overthrown, by Pisdos, governor of Pamphylia who gained triumphal honours.—The Dacians were repressed with more than one defeat ; the Armenians also were brought into due subjection by Caius his grandson. The Getulians in Africa took up arms ; but were subdued by the consul, Caius Cossus, who thence received the surname of Getulicus. A dangerous war also was carried on against the Dalmatians and Pannonians, who having acquired great strength by the continuance of a long peace, gathered an army of two hundred thousand foot, and nine thousand horse, threatening Rome itself with destruction. Levies were therefore made in Italy with the utmost expedition ; the veteran troops were recalled from all parts, and Augustus went to Arminium for the greater convenience of giving his directions. And indeed, though personal valour was by no means his most shining ornament, yet no man could give wiser orders upon every emergency, or go with greater dispatch into all parts of his dominions than he. This war continued near three years, being principally managed by Tiberius and Germanicus ; the latter of whom gained great reputation against these



fierce and barbarous multitudes. Upon their reduction, Bato their leader being summoned before the tribunal of Tiberius, and being demanded how he could offer to revolt against the power of Rome, the bold barbarian replied, "That the Romans, and not he, were the aggressors; since they had sent, instead of dogs and shepherds, to secure their flocks, only wolves and bears to devour them." But the war which was most fatal to the Roman interests during this reign, was U. C. 2. that which was managed by Quintilius Varus. This general invading the territories of the Germans, was induced to follow the enemy among their forests and marshes, with his army in separate bodies: there he was attacked by night, and entirely cut off with his whole army. These were the best and choicest legions of the whole empire, either for valour, discipline, or experience. The affliction from this defeat seemed to sink very deep upon the mind of Augustus. He was often heard to cry out in a tone of anguish,—“Quintilius Varus, restore me my legions:” and some historians pretend to say, that he never after discovered the former serenity of his temper.

But he had some uneasiness of a domestic nature in his own family, that contributed to distress him: he had married Livia, the wife of Tiberius Nero, by the consent of her husband, at a time she was six months gone with child. This was an imperious woman, and conscious of being beloved, she controlled him ever after at her pleasure. She had two sons by her former husband, Tiberius, the elder, whom she greatly loved; and Drusus, who was born three months after she had been married to Augustus, and who was thought to be his own son. The eldest of these, Tiberius, whom he afterwards adopted, and who succeeded him in the empire, was a good general, but of a suspicious and obstinate temper; so that though he was serviceable to Augustus in his foreign wars, yet he gave him but little quiet at home. He was at last obliged to go into exile for five years to the island of Rhodes, where he chiefly spent his time in a retired manner, conversing with the Greeks, and addicting himself to literature; of which, however,

he made afterwards but a bad use. Drusus, the son of Livia, died in his return from an expedition against the Germans, leaving Augustus inconsolable for his loss.—But his greatest affliction was the conduct of his daughter Julia, whom he had by Scribonia, his former wife. This woman whom he married to his general Agrippa, and after his death to Tiberius, set no bounds to her lewdness. Not contented with enjoying her pleasures she seemed also earnest in procuring the infamy of her prostitutions. Augustus for a long time would not believe the accounts he daily heard of her conduct; but at last could not help observing them. He found that she was arrived at that excess of wantonness and prodigality, that she had her nocturnal appointments in the most public parts of the city; the very court where her father presided, not being exempt from her debaucheries. He at first had thoughts of putting her to death; but after some consideration, he banished her to Pandataria, forbidding her the use of wine, and all such delicacies as would inflame her vicious inclinations; he ordered that no persons should come near her without his own permission, and sent her mother Scribonia with her to bear her company. Afterwards, whenever any attempted to intercede for Julia, his answer was, “That fire and water should sooner unite than he with her.” When some persons one day were more than usually urgent with him in her favour, he was driven to such an extremity of passion, as to wish that they might have such a daughter. However, she had two sons by Agrippa, named Caius and Lucius, from whom great expectations were formed; but they died when scarcely arrived at man’s estate. Lucius about five years after his father at Marseilles, and Caius, two years after. Augustus having now, in a great measure, survived all his contemporaries, at length in the seventy-fourth year of his age, began to think of retiring from the fatigues of state, and in some measure of constituting Tiberius, his son-in-law, by Livia, his successor in his usual employments. He desired the senate to salute him no longer at the palace according to custom; nor to take it amiss, if for the future, he could

not converse with them as formerly. From that time Tiberius was joined in the government of the provinces with him, and invested with almost the same authority. However, Augustus could not entirely forsake the administration of the state, which habit had mixed with his satisfactions; he still continued watchful guardian of its interests, and showed himself lover of his people. Finding it now, therefore, very inconvenient to come to the senate by reason of his age, he desired to have twenty privy counsellors assigned him for a year: and it was decreed that whatever measures were resolved upon by them, together with the consuls, they should have entirely the force of a law. He seemed in some measure apprehensive of his approaching end; for he made his will, and delivered it to the vestal virgins. He then solemnized the census, or numbering the people, whom he found to amount to four millions, one hundred and thirty-seven thousand; which shows Rome to have been equal to four of the greatest cities of modern times. While these ceremonies were performing by a mighty concourse of people in the Campus Martius, it is said that an eagle flew round the emperor several times and directing his flight to a neighbouring temple, perched over the name of Agrippa, which was by the augurs conceived to portend the death of the emperor. Shortly after, having accompanied Tiberius in his march into Illyria, as far as Beneventum, he was then taken ill of a diarrhœa. Returning, therefore, from thence, he came to Nola, near Capua, and there finding himself dangerously ill, he sent for Tiberius, with the rest of his most intimate friends and acquaintances. A few hours before his death, he ordered a looking-glass to be brought, and his hair to be adjusted with more than usual care. He then addressed his friends, whom he beheld surrounding his bed, and desired to know whether he had properly played his part in life, to which being answered in the affirmative, he cried out with his last breath, "Then give me your applause:" and thus in the seventy-sixth year of his age, after reigning forty-one, he expired in the arms of Livia, bidding her remember their marriage, and farewell.

The death of the emperor, when known, caused an expressible grief throughout the whole Roman empire: it was even supposed that his wife Livia had some hand in hastening it willing to procure the succession most speedily for her son. However this be, she took care for some time to keep it concealed, having guarded all the passages to the palace; sometimes giving out that he was recovered, and pretending a relapse. At length having settled the succession to her mind, she published the emperor's death, and at the same time the adoption of Tiberius to the empire. The emperor's funeral was performed with great magnificence. The senators being in their places, Tiberius, on whom the care was devolved, began a consolatory oration to them; but suddenly stopt in the beginning of his speech, as unable to restrain the violence of his sorrow; and instead of continuing, gave his notes to Drusus, his son, who read them to the senate. After this, one of the emperor's late freed-men publicly read his will in the senate-house wherein he made Tiberius and Livia his heirs, and by that, Livia was likewise adopted into the Julian family and honoured with the name of Augusta. Besides his will, four other writings of his were produced: one, in which he had left instructions concerning his funeral; another contained an enumeration of his various exploits; a third comprised an account of the provinces, forces, and revenues of the empire; and the fourth a schedule of directions to Tiberius for governing the empire. Among these it was found to be his opinion that no man, how great a favourite soever he might be, should be entrusted with too much authority, lest it should induce him to turn tyrant. Another maxim was, that none should desire to enlarge the empire, which was already preserved with difficulty. Thus he seemed studious of serving his country to the very last, and the sorrow of the people seemed equal to his assiduity: It was decreed that all the women should mourn for the whole year. Temples were erected to him; divine honours allowed him; and one Numerius Atticus, a senator, wi

ng to convert the adulation of the times to his own benefit, received a large sum of money, for swearing that he saw him ascending into heaven; so that no doubt remained among the people concerning his divinity.

Such were the honours paid to Augustus, whose power began in the slaughter, and terminated in the happiness of his subjects; so that it was said of him, "that it had been good for mankind if he had never been born, or if he never had died." It is very probable that the cruelties exercised in his triumvirate were suggested by his colleagues: or perhaps, he thought, in the case of Cæsar's death, that revenge was virtue. Certain it is, that these severities were in some measure necessary to restore public tranquillity: for until the Roman spirit was entirely eradicated, no monarchy could be secure. He gave the government an air suited to the disposition of the times: he indulged his subjects in the pride of seeing the appearance of a republic, while he made them really happy in the effects of a most absolute monarchy, guided by the most consummate prudence. In this last virtue he seems to have excelled most monarchs; and indeed, could we separate Octavius from Augustus, he would be one of the most faultless princes in history.

### *Exercises.*

What success attended Augustus in Spain? Who conquered the Germans? The Retians? The Bessi and Scalatæ? The Dacians and Argenians? The Gentulians? Whether did Augustus go to give his directions? Which of the wars was most fatal to the Romans? What impression did this loss make upon the mind of Augustus? What domestic evils contributed to distress him? Who were the sons of Livia? To what place did he banish Julia? Whom did Augustus join with him in the administration? What was the number of the inhabitants of Rome at this period? How long did Augustus reign? How did Livia act after his death? Who were made heirs by his will? What honours were paid to his memory?

## SECTION III.

**A. D. 15.** Tiberius was fifty-six years old when he took upon him the government of the Roman empire. He had long lived in a profound state of dissimulation under Augustus, and was not yet hardy enough to show himself in his real character. In the beginning of his reign nothing appeared but prudence, generosity, and clemency. But the successes of Germanicus, his nephew, over the Germans, first brought his natural dispositions to light, and discovered the malignity of his mind without disguise. He soon, therefore, began to consult on the most specious means of humbling the popularity of Germanicus, and removing this object of his suspicions. For this purpose, he dispatched Piso to Germanicus, a person of a furious and headstrong temper, and in every respects fit to execute those fatal purposes for which he was designed. His instructions were, to oppose Germanicus upon every occasion, and to excite all the hatred against him, which without suspicion, he could, and even procure his death, if any opportunity should offer. This agent succeeded; Germanicus died soon after; and it was universally believed by poison.

Having now no object of jealousy to keep him in awe, he began to pull off the mask entirely, and appear more in his natural character than before. In the beginning of his cruelties, he took into his confidence Sejanus, a Roman knight, who found out the method of gaining his confidence by the most refined degree of dissimulation, being an overmatch for his master in his own arts. It is not well known whether he was the adviser of all the cruelties that ensued soon after; but certain it is, that from the beginning of his ministry, Tiberius seemed to become more fatally suspicious.

Sejanus began by using all his arts to persuade Tiberius to retire to some agreeable retreat remote from Rome. By this he expected many advantages, since there could be no access to the emperor but by him.—The emperor either prevailed upon by his persuasions, or

pursuing the natural turn of his temper, which led to indolence and debauchery, in the twelfth year of his reign left Rome, and went into Campania, under pretence of dedicating temples to Jupiter and Augustus. Still growing weary of places where mankind might follow him with their complaints and distresses, he withdrew himself into that most delightful island of Caprea, three miles from the continent, and opposite Naples. Buried in this retreat, he gave himself up to his abandoned pleasures, quite regardless of the miseries of his subjects.

In fact, it had been happy for mankind had he given up his suspicions, when he declined the fatigues of reigning, and resigned the will to do harm, when he divested himself of the power of doing good. But from the time of his retreat, he became more cruel, and Sejanus always endeavoured to increase his distrusts. Secret spies and informers were placed in all parts of the city, who converted the most harmless actions into subjects of offence. In consequence of this, Nero and Drusus, the children of Germanicus, were declared enemies to the state, and afterwards starved in prison, while Agrippina, their mother, was sent into banishment. Sabinus, Asinius Gallus, and Syriacus, were, upon slight pretences, condemned, and executed. In this manner Sejanus proceeded, removing all who stood between him and the empire, and every day increasing in confidence with Tiberius, and power with the senate. The number of his statues exceeded even those of the emperor; people swore by his fortune, in the same manner as they would have done had he been actually upon the throne; and he was more dreaded than even the tyrant who actually enjoyed the empire. But the rapidity of his rise seemed only preparatory to the greatness of his downfall. All we know of his first disgrace with the emperor is, that Catrius Secundus was the man who had the boldness to accuse him of treason; and Antonio, the mother of Germanicus, seconded the accusation. The senate, who had long been jealous of his power, and dreaded his cruelty, immediately took this opportunity of going beyond the orders of Tiberius, and instead of sentencing

him to imprisonment, they directed his execution. As he was conducting to his fate, the people loaded him with insult and execration. He was pursued with sarcastic reproaches: his statues were instantly thrown down, and he himself shortly after strangled by the executioner.

His death only lighted up the emperor's rage for farther executions. Plaucina, the wife of Piso, Sextus Vestilinus, Vesularius, Atticus, and Julius Marinus were executed by his command, for being attached to Sejanus. He began to grow weary of particular executions, and gave orders that all the accused should be put to death together, without farther examination. The whole city was filled with slaughter and mourning.—When one Carnulius had killed himself to avoid the torture: “Ah,” cried Tiberius, “how has that man been able to escape me!” When a prisoner earnestly entreated that he would not desire his death; “No,” cried the tyrant, “I am not sufficiently your friend to shorten your torments.”

In this manner he lived, odious to all the world, and troublesome to himself; an enemy to the lives of others, and a tormentor of his own. At length, in the twenty-second year of his reign, he began to feel the approaches of his dissolution, and all his appetites to forsake him. He now, therefore, found it was time to think of a successor, and at length fixed upon Caligula, willing, perhaps, by the enormity of Caligula's conduct, with which he was well acquainted, to cover the memory of his own.

Still, however, he seemed willing to avoid his end, and strove, by change of place, to put off the inquietude of his own reflections. He left his favourite island, and went upon the continent; and at last fixed at the promontory of Misenum, in a house that formerly had belonged to Lucullus. It was there that he fell into such faintings as all believed were fatal. Caligula supposing him actually dead, caused himself to be acknowledged by the prætorian soldiers, and went forth from the emperor's apartment, amidst the applauses of the multitude, when all of a sudden he was informed that the emperor was recovered, that he had begun to speak, and



desired to eat. This unexpected account filled the whole court with terror and alarm; every one who had before been earnest in testifying their joy, now re-assumed their pretended sorrow, and left the new emperor, through a feigned solicitude for the fate of the old. Caligula seemed thunderstruck; he preserved a gloomy silence, expecting nothing but death, instead of the empire at which he had aspired. Macro, however, who was hardened in crimes, ordered that the dying emperor should be dispatched, by smothering him with pillows, or, as others will have it, by poison. In this manner Tiberius died, in the seventy-eighth year of his age, after reigning twenty-two. A. D. 39.

It was in the eighteenth year of this monarch's reign that Christ was crucified, as if the universal depravity of mankind wanted no less a sacrifice than that of God himself to reclaim them. Shortly after his death, Pilate wrote to Tiberius an account of his passion, resurrection, and miracles: upon which the emperor made a report of the whole to the senate, desiring that Christ might be accounted a God by the Romans. But the senate being displeased that the proposal had not come at first from themselves, refused to allow his apotheosis, alledging an ancient law, which gave them the superintendance in all matters of religion. They even went so far as, by an edict, to command that all Christians should leave the city; but Tiberius, by another edict, threatened death to all such as should accuse them; by which means they continued unmolested during the rest of his reign.

All the enormities of Caligula were concealed in the beginning of his reign. But it had been happy for him and the empire had such a beginning been as strenuously maintained. In less than eight months, all appearance of moderation and clemency vanished; while furious passions, unexampled avarice, and capricious cruelty, began to take their turn in his mind. Pride, impiety, last, avarice, and all in the extreme, were every moment brought forward.

His pride first began by assuming to himself the title of ruler, which was usually granted only to kings. He would also have taken the crown and diadem, had he not

been advised that he was already superior to all the monarchs of the world. Not long after he assumed divine honours, and gave himself the names of such divinities as he thought most agreeable to his nature. For this purpose, he caused the heads of the statues of Jupiter and some other gods, to be struck off, and his own to be put in their places. He frequently seated himself between Castor and Pollux, and ordained that all who came to their temple to worship, should pay their adorations only to him. However, such was the extravagant inconstancy of this unaccountable idiot, that he changed his divinity as often as he changed his clothes. Being at one time a male deity, at another a female, sometimes Jupiter or Mars, and not unfrequently Venus or Diana. He even built and dedicated a temple to his own divinity, in which his statue of gold was every day dressed in similar robes to those which he himself wore, and was worshipped by crowds of adorers. His priests were numerous; the sacrifices made to him were of the most exquisite delicacies that could be procured, and the dignity of the priesthood was sought by the most opulent men of the city. However, he admitted his wife and his horse to that honour; and, to give a finishing stroke to his absurdities, he became a priest to himself. His method of assuming the manners of a deity was not less ridiculous: he often went out in the full moon, and courted it in the style of a lover. He often invited it to his bed to taste the pleasure of his embraces. He employed many inventions to imitate thunder, and would frequently defy Jupiter, crying out with a speech of Homer, "Do you conquer me, or I will conquer you." He frequently pretended to converse in whispers with the statue of Jupiter, and usually seemed angry at its replies, threatening to send it packing into Greece. Sometimes, however, he would assume a better temper, and seemed contented that they two should dwell together in amity.

Of all his vices, his prodigality was the most remarkable, and that which in some measure gave rise to the rest. The luxuries of former emperors were simplicity itself when compared to those which he practised. He contrived new ways of bathing, where the richest oils

and most precious perfumes, were exhausted with the utmost profusion. He found out dishes of immense value, and had even jewels, as we are told, dissolved among his sauces. He sometimes, had services of pure gold presented before his guests, instead of meat; observing, that a man should be an economist or an emperor.

The expensive manner in which he maintained his horse, will give some idea of his domestic economy. He built it a stable of marble, and a manger of ivory.—Whenever this animal, which he called Incitatus, was to run, he placed centinels near its stable the night preceding, to prevent its slumbers from being broken. He appointed it an house, furniture, and a kitchen, in order to treat all its visitors with proper respect. The emperor sometimes invited Incitatus to his own table, presented it with gilt oats, and wine in a golden cup. He often swore by the safety of his horse; and, it is said he would have appointed it to the consulship, had not his death prevented it.

His impiety was but subordinate to his cruelties. He slew many of the senate, and afterwards cited them to appear, as if they had killed themselves. He cast great numbers of old and infirm men, and poor decrepit house-keepers, to wild beasts, to free the state from such un-serviceable citizens. He usually fed his wild beasts with the bodies of those wretches whom he condemned, and every tenth day sent off numbers of them to be thus devoured, which he jocosely called clearing his accounts. One of those who was thus exposed, crying out that he was innocent, Caligula ordered his tongue to be cut out, and then thrown into the amphitheatre as before. He took delight in killing men with slow tortures, that as he expressed it, they might feel themselves dying; being always present at such executions, himself directing the duration of the punishment, and mitigating the tortures, merely to prolong them. In fact, he valued himself for no quality more than this unrelenting temper, and inflexible severity, which he preserved while present at an execution. At one time being incensed with the citizens of Rome, he wished that all the Roman people had but one neck, that he might dispatch them at one blow.

Such insupportable and capricious cruelties, produced many secret conspiracies against him; but these were for a while deferred, upon account of his intended expedition against the Germans and Britons, which he undertook in the third year of his reign. For A. D. 41. this purpose, he caused numerous levies to be made in all parts of the empire, and talked with so much resolution, that it was universally believed he would conquer all before him. His march perfectly indicated the inequality of his temper: sometimes it was so rapid that the cohorts were obliged to leave their standards behind them; at other times it was so slow, that it more resembled a pompous procession than a military expedition. In this disposition he would cause himself to be carried on eight mens' shoulders, and ordered all the neighbouring cities to have their streets well swept and watered, to defend him from the dust. However all these mighty preparations ended in nothing. Instead of conquering Britain, he only gave refuge to one of its banished princes; and this he described in his letter to the senate, as taking possession of the whole island. Instead of conquering Germany, he only led his army to the sea-shore in Batavia. There, disposing his engines and warlike machines with great solemnity, and drawing up his men in order of battle, he went on board his galley, with which coasting along, he commanded his trumpets to sound, and the signal to be given, as if for an engagement; upon which his men, having had previous orders, immediately fell to gathering the shells that lay upon the shore into their helmets, terming them the spoils of the conquered ocean, worthy of the palace and the capitol. After this doughty expedition, calling his army together, as a general after victory, he harangued them in a pompous manner, and highly extolled their achievements; and then distributing money among them dismissed them with orders to be joyful, and congratulated them upon their riches. But that such exploits should not pass without a memorial, he caused a lofty tower to be erected by the sea-side, and ordered the gallees, in which he had put to sea, to be conveyed to Rome, in a great measure, by land.

Cassius Cherea, tribune of the prætorian bands, was the person who at last freed the world of this tyrant. Besides the motives which he had in common with other men, he had received repeated insults from Caligula, who took all occasions of turning him to ridicule, impeaching him of cowardice, merely because he happened to have an effeminate voice. Whenever Cherea came to demand the watch-word from the emperor, according to custom, he always either gave him *Venus*, *Adonis*, or some such, implying effeminacy and softness. He therefore, secretly imparted his designs to several senators and knights, whom he knew to have received personal injuries from Caligula: among whom was *Valerius Asiaticus*, whose wife the emperor had debauched. *Asiaticus Vinicianus* also was desirous of engaging in the first design that offered. Besides these, were *Clemens* the præfect, and *Calistus*, whose riches made him obnoxious to the tyrant's resentment.

While these were deliberating upon the most certain and speedy method of destroying the tyrant, an unexpected incident gave new strength to the conspiracy. *Pompedius*, a senator of distinction, having been accused before the emperor of having spoken of him with disrespect, the informer cited one *Quintilia*, an actress, to confirm his accusation. *Quintilia*, however, was possessed of a degree of fortitude, not easily found even in the other sex. She denied the fact with obstinacy: and being put to the torture at the informer's request, she bare the severest torments of the rack with the most unshaken constancy. But what is most remarkable of her resolution, is, that she was acquainted with all the particulars of the conspiracy; and although Cherea was the person appointed to preside at her torture, she revealed nothing: on the contrary, when she was led to the rack, she trode upon the toe of one of the conspirators, intimating at once her knowledge of the confederacy, and her own resolution not to divulge it. In this manner she suffered till all her limbs were dislocated; and in that deplorable state was presented to the emperor, who ordered her a gratuity for what she had suffered. Cherea could no longer contain

his indignation, at being thus made the instrument of a tyrant's cruelty. After several deliberations with the conspirators, it was at last resolved to attack him during the continuance of the Palatine games which lasted four days, and to strike the blow when his guards should have the least opportunity to defend him. In consequence of this, the three first days of the games passed, without affording any opportunity. Cherea now, therefore, began to apprehend that deferring the time of the conspiracy, might be a means to divulge it; he even began to dread that the honour of killing the tyrant might fall to the lot of some other person more bold than himself. Wherefore, he at last resolved to defer the execution of his plot only to the day following, when Caligula should pass through a private gallery to some baths, not far distant from the palace.

The last day of the games was more splendid than the rest, and Caligula seemed more sprightly and condescending than usual. He took great amusement in seeing the people scramble for the fruits and other rarities, thrown by his order among them, and seemed no way apprehensive of the plot formed for his destruction. In the mean time the conspiracy began to transpire; and had he had any friends left, it could not have failed of being discovered. A senator who was present, asking one of his acquaintance if he had heard any thing new, the other replying in the negative, "Then you must know," says he, "that this day will be represented the death of a tyrant." The other immediately understood him, but desired him to be more cautious how he divulged a secret of so much importance. The conspirators waited a great part of the day with the most extreme anxiety; and at one time, Caligula seemed resolved to spend the whole day without any refreshment. This unexpected delay entirely exasperated Cherea; and had he not been restrained, he would have gone and perpetrated his design in the midst of all the people. Just at that instant, while he was yet hesitating what he should do, Asprenes, one of the conspirators, persuaded Caligula

to go to the bath, and take some slight refreshment, in order to enjoy the rest of the entertainment with greater relish. The emperor, therefore, rising up, the conspirators used every precaution to keep off the throng, and to surround him, under pretence of greater assiduity.—And these, upon his entering into a little vaulted gallery that led from the theatre to the bath, resolved to dispatch him. Cherea first struck him to the ground with his dagger, crying out, “Tyrant, think upon this.” Immediately after, the other conspirators rushed in; and, while the emperor continued to resist, crying out, that he was not yet dead, they dispatched him with thirty wounds.

Such was the merited death of Caius Caligula, in the twenty-ninth year of his age, after a short reign of three years, ten months, and eight days. It will be unnecessary to add any thing more to his character than what Seneca says of him, namely, that nature seemed to have brought him forth, to show what was possible to be produced from the greatest vice, supported by the greatest authority.

### *Exercises.*

1. How old was Tiberius when he assumed the government? How did he act in the commencement of his reign? What first brought his natural dispositions to light? Whom did he dispatch to oppose Germanicus? What became of Germanicus? Whom did Tiberius take into confidence? To what places did Tiberius retire? In what manner did he act after his retreat? Who fell victims to his jealousy? What power did Sejanus obtain? Who had the boldness to accuse Sejanus? What became of him? Who next fell victims to the Emperor's rage? What cruel orders did he afterwards issue? What farther proofs did he give of his sanguinary disposition? When did he begin to feel the approaches of old age? Whom did he appoint his successor? What became of Tiberius? How long did he reign? When was our Saviour crucified? What was the character of Caligula? What divine honours did he assume? What ridiculous absurdity did he display? In what manner did he discover his prodigality? 25. How did he maintain his horse? Of what horrid cruelties was he guilty? How did he express himself when censured with the citizens? What expedition did Caligula undertake? How did he act upon the march? 30. What was his conduct in Batavia? How at last freed the world of this Tyrant? Who joined Cherea? What accident gave new strength to the conspiracy? What remarkable fortitude did Quintilia discover? 35. When did the conspirators resolve to strike the blow? Who persuaded Caligula to go to the bath? What took place upon his entering the gallery? How long did Caligula reign? What was the saying of Seneca respecting him?

## SECTION IV.

U. C. 794. As soon as the death of Caligula was made  
A. D. 42. public, it produced the greatest confusion in  
all parts of the city. The conspirators, who  
only aimed at destroying a tyrant, without attending to  
a successor, had all sought safety, by retiring to private  
places. Some soldiers happening to run about the palace,  
discovered Claudius, Caligula's uncle, lurking in a  
secret place, where he had hid himself through fear.  
Of this personage, who had hitherto been despised on  
account of his imbecility, they resolved to make an emperor,  
and accordingly carried him upon their shoulders to the camp,  
where they proclaimed him, at a time he expected nothing  
but death, and the senate confirmed their choice.

Claudius was now fifty years old when he began to reign.  
The complicated diseases of his infancy had in some measure  
affected all the faculties both of his body and mind. He was  
continued in a state of pupilage much longer than was usual  
at that time, and seemed in every part of life incapable of  
conducting himself.

The commencement of his reign, as it was with all the  
other bad emperors, gave the most promising hopes of an  
happy continuance. He began by passing an act of oblivion  
for all former words and actions, and disannulled all the  
cruel edicts of Caligula. He showed himself more moderate  
than his predecessors with regard to titles and honours. He  
forbade all persons, upon severe penalties, to sacrifice to  
him, as they had done to Caligula. He was assiduous in  
hearing and examining complaints, and frequently administered  
justice in person, tempering, by his mildness, the severity of  
strict justice.

To his solicitude for the internal advantages of the state,  
he added that of a watchful guardianship over the provinces.  
He restored Judea to Herod Agrippa, which Caligula had  
taken from Herod Antipas, his uncle, the man who had put  
John the Baptist to death, and who was banished by order  
of the present emperor. Claudius also restored such princes  
to their kingdoms, as had been unjustly dispossessed by his  
predecessors, but could not



deprived the Lycians and Rhodians of their liberty, for having promoted insurrection, and crucified some citizens of Rome.

He even undertook to gratify the people by foreign conquest. The Britons, who had for near an hundred years been left in the sole possession of their own island, began to seek the mediation of Rome, to quell their intestine commotions. The principal man who desired to subject his native country to the Roman dominion, was one Bercius, who, by many arguments, persuaded the emperor to make a descent upon the island, magnifying the advantages that would attend the conquest of it. In pursuance of his advice, therefore, Plantius the prætor was ordered to pass over into Gaul, and make preparations for this great expedition. At first, indeed, his soldiers seemed backward to embark, declaring that they were unwilling to make war beyond the limits of the world, for so they judged Britain to be. However, they were at last persuaded to go; and the Britons, under the conduct of their king Cynobelinus, were several times overthrown.

These successes soon after induced Claudius to go into Britain in person, upon pre- A. D. 46.  
tence that the natives were still seditious, and had not delivered up some Roman fugitives, who had taken shelter among them. However his expedition seemed rather calculated for show than service: the time he continued in Britain, which was in all but sixteen days, he was more taken up in receiving homage than extending his conquests. Great rejoicings were made upon his return to Rome: the senate decreed him a splendid triumph; triumphant arches were erected to his honour, and annual games instituted to commemorate his victories.— In the mean time the war was vigorously prosecuted by Plantius, and his lieutenant Vespasian, who, according to Suetonius, fought thirty battles with the enemy, and by that means, reduced a part of the island into the form of a Roman province. However, this war A. D. 51.  
broke out afresh under the government of Ostorius, who succeeded Plantius. The Britons, either

despising him for want of experience, or hoping to gain advantages over a person newly come to command, rose up in arms, and disclaimed the Roman power. The Iceni, the Cangi, and the Brigantes, made a powerful resistance, they were at length overcome; but the Silures or inhabitants of South Wales, under their king Caractacus, were the most formidable opponents the Roman generals had ever yet encountered. This brave barbarian not only made a gallant defence, but often seemed to claim a doubtful victory. He with great conduct removed the seat of war into the most inaccessible parts of the country, and for nine years kept the Romans in continual alarm.

This general however, upon the approach of Ostorius, finding himself obliged to come to a decisive engagement, addressed his countrymen with calm resolution, telling them that this battle would either establish their liberty, or confirm their servitude: that they ought to remember the bravery of their ancestors, by whose valour they were delivered from taxes and tributes, and that this was the time to show themselves equal to their progenitors. Nothing, however, that undisciplined valour could perform, could avail against the conduct of the Roman Legions. After an obstinate fight, the Britons were entirely routed; the wife and daughter of Caractacus were taken prisoners; and he himself seeking refuge from Cartismandua, queen of the Brigantes, was treacherously delivered up to the conquerors.—When he was brought to Rome, nothing could exceed the curiosity of the people to behold a man who had for so many years braved the power of the empire. On his part he testified no marks of base dejection; but, as he was led through the streets, happening to observe the splendour of every thing around him: “Alas,” cried he, “how is it possible that people, possessed of such magnificence at home, could think of envying Caractacus an humble cottage in Britain!” When he was brought before the emperor, while the other captives sued for pity with the most abject lamentations, Caractacus stood before the tribunal with an intrepid air, and seemed rather willing to accept of pardon, than meanly solicitous of

ing for it. "If," cried he, towards the end of his speech, "I had yielded immediately, and without opposition, neither my fortune would have been remarkable, nor your glory memorable: you would have ceased to be victorious, and I had been forgotten. If now, therefore, you spare my life, I shall continue a perpetual example of your clemency." Claudius had the generosity to pardon him; and Ostorius was decreed a triumph, which however he did not live to enjoy.

Claudius gave, in the beginning of his reign, the highest hopes of an happy continuance: but he soon began to lessen his care for the public, and to commit to his favourites all the concerns of the empire. This weak prince had from his infancy been in a state of pupillage; and now, when called to govern, he was unable to act without under the direction of others. The chief of his instructors was his wife Messalina, whose name is almost become a common appellation for women of abandoned characters.

By her was Claudius urged on to commit cruelties, which he considered only as wholesome severities, while her debaucheries became every day more notorious, and her lewdness exceeded what had ever been seen in Rome. Her crimes and enormities, however, being at length discovered, she, together with her paramour, Caius Silius, suffered that death they so justly deserved.

Claudius took for his second wife Agrippina, the daughter of his brother Germanicus, a woman of a cruel and ambitious spirit; her whole aim being to procure the succession for Nero, her son by a former marriage, she treated Claudius with such haughtiness, that he was heard to declare when heated with wine, that it was his fate to suffer the disorders of his wives, and to be their executioner. This expression sunk deep on her mind, and engaged all her faculties to prevent the blow. She, therefore, resolved not to defer a crime which she had meditated a long while before, which was to poison him. She for some time, however, debated with herself in what manner she could administer the poison, as she feared too strong a dose would discover her treachery, and one too weak might fail of its effect. At length

she determined upon a poison of a singular efficacy, to destroy his intellects, and yet not suddenly to terminate his life. As she had been long conversant in this horrid practice, she applied to a woman called Locusta, notorious for assisting on such occasions. The poison was given the emperor among mushrooms, a dish he was particularly fond of. Shortly after having eaten, he dropped down insensible; but this was no alarm, as it was usual with him to sit eating till he had stupified all his faculties, and was obliged to be carried off to his bed from the table. However, his constitution seemed to overcome the effects of the poison, when Agrippina resolved to make sure of him: wherefore she directed a wretched physician, who was her creature, to thrust a poisoned feather down his throat, under pretence of making him vomit, and this dispatched him.

### *Exercises.*

1. Who succeeded Caligula? How old was Claudius when he began to reign? What diligence and prudence did he discover in the commencement of his reign? To whom did he restore Judea? 5. Whom did he deprive of their liberty? What foreign expedition did he undertake? Over whom did Plautius gain advantages? How long did Claudius remain in Britain? What honours were paid to him upon his return to Rome? 10. In what manner did Plautius and Vespasian carry on the war? Who rose against Ostorius? What bravery did Caractacus display? In what manner did he address his army before the engagement? What was the result? 15. By whom was Caractacus basely delivered up? What remarks did he make on observing the splendor of Rome? In what manner did he address the Emperor? What effect did his intrepidity produce on Claudius? To whom did Claudius commit the concerns of the Empire? 20. Who urged him to commit cruelties? What became of Messalina? Whom did Claudius afterwards marry? What was the chief aim of Agrippina? What crime did she meditate? 25. Whom did she call in to her assistance? In what manner did she at length accomplish her design?

---

### SECTION V.

A. D. 55. Nero, though but seventeen years of age began his reign with the general approbation of mankind. He appeared just, liberal, and humane; when a warrant for the execution of a criminal was brought him to be signed, he was heard to cry out, with seeming concern, "Would to heaven that I had never learned to write!"

But as he increased in years, his crimes seemed to increase in equal proportion. The execution of his own mother Agrippina was the first alarming instance he gave of his cruelty. Having attempted to get her drowned at sea, failing in this, he ordered her to be put to death in her palace; and coming in person to gaze upon the dead body, was heard to say, that he never thought his mother had been so handsome.

All the bounds of virtue being thus broken down, Nero now gave a loose to his appetites, that were not only sordid but inhuman. There seemed an odd contrast in his disposition; for while he practised cruelties, which were sufficient to make the mind shudder with horror, he was fond of those amusing arts that soften and refine the heart. He was particularly addicted, even from childhood, to music, and not totally ignorant of poetry; but chariot-driving was his favourite pursuit: and all these he frequently was seen to exhibit in public.

But it had been happy for mankind had he confined himself to these, and, contented with being contemptible, sought not to become formidable also. His cruelties even outdid all his other extravagances. He seemed even studious of finding out pleasures as well as crimes against nature. Being attired in the habit of a woman, and covered with a yellow veil like a bride, he was wedded to one of his abominable companions, called Pythagoris, and again to his freed-man Deriphorus. On the other hand, that he might be every way detestable, he became the husband of a youth named Sporus, whom he had previously deprived of the marks of virility. A great part of the city of Rome was consumed by fire in his time; and most historians ascribe the conflagration to him. It is said that he stood upon a high tower, during the continuance of the flames, enjoying the sight, and repeating, in a player's habit, and in a theatrical manner, some verses upon the destruction of Troy.—As a proof of his guilt upon this occasion, none were permitted to lend any assistance towards extinguishing the flames; and several persons were seen setting fire to the houses, alledging that they had orders for so doing. However this be, the emperor used every art to throw

the odium of so detestable an action from himself, and to fix it upon the Christians, who were at that time gaining ground in Rome. Nothing could be more dreadful than the persecution raised against them upon this false accusation. Some were covered with the skins of wild beasts, and, in that figure, devoured by dogs. Some were crucified, and others burnt alive. "When the day was not sufficient for their tortures, the flames in which they perished," says Tacitus, "served to illuminate the night," while Nero, dressed in the habit of a charioteer, regaled himself with their tortures from his gardens, and entertained the people at one time with their sufferings, at another, with the games of the Circus.—In this persecution St Paul was beheaded, and St Peter was crucified with his head downwards; which death he chose, as being more dishonourable than that of his Divine Master.

A conspiracy formed against Nero by Piso, a man of great power and integrity, which was prematurely discovered, opened a new train of suspicion that destroyed many of the principal families in Rome. The two most remarkable personages that fell on this occasion, were Seneca, the philosopher, and Lucan the poet, who was his nephew. Nero, either having real testimony against him, or else hating him for his virtues, sent a tribune to Seneca, informing him that he was suspected as an accomplice. The tribune found the philosopher, at table with Paulina his wife, and, informing him of his business, Seneca, replied, that his welfare depended upon no man; that he had never been accustomed to indulge the errors of the emperor, and would not do it now. When this answer was brought to Nero, he demanded whether Seneca seemed afraid to die; the tribune replying, that he did not appear in the least terrified: "Then go to him again," cried the emperor, "and give him my orders to die." Accordingly he sent a centurion to Seneca, signifying that it was the emperor's pleasure that he should die. Seneca seemed no way discomposed, and was not unmindful of his constancy. He endeavoured to console his wife for his loss, and exhort her to a life of persevering virtue. But she seemed resolved on not

in reviving him, and pressed her request to die with him, so earnestly, that Seneca, who had long looked upon death as a benefit, at last gave his consent, and the veins of both their arms were opened at the same time. As Seneca was old, and much enfeebled by the austerities of his life, the blood flowed but slowly, so that he caused the veins of his legs and thighs to be opened also.—His pains were long and violent, but they were not capable of repressing his fortitude or his eloquence. He dictated a discourse to two secretaries, which was read with great assiduity after his death by the people, but which has since perished in the wreck of time. His agonies being now drawn out to a great length, he at last demanded poison from his physician; but this also failed of its effect, his body being already exhausted, and incapable of exciting its operation. He was from this carried into a warm bath, which only served to prolong his end; at length, therefore, he was put into a dry stove, the vapour of which quickly dispatched him. In the mean time, his wife Paulina having fallen into a swoon with the loss of blood, had her arms bound up by her domestics, and by this means survived her husband for some years; but by her conduct during the rest of her life, she seemed always mindful of her own love and his example.

The death of Lucan was not less remarkable. The veins of his arms being opened, after he had lost a great quantity of blood, perceiving his hands and legs already dead, while the vital parts still continued warm and vigorous, he called to mind a description in his own poem of the Pharsalia, of a person dying in similar circumstances, and expired while he was repeating that beautiful passage:

“ Nec sicut vulnere sanguis

“ Emicuit lentus. Reptis cadit undique venis.

“ ~~~~~~~~~ Pars ultima trunci

“ Tradidit in cœtum vacuos, vitalibus artus,

“ At tumidos qua pulmo jacet qua viscera fervent

“ Hæserunt ibi fati diu; Luctataque multum

“ Hac cum parte, viri vix omnia membra tulerunt.”

**A. D. 66.** The death of Petronius about this time is too remarkable to be passed over in silence. This person whom many modern historians suppose to be the author of a work of no great merit, entitled *Satyricon*, which is still remaining, was an Epicurean both in principle and practice. In so luxurious a court as that of Nero, he was particularly noted for his refinements in luxury. He was accused of being privy to Piso's conspiracy, and committed to prison. Petronius could not endure the anxiety of suspense, wherefore he resolved upon putting himself to death, which he performed in a manner entirely similar to that in which he had lived. He opened his veins, and then closed them as he thought least painful, with the utmost cheerfulness and tranquillity. He conversed with his friends, not upon maxims of philosophy or grave subjects, but upon such subjects as had amused his gayest revels. He listened while they recited the lightest poems, and by no action, no word, nor circumstance, showed the perplexity of a dying person. Shortly after him Numicius Thermus was put to death, as likewise Barea Soranus and Pætus Thrasea. The destroying the two last, Tacitus calls an attack upon virtue itself. Thrasea died in the midst of his friends and philosophers, conversing and reasoning on the nature of the soul. His wife, who was the daughter of the celebrated Arria, was desirous of following her mother's example, but he dissuaded her from it. The death of the valiant Corbulo, who had gained Nero so many victories over the Parthians followed next. Nor did the empress Poppea herself escape, whom, in a fit of anger, he kicked when she was pregnant, by which she miscarried and died.—At length human nature grew weary of bearing her persecutor, and the whole world seemed to rouse, as if by common consent, to rid the earth of a monster.

Sergius Galba, who was at that time governor of Spain, was remarkable for his wisdom in peace, and his courage in war; but as all talents under corrupt princes are dangerous, he for some years had seemed willing to court obscurity, giving himself to an inactive life, and avoiding all opportunity of signalizing his valour.



But willing to rid his country of a monster, he accepted the invitation of Vindix to march with an army towards Rome. The reputation of that general was such, that from the moment he declared against Nero, the tyrant considered himself undone. He received the account as he was at supper, and instantly struck with error, overturned the table with his foot, breaking two crystal vases of immense value. He then fell into a swoon, from which, when he recovered, he tore his clothes, and struck his head, crying out "that he was utterly undone." He now, therefore, called for Locusta to furnish him with poison, and thus prepared for the worst, he retired to the Servelian gardeus with a resolution of flying into Egypt. Being prevented in this, and the revolt becoming general, he went in person from house to house; but all the doors were shut against him, and none were found to answer his inquiries. Being now reduced to a state of desperation, he desired that one of his favourite gladiators might come and dispatch him; but even in this request there was none found to obey.— "Alas," cried he, "have I neither friend nor enemy?" And then running desperately forth, seemed resolved to plunge headlong into the Tyber. But just then his courage beginning to fail him, he made a sudden stop, as if willing to recollect his reason, and asked for some secret place, where he might reassume his courage, and meet death with becoming fortitude. In this distress Phaon, one of his freed-men, offered him his country-house, about four miles distant, where he might for some time remain concealed. Nero accepted his offer, and, half dressed as he was, with his head covered, and hiding his face with his handkerchief, he mounted on horseback, attended by four of his domestics, of whom the wretched Sporus was one. His journey, though short, was crowded with adventures. An earthquake gave him the first alarm. The lightning from heaven next flashed in his face. Round him he heard nothing but confused noises from the camp, and the cries of the soldiers, imprecating a thousand evils upon his head. A passenger meeting him on the way, cried, "There go men in pursuit of Nero." Another asked him if there was any

news of Nero in the city. His horse taking fright at a dead body that lay on the road, he dropped his handkerchief, and a soldier who was near, addressed him by name. He now, therefore, quitted his horse, and forsaking the highway, entered a thicket that led towards the back part of Phaon's house, through which he crept, making the best of his way among the reeds and brambles, with which the place was overgrown. During this interval, the senate finding the prætorian guards had taken part with Galba, declared him emperor, and condemned Nero to die, *more majorum*, that is, according to the ancient laws. When he was told of the resolution of the senate against him, he asked the messenger what was meant by being punished according to the rigour of the ancient law? To this he was answered, That the criminal was to be stripped naked, his head was to be fixed in a pillory, and in that posture he was to be scourged to death. Nero was so terrified at this, that he seized two poniards which he had brought with him, and examining their points, returned them to their sheaths, pretending that the fatal moment was not yet arrived.—He then desired Sporus to begin the lamentations which were used at funerals; he next entreated that some of his attendants would die, to give him courage by their example; and afterwards began to reproach his own cowardice, crying out, “Does this become Nero? is this trifling well timed? No, no, let me be courageous.” In fact he had no time to spare, for the soldiers who had been sent in pursuit of him, were just then approaching the house; wherefore, hearing the sound of the horse's feet, he set a dagger to his throat, with which, by the assistance of Epaphroditus, his freed-man and secretary, he gave himself a mortal wound. However, he was not yet quite dead, when one of the centurions entering the room, and pretending he came to his relief, attempted to stop the blood with his cloak. But Nero regarding him with a stern countenance, said, “It is now too late. Is this your fidelity?” Upon which, with his eyes fixed, and frightfully staring, he expired, even in death, a ghastly spectacle of innoxious tyranny. He

thirteen years, seven months, and twenty-eight days, and died in the thirty-second year of his age.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Claudius? In what manner did Nero commence his reign? How did he act whilst Rome was in a state of conflagration? What dreadful persecution did the Christians endure? Which of the Apostles suffered? What remarkable personages fell on this occasion? In what manner did Seneca employ his last moments? What became of Paulina? What was remarkable in the death of Lucan? Of what was Petronius accused? Who were put to death after Petronius? What became of Corbulo and Poppia? How did Nero act on learning that Galba had declared against him? To what extremity was he reduced? What measures did the Senate adopt? In what manner did Nero at length put a period to his existence? How long did he reign?



### SECTION IV.

A. D. 69. Galba was seventy-two years old when he was declared emperor, and was then in Spain, with his legions. However, he soon found that his being raised to the throne was but an inlet to new disquietudes. He seemed to have three objects in view. To curb the insolence of the soldiers, to punish those vices which had come to an enormous height in the last reign, and to replenish the exchequer, which had been quite drained by the prodigality of his predecessors. However, permitting himself to be governed by favourites, he at one time showed himself severe and frugal, at another remiss and prodigal, condemning some illustrious persons without any hearing, and pardoning others, though guilty. In consequence of this, many seditions were kindled, and several factions were promoted in different parts of the empire, but particularly in Germany.

Galba being informed of these commotions, was sensible that, besides his age, he was less respected for want of an heir, he resolved, therefore, to put what he had formerly designed in execution, and to adopt some

person whose virtues might deserve such advancement, and protect his declining age from danger. His favourites understanding his determination, instantly resolved on giving him an heir of their own choosing, so that there arose a great contention among them upon this occasion. Otho made warm application for himself, alleging the great services he had done the emperor, as being the first of note who came to his assistance when he had declared against Nero. However, Galba being resolved to consult the public good alone, rejected his suit, and on a day appointed, ordered Piso Lucinianus to attend him. The character given by historians to Piso is, that he was every way worthy of the honour designed him. He was not related to Galba, and had no other interest but merit to recommend him to his favour. Taking the youth, therefore, by the hand, in the presence of his friends, he adopted him to succeed in the empire, giving him the most wholesome lessons for guiding his future conduct. Piso's conduct showed that he was highly deserving this distinction. In all his deportment there appeared such modesty, firmness, and equality of mind, as bespoke him rather capable of discharging, than ambitious of obtaining his present dignity.—But the army and the senate did not seem equally disinterested upon this occasion: and they had been so long used to bribery and corruption, that they could now bear no emperor who was not in a capacity of satisfying their avarice. The adoption, therefore, of Piso was but coldly received; for his virtues were no recommendation in a nation of universal depravity.

Otho, who had been long a favourite of Galba, and hoping to be adopted his successor in the empire, finding his hopes disappointed, and still further stimulated by the immense load of debt which he had contracted by his riotous way of living, resolved upon obtaining the empire by force since he could not by peaceable succession. Having corrupted the fidelity of the soldiers, he stole secretly from the emperor while he was sacrificing; and assembling the soldiers, in a short speech urged the cruelties and avarice of Galba. Finding the invectives received with universal shouts by the whole army, he

entirely threw off the mask, and avowed his intentions of dethroning him. The soldiers being ripe for sedition, immediately seconded his views; and taking Otho upon their shoulders, immediately declared him emperor; and to strike the citizens with terror, carried him, with their swords drawn, into the camp.

Soon after, finding the emperor in some measure deserted by his adherents, the soldiers rushed in upon him, trampling the crowds of people that then filled the forum under foot. Galba seeing them approach, seemed to recollect all his fortitude; and, bending his head forward, bid the assassin strike it off, if it were for the good of the people. This was quickly performed; and his head being set upon the point of a lance, was presented to Otho, who ordered it to be contemptuously carried round the camp, his body remaining unburied in the streets, till it was interred by one of his slaves. He died in the seventy-third year of his age, after a short reign of seven months: as illustrious by his own virtues, as it was contaminated by the vices of his favourites, who shared in his downfall. A. D. 69.

Otho, who was now elected emperor, began his reign by a signal instance of clemency in pardoning Marius Celsus, who had been highly favoured by Galba; and not contented with barely forgiving, he advanced him to the highest honours, asserting that, "fidelity deserved every reward."

In the mean time, the legions in Lower Germany having been purchased by the large gifts and specious promises of Vitellius their general, were at length induced to proclaim him emperor; and, regardless of the senate, they declared that they had an equal right to appoint to that high station, with the cohorts at Rome.

Otho departed from Rome with all haste to give Vitellius battle. The army of Vitellius, which consisted of seventy thousand men, was commanded by his generals Valens and Cecinna, he himself remaining in Gaul in order to bring up the rest of his forces. Both sides hastened to meet each other with so much animosity and precipitation, that three considerable battles were fought

in the space of three days. One near Placentia, another near Cremona, and a third at a place called Casto; in all which Otho and the Romans had the advantage.— But these successes were but of short lived continuance for Valens and Cécinna, who had hitherto acted separately, joining their forces, and reinforcing their armies with fresh supplies, resolved to come to a general engagement. In this, Otho's forces were totally overthrown, and he killed himself shortly after, having reigned three months and five days.

A. D. 70. Vitellius was immediately after declared emperor by the senate, and received the marks of distinction, which were soon accustomed to follow the appointments of the strongest side.

Upon his arrival at Rome, he entered the city, not as a place he came to govern with justice, but as a town that was become his own by the laws of conquest.

Vitellius soon gave himself up to all kinds of luxury and profuseness; but gluttony was his favourite vice, so that he brought himself to an habit of vomiting in order to be able to renew his meals at pleasure. His entertainments, though seldom at his own cost, were prodigiously expensive; he frequently invited himself to the tables of his subjects, breakfasting with one, dining with another, and supping with a third, all in the same day.

By the continuance of such vices, added to enormous cruelties, he became not only a burden to himself, but odious to all mankind. Thus, having become insupportable to the inhabitants of Rome, the legions of the east, who had at first acquiesced in his dominion, began to revolt, and shortly after unanimously resolved to make Vespasian emperor.

During the preparations against him, Vitellius, though buried in sloth and luxury, was resolved to make an effort to defend the empire; wherefore, his chief commanders, Valens and Cécinna, were ordered to make all possible preparations to resist the invaders. The first army that entered Italy with an hostile intention, was under the command of Antonius Trimus, who was met by Cécinna near Cremona. A battle was expected to

ensue, but a negociation taking place, Cecinna was prevailed upon to change sides, and declare for Vespasian. His army however quickly repented of what they had done, and imprisoning their general, attacked Antonius, though without a leader. The engagement continued during the whole night; and in the morning, after a short repast, both armies engaged a second time, when the soldiers of Antonius saluting the rising sun, according to custom, the Vitellians, supposing that they had received new reinforcements, betook themselves to flight, with the loss of thirty thousand men.

In the mean time Vitellius, who was wallowing in all kinds of luxury and excess, made offers to Vespasian of resigning the empire, provided his life were spared, and a sufficient revenue allotted for his support. In order to enforce this request, he issued from his palace in deep mourning, with all his domestics weeping round him.—He then went to offer the sword of justice to Cecilius the consul, which he refusing, the abject emperor prepared to lay down the ensigns of empire in the temple of Concord; but being interrupted by some who cried out that he himself was Concord, he resolved, upon so weak an encouragement, still to maintain his power; and immediately prepared for his defence.

During this fluctuation of counsels, one Sabinus, who had advised Vitellius to resign, perceiving his desperate situation, resolved by a bold step to oblige Vespasian, and accordingly seized on the Capitol. But he was premature in his attempt; for the soldiers of Vitellius attacking him with great fury, and prevailing by their numbers, soon laid that beautiful building in ashes. During this conflagration, Vitellius was feasting in the palace of Tiberius, and beholding all the horrors of the assault with great satisfaction. Sabinus was taken prisoner, and shortly after executed by the emperor's command.—Young Domitian, his nephew, who was afterwards emperor, escaped by flight in the habit of a priest, and all the rest who survived the fire were put to the sword.

But Antonius, Vespasian's commander, being arrived before the walls of the city, the forces of Vitellius re-

ceived upon defending it to the utmost extremity. It was also attacked on three sides with the utmost fury, while the army within sallying upon the besiegers, defended it with equal obstinacy. The battle lasted a whole day till at last the besieged were driven into the city, and a dreadful slaughter made of them in all the streets, which they vainly attempted to defend.

Vitellius was soon found hidden in an obscure corner from whence he was taken by a party of the conquering soldiers. Still, however, willing to add a few hours more to his miserable life, he begged to be kept in prison till the arrival of Vespasian at Rome, pretending that he had secrets of importance to discover. But his intreaties were vain, the soldiers, binding his hands behind him, and throwing an halter round his neck, led him along half naked into the public forum, upbraiding him as they proceeded, with all those bitter reproaches their malice could suggest, or his own cruelty might deserve. At length, being come to the place of punishment, they killed him with many blows; and then dragging the dead body through the streets with an hook, they threw it with all possible ignominy, into the river Tiber.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Nero? What imprudence and injustice did Galba discover? Whom did Galba appoint his successor? What was the character of Piso? Who resolved to obtain the empire by force? How did Otho effect his design? What fortitude did Galba display? Who was elected Emperor on the death of Galba? How did Otho display his clemency? Of what number did the army of Vitellius consist? What battles were fought between the two armies? What became of Otho? Who was declared Emperor by the Senate? In what manner did the Legions in the East act? What preparations did Vitellius make to resist the invaders? In what manner did Cecinna act? What loss did the Vitellians sustain? How did the forces of Vitellius defend Rome? What became of Vitellius?



## SECTION V.

Vespasian was now declared emperor, by the unanimous consent, both of the senate and the army, and dignified with all those titles which now followed rather the power than the merit of those who were appointed to govern. A. D. 70.

Having continued some months at Alexandria in Egypt where it is said he cured a blind and a lame man, by touching them, he set out for Rome, giving his son Titus the command of the army that was to lay siege to Jerusalem, while he himself went forward, and was met many miles from Rome by all the senate, and near half the inhabitants, who gave the sincerest testimonies of their joy, in having an emperor of such great and experienced virtues.— Nor did he in the least disappoint their expectations, being equally assiduous in rewarding merit, and pardoning his adversaries, in reforming the manners of the citizens, and setting them the best example in his own.

In the mean time, Titus carried on the war against the Jews with vigour. This obstinate and infatuated people had long resolved to resist the Roman power, vainly hoping to find protection from Heaven, which their impieties had utterly offended. Their own historian represents them as arrived at the highest pitch of iniquity, while famines, earthquakes, and prodigies, all conspired to presage their approaching ruin. Nor was it sufficient that Heaven and earth seemed combined against them; they had the most bitter dissensions among themselves, and were split into two parties, that robbed and destroyed each other with impunity, still pillaging and at the same time boasting of their zeal for the religion of their ancestors.

At the head of one of these parties, was an incendiary, whose name was John. This fanatic affected sovereign power, and filled the whole city of Jerusalem, and all the towns around with tumult and pillage. In a short time a new faction arose, headed by one Simon; who, gathering together multitudes of robbers and murderers, who had fled to the mountains, attacked many

cities and towns, and reduced all Idumea into his power. Jerusalem, at length, became the theatre in which these two demagogues began to exercise their mutual animosity; John was possessed of the temple, while Simon was admitted into the city, both equally enraged against each other, while slaughter and devastation followed their pretensions. Thus did a city, formerly celebrated for peace and unity, become the seat of tumult and confusion.

It was in this miserable situation, that Titus began his operations within about six furlongs of the city of Jerusalem, during the feast of the Passover, when the place was filled with an infinite number of people, who had come from all parts to celebrate that great solemnity. The approach of the Romans produced a temporary reconciliation between the contending factions within the city; so that they unanimously resolved to oppose the common enemy first, and then decide their domestic quarrels at a more convenient season. Their first sally, which was made with much fury and resolution, put the besiegers into great disorder, and obliged them to abandon their camp, and flee to the mountains. However, rallying immediately after, the Jews were forced back into the city, while Titus in person showed surprising instances of valour and conduct.

These advantages over the Romans only renewed in the besieged their desires of private revenge. A tumult ensued in the temple, in which several of both parties were slain; and, in this manner, upon every remission from without, the factions of John and Simon violently raged against each other within, agreeing only in their resolution to defend the city against the Romans.

The city was strongly fortified by three walls on every side, except where it was fenced by deep vallies. Titus began by battering down the outward wall, which, after much fatigue and danger, he effected, all the time showing the greatest clemency to the Jews, and offering them repeated assurances of pardon. Five days after the commencement of the siege, Titus broke through the second wall, and though driven back by the besieged, he recovered his ground, and made preparations for battering the third wall, which was their last defence.—

But first, he sent Josephus, their countryman, into the city, to exhort them to yield, who, using all his eloquence to persuade them, was only reviled with scoffs and reproaches. The siege was now, therefore, carried on with greater vigour than before: several batteries or engines were raised, which were no sooner built than destroyed by the enemy. At length it was resolved in council to surround the whole city with a trench, and thus prevent all relief and succours from abroad. This, which was quickly executed, seemed no way to intimidate the Jews. Though famine and pestilence, its necessary attendant, began now to make the most horrid ravages among them; yet this desperate people still resolved to hold out. He now cut down all the woods within a considerable distance of the city, and causing more batteries to be raised, he at length battered down the wall, and in five days entered the citadel by force. The Jews however continued to deceive themselves with absurd and false expectations, while many false prophets eluded the multitude, declaring they should soon have assistance from God. The heat of the battle was now therefore, gathered round the inner wall of the temple, while the defendants desperately combated from the top. Titus was willing to save this beautiful structure; but a soldier casting a brand into some adjacent buildings, the fire communicated to the temple, and notwithstanding the utmost endeavours on both sides, the whole edifice was quickly consumed. The sight of the temple in ruins, effectually served to damp the ardour of the Jews. They now began to perceive that Heaven had forsaken them, while their cries and lamentations echoed from the adjacent mountains. Even those who were almost expiring, lifted up their dying eyes to bewail the loss of their temple, which they valued more than life itself.—The most resolute, however, still endeavoured to defend the upper and stronger part of the city, named Zion; but Titus, with his battering engines, soon made himself entire master of the place. John and Simon were taken from the vaults where they had concealed themselves; the former was condemned to perpetual imprisonment, and the latter reserved to grace the conquer-

or's triumph. The greatest part of the populace were put to the sword, and the city was, after six months' siege, entirely razed by the plough; so that according to our Saviour's prophecy, not one stone remained upon another. The numbers who perished in this siege, according to Josephus, amounted to above a million souls, and the captives to almost an hundred thousand.

Upon the taking of Jerusalem, his soldiers would have crowned Titus as conqueror; but he modestly refused the honour, alledging that he was only an instrument in the hand of Heaven, that manifestly declared its wrath against the Jews. At Rome, however, all men's mouths were filled with the praises of the conqueror, who had not only shown himself an excellent general, but a courageous combatant: his return, therefore, in triumph, which he did with his father, was marked with all the magnificence and joy that was in the power of men to express. All things that were esteemed valuable or beautiful among men were brought to adorn this occasion. Among the rich spoils were exposed vast quantities of gold, taken out of the temple; but the Book of the Holy Law was the most remarkable among the magnificent profusion. This was the first time that ever Rome saw the father and son triumph together. A triumphal arch was erected upon this occasion, on which were inscribed all the victories of Titus over the Jews, which remains almost entire to this very day. Vespasian likewise built a temple to Peace, wherein were deposited most of the Jewish spoils; and having now calmed all commotions in every part of the empire, he shut up the temple of Janus, which had been open for about five or six years.

Few emperors have received a better character from historians than Vespasian; yet all his numerous acts of generosity and magnificence could not preserve his character from the imputation of rapacity and avarice. He descended to some very unusual and dishonourable imposts, even to the laying a tax upon urine. When his son Titus, remonstrated against the meanness of such a tax, Vespasian, taking a piece of money, demanded if

the smell offended him, adding, that this very money was produced by urine.

Notwithstanding having reigned ten years, loved by his subjects, and deserving their affection, he was surprised with an indisposition at Campania, which from the beginning he declared would be fatal; and perceiving his end approaching, as he was just going to expire, cried out, that an emperor ought to die standing: therefore, raising himself upon his feet, he expired in the hands of those that sustained him.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Vitellius? In what manner was the Emperor received at Rome? How was Titus in the mean time employed? What occasioned the ruin of the Jews? What clemency did Titus discover? What success attended his exertions? How was the temple destroyed? Was Saviour's prophecy literally fulfilled? What number of the Jews perished in this siege? What magnificence marked his triumph at Rome? What buildings were erected on this joyful occasion? Where was Vespasian taken ill? How long did he reign?

## SECTION VI.

Titus being joyfully received as emperor, **A. D. 79.** began to reign with the practice of every virtue that became a sovereign and a man. During the life of his father, there had been many imputations against him, both for cruelty, lust, and prodigality: but on his exaltation to the throne, he seemed entirely to leave of his former vices, and became an example of the greatest moderation and humanity. His first step towards gaining the affections of his subjects, was moderating his passions, and bridling his strong inclinations. He had long loved Berenice, sister to Agrippa, king of Judea, a woman of the greatest beauty and refined accomplishments. But knowing that the connection with her was entirely disagreeable to the people of Rome, he gained a victory over his affections, and sent her away, notwithstanding their mutual passion, and the many arts she

used to induce him to change his resolutions. He neglected all those who had been the former ministers of his pleasures, and forbore to countenance the company of his looser recreations, though he had taken great pains in the selection. This moderation, added to his justice and generosity, procured him the love of all good men, and the appellation of the Delight of Mankind, which all his actions seemed calculated to insure.

Titus took particular care to punish all informers, false witnesses, and promoters of dissension. Those wretches, who had their rise in the licentiousness and impunity of former reigns, were now become so numerous, that their crimes called loudly for punishment. Of these, therefore, he daily made public examples, condemning them to be scourged in the most public streets, next to be dragged through the theatre, and then to be banished to the uninhabited part of the empire, or sold as slaves. His courtesy and readiness to do good have been celebrated even by Christian writers, his principal rule being never to send any petitioner dissatisfied away. One night recollecting that he had done nothing beneficial to mankind the day preceding, he cried out, among his friends, "I have lost a day!" A sentence too remarkable not to be universally known.

Learning that two noblemen had conspired against him, he readily forgave them; and the next day, placing them next himself in the theatre, he put the sword with which the gladiators fought into their hands, commanding their judgment and approbation, whether they were of sufficient length.

In this reign an eruption of mount Vesuvius did considerable damage, overwhelming many towns, and throwing its ashes into countries more than an hundred miles distant. Upon this memorable occasion, Pliny the naturalist lost his life; for being impelled by too eager curiosity to observe the irruption, he was suffocated in the flames. There happened also about this time a fire at Rome, which continued three days and nights successively, being followed by a plague, in which ten thousand men were buried in a day. The emperor, however, did all that lay in his power to repair the damages su-

tained by the public ; and with respect to the city, declared that he would take the whole loss of that upon himself.

These disasters were in some measure counterbalanced by the successes in Britain under Agricola. This excellent general having been sent into that country towards the latter end of Vespasian's reign, showed himself equally expert in quelling the refractory, and civilizing those who had formerly submitted to the Roman power. The Ordovices, or inhabitants of North Wales, were the first that were subdued. He then made a descent upon Mona, or the island of Anglesey, which surrendered at discretion. Having thus rendered himself master of the whole country, he took every method to restore discipline to his own army, and to introduce some share of politeness among those whom he had conquered. He exhorted them, both by advice and example to build temples, theatres, and stately houses. He caused the sons of their nobility to be instructed in the liberal arts ; he had them taught the Latin language, and induced them to imitate the Roman modes of dress and living. Thus by degrees this barbarous people began to assume the luxurious manners of their conquerors, and in some time even to out-do them in all the refinements of sensual pleasure. Upon account of these successes in Britain, Titus was saluted Imperator the fifteenth time ; but he did not long survive this honour, being surprised by a violent fever at a little distance from Rome. He expired shortly after, not without suspicion of treachery from his brother Domitian, who had long wished to govern. His death was in the forty-first year of his age, having reigned two years, two months, and twenty days.

The beginning of Domitian's reign was universally acceptable to the people, as he appeared equally remarkable for his clemency, liberality and justice. A. D. 81.

But he soon began to show the natural deformity of his mind. Instead of cultivating literature, as his father and his brother had done, he neglected all kind of study, addicting himself wholly to meaner pursuits, par-

ticularly, archery and gaming. He was so very expert an archer, that he would frequently cause one of his slaves to stand at a great distance, with his hands spread as a mark, and would shoot his arrows with such exactness as to stick them all between his fingers. He instituted three sorts of contests to be observed every five years, in music, horsemanship, and wrestling; but at the same time he banished all philosophers and mathematicians from Rome. No emperor before him entertained the people with such various and expensive shows. During these diversions he distributed great rewards, sitting as president himself adorned with a purple robe and crown, with the priests of Jupiter, and the college of Flavian priests about him. The meanness of his occupations in solitude, was a just contrast to his exhibitions of public ostentation. He usually spent his hours of retirement in catching flies, and sticking them through with a bodkin; so that one of his servants being asked if the emperor were alone? answered, that he had not so much as a fly to bear him company.

His vices seemed every day to increase with the duration of his reign. His ungrateful treatment of Agricola seemed the first symptoms of his natural malevolence.— Domitian was always particularly fond of obtaining a military reputation, and therefore jealous of it in others. He had marched some time before into Gaul upon a pretended expedition against the Catti, a people of Germany, and, without ever seeing the enemy, resolved to have the honour of a triumph upon his return to Rome. For that purpose he purchased a number of slaves, whom he dressed in German habits, and at the head of this miserable procession, entered the city amidst the apparent acclamations and concealed contempt of all his subjects. The successes, therefore, of Agricola in Britain, affected him with an extreme degree of envy. This admirable general pursued the advantages which he had already obtained. He subdued the Caledonians, and overcame Galgacus, the British chief, at the head of thirty thousand men; and afterwards sending out a fleet to scour the coast, first discovered Great Britain to be an island. He likewise discovered and subdued the Ork-



neys, and thus reduced the whole into a civilized province of the Roman empire. When the account of these successes was brought to Domitian, he received it with a seeming pleasure, but real uneasiness. He thought Agricola's rising reputation a tacit reproach upon his own inactivity; and instead of attempting to emulate, he resolved to suppress the merit of his services. He ordered him therefore external marks of approbation, and took care that triumphant ornaments, statues, and other honours, should be decreed him; but at the same time he removed him from his command, under a pretence of appointing him to the government of Syria. By these means Agricola surrendered up his government to Salustius Lucullus, but soon found that Syria was otherwise disposed of. Upon his return to Rome, which was privately, and by night he was coolly received by the emperor; and dying some time after in retirement, it was supposed by some, that his end was hastened by Domitian's direction.

Domitian soon after found the want of so experienced a commander in the many irruptions of the barbarous nations that surrounded the empire. The Sarmatians in Europe, joined with those of Asia, made a formidable invasion, at once destroying a whole legion and a general of the Romans. The Dacians under the conduct of Decebalus their king, made an irruption, and overthrew the Romans in several engagements. At last, however, the barbarians were repelled, partly by force, and partly by the assistance of money, which only served to enable them to make future invasions with greater advantage. But in whatever way the enemy might have been repelled, Domitian was resolved not to lose the honour of a triumph. He returned in great splendour to Rome: and, not contented with thus triumphing twice without a victory, he resolved to take the surname of Germanicus for his conquests over a people with whom he never contended.

In proportion as the ridicule increased against him, his pride every day seemed to demand greater homage. He would permit his statues to be made only of gold and

silver ; he assumed to himself divine honours, and ordered that all men should treat him with the same appellations as the divinity. His cruelty was not behind his arrogance ; he caused numbers of the most illustrious senators and others to be put to death upon the most trifling pretences. One *Ælius Lama* was condemned and executed only for jesting, though there was neither novelty nor poignancy in his humour. *Cocceanus* was murdered only for celebrating the nativity of *Otho*. *Pomposianus* shared the same fate, because it was foretold by an astrologer that he should be emperor. *Salustius Lucullus*, his lieutenant in Britain, was destroyed only for having given his name to a new sort of lances of his own invention. *Junius Rusticus* died for publishing a book in which he commended *Thrasea* and *Priscus*, two philosophers, who opposed *Vespasian's* coming to the throne.

*Lucius Antouius* governor of Upper Germany, knowing how much the emperor was detested at home, resolved upon striking for the throne, and accordingly assumed the ensigas of imperial dignity. As he was at the head of a formidable army, his success remained a long time doubtful ; but a sudden overflowing of the Rhine divided his army ; he was set upon at that juncture by *Normandus* the emperor's general, and totally routed. The news of this victory, we are told, was brought to Rome by supernatural means, on the same day the battle was fought. *Domitian's* severity was greatly increased by this short-lived success. In order to discover those who were accomplices with the adverse party, he invented new tortures, sometimes cutting off the hands, at other times thrusting fire into the privities of those whom he suspected of being his enemies. During his severities he aggravated his guilt by hypocrisy, never pronouncing sentence without a preamble full of gentleness and mercy. The night before he crucified the comptroller of his household, he treated him with the greatest seeming friendship, and ordered him a dish of meat from his own table. He carried *Aretinus Clemens* with him in his own litter, the day he had concluded upon his death.—He was particularly terrible to the senate and nobility ; the whole body of whom he frequently threatened to ex-

irpate entirely. At one time he surrounded the senate-house with his troops, to the great consternation of the senators. At another, he resolved to amuse himself with their terrors in a different manner. Having invited them into a spacious hall hung round with black, and illuminated by a few melancholy lamps, that diffused light only sufficient to shew the horrors of the place. All around were to be seen nothing but coffins, with the names of each of the senators written upon them, together with other objects of terror, and instruments of execution.—While the company beheld all these preparations with silent agony, several men, having their bodies blackened, each with a drawn sword in one hand, and a flaming torch in the other, entered the hall, and danced round them. After some time, when the guests expected nothing less than the most instant death, well knowing Domitian's capricious cruelty, the doors were set open, and one of the servants came to inform them, that the emperor gave all the company leave to withdraw.

These cruelties were rendered still more odious by his lust and avarice. Frequently after presiding at an execution, he would retire with the lowdest prostitutes, and use the same bath which they did. The last part of the tyrant's reign was more insupportable than any of the preceding. Nero exercised his cruelties without being a spectator; but a principal part of the Roman miseries during his reign was to see and be seen; to behold the stern air and fiery visage of the tyrant, which he had armed against blushing by continued intemperance, directing the tortures, and maliciously pleased with adding poignance to every agony.

But a period was soon to be put to this monster's cruelties. Among the number of those whom he at once caressed and suspected, was his wife Domitia, whom he had taken from Ælius Lama, her former husband. It was the tyrant's method to put down the names of all such as he intended to destroy, in his tablets, which he kept about him with great circumspection. Domitia fortunately happening to get a sight of them, was struck at finding her own name in the catalogue of those fated to destruction. She showed the fatal list to Norbanus

and Petronius, præfects of the prætorian bands, who found themselves set down ; as likewise Stephanus, the comptroller of the household, who came into the conspiracy with alacrity. They fixed upon the eighteenth day of September for the completion of their great attempt. Upon preparing to go to the bath, on the morning of that day, Petronius his chamberlain, came to inform him that Stephanus the comptroller of the household desired to speak to him upon an affair of the utmost importance. The emperor having given orders that his attendants should retire, Stephanus entered with his hand in a scarf, which he had worn thus for some days, the better to conceal a dagger, as none were permitted to approach the emperor with arms. He began by giving information of a pretended conspiracy, and exhibited a paper in which the particulars were specified.—While Domitian was reading the contents with an eager curiosity, Stephanus drew the dagger, and struck him in the groin. The wound not being mortal, Domitian caught hold of the assassin, and threw him upon the ground, calling for assistance. But Parthenius with his freed-man, a gladiator, and two subaltern officers, now coming in, they ran all furiously upon the emperor, and dispatched him with seven wounds.

It is almost incredible what some writers relate concerning Appollonius Tyaneus, who was then at Ephesus. This person, whom some call a magician, and some a philosopher, but who more probably was nothing more than an impostor, was just at the minute in which Domitian was slain, lecturing in one of the public gardens of the city. But stopping short all of a sudden, he cried out. “Courage Stephanus, strike the tyrant.” And then after a pause, “Rejoice my friends, the tyrant dies this day ; this day do I say ! the very moment in which I keep silence, he suffers for his crimes, he dies !”

Many more prodigies were said to have portended his death ; but the fate of such a monster seemed to produce more preternatural disturbances, and more predictions than it deserved. The truth seems to be, that a belief in omens and prodigies was again become prevalent ; the people were again relapsing into pristine barbarity ; a

country of ignorance is ever the proper soil for an harvest of imposture.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Vespasian? How did Titus act on his elevation to the throne? What did his moderation, justice and generosity procure him? How did he defeat two noblemen who had conspired against him? What melancholy events happened at Rome? What success attended Agricola in Britain? How did he civilize the natives? What became of Titus? Who was his successor? How did Domitian discover the natural deformity of his mind? In what manner did he incur the contempt of his subjects on his return from Gaul? What victory did Agricola obtain over the Caledonians? What became of this brave General? Who afterwards invaded the empire? What pride and cruelty did he display? Who resolved to seize the throne? What hypocrisy did Domitian exercise? Who at length put a period to the Monster's cruelties? By what means did they accomplish their purpose?



## CHAPTER XXI.

### *The Five Good Emperors of Rome.*

#### SECTION I.

When it was publicly known that Domitian was slain, the senate began to load his memory with every reproach. His statues were commanded to be taken down, and a decree was made, that all his inscriptions should be erased, his name struck off the registers of Fame, and his funeral omitted. The people, who now took little part in the affairs of government, looked on his death with indifference; the soldiers alone, whom he had loaded with favours, and enriched by largesses, sincerely regretted their benefactor.

The senate, therefore, resolved to provide a successor,

A. D. 96.

before the army could have an opportunity of taking the appointment upon themselves, and Coceius Nerva was chosen to the empire the very day on which the tyrant was slain. He was of an illustrious family, as most say, by birth a Spaniard, and above sixty-five years old when he was called to the throne. He was at that time the most remarkable man in Rome for his virtues, moderation and respect to the laws ; and he owed his exaltation to the blameless conduct of his former life.

The people being long accustomed to tyranny, regarded Nerva's gentle reign with rapture, and even gave his imbecility (for his humanity was carried too far for justice) the name of justice. Upon coming to the throne, he solemnly swore that no senator of Rome should be put to death by his command, during his reign, though they gave ever so just a cause. This oath he so religiously observed, that when two senators had conspired his death, he used no kind of severity against them : but sending for them, to let them see he was not ignorant of their design, he carried them with him to the public theatre ; there presenting each a dagger, he desired them to strike, as he was determined not to ward off the blow.

During his short reign he made several good laws.—He particularly prohibited the castration of male children ; which had been likewise condemned by his predecessor, but not wholly removed. He put all those slaves to death, who had, during the last reign, informed against their masters. He permitted no statues to be erected to his honour, and converted such of Domitian's as had been spared by the senate, into money. He sold many rich robes, and much of the splendid furniture of the palace ; and retrenched several unreasonable expenses at court. At the same time, he had so little regard for money, that when one of his subjects found a large treasure, and wrote to the emperor how to dispose of it, he received for answer, that he might use it ; but the finder still informing the emperor that it was a fortune, too large for a private person ; Nerva admiring his honesty, wrote him word that then he might abuse it.

A life of such generosity and mildness was not, however without its enemies. Vigilins Rufus, who had opposed him, was not only pardoned, but made his colleague in the consulship. Calpurnius Crassus also, with some others, formed a conspiracy to destroy him ; but he rested satisfied with banishing those who were culpable, though the senate were for inflicting more rigorous punishments. But the most dangerous insurrection against his interests, was from the prætorian bands, who, headed by Casparius Ollianus, insisted upon revenging the late emperor's death, whose memory was still dear to them from his frequent liberalities. Nerva, whose kindness to good men rendered him more obnoxious to the vicious, did all in his power to stop the progress of this insurrection ; he presented himself to the mutinous soldiers, and opening his bosom, desired them to strike there, rather than be guilty of so much injustice. The soldiers, however, paid no regard to his remonstrances, but seizing upon Petronius and Parenthius, slew them in the most ignominious manner. Not content with this, they even compelled the emperor to approve of their sedition, and to make a speech to the people, in which he thanked the cohorts for their fidelity.

So disagreeable a constraint upon the emperor's inclinations, was in the end attended with the most happy effects, as it caused the adoption of Trajan to succeed him. For perceiving that in the present turbulent disposition of the times, he stood in need of an assistant in the empire, setting aside all his own relations, he fixed upon Ulpius Trajan, an utter stranger to his family, who was then governor in Upper Germany, as his successor. And, in about three months after, having put himself into a violent passion with one Regulus a senator, he was seized with a fever of which he died, after a short reign of one year, four months, and nine days.

He was the first foreign emperor who reigned in Rome, and justly reputed a prince of great generosity and moderation. He is also celebrated for his wisdom, though with less reason, the greatest instance he gave of it during his reign, being the choice of his successor.

A. D. 98. Trajan's family was originally from Italy, but he himself was born at Seville in Spain. Upon being informed of the death of Nerva, he prepared to return to Rome from Germany, where he was governor: and one of the first lectures he received upon his arrival was from Plutarch, the philosopher, who had the honour of being his master, and is said to have written him a letter to the following purpose.—  
 “Since your merits, and not your importunities, have advanced you to the empire, permit me to congratulate your virtues, and my own good fortune. If your future government proves answerable to your former worth, I shall be happy: but if you become worse for power, yours will be the danger, and mine the ignominy of your conduct. The errors of the pupil will be charged upon the instructor. Seneca is reproached for the enormities of Nero; and Socrates and Quintilian have not escaped censure for the misconduct of their respective scholars. But you have it in your power to make me the most honoured of men, by continuing what you are. Continue the command of your passions, and make virtue the scope of all your actions. If you follow these instructions, then will I glory in having presumed to give them—if you neglect what I offer, then will this letter be my testimony that you have not erred through the counsel and authority of Plutarch.” I have inserted this letter, whether genuine or not, because it seems to me well written, and a striking picture of this great philosopher's manner of addressing that best of princes.

This good monarch's application to business, his moderation to his enemies, his modesty in exaltation, his liberality to the deserving, and his frugality in his own expences, have been the subject of panegyric among his contemporaries; and they continue to be the admiration of posterity.

Upon giving the præfect of the prætorian bands the sword, according to custom, he made use of this remarkable expression: “Take this sword and use it: if I have merit, for me; if otherwise, against me.” After which, he added, that he who gave laws, was the first who was bound to observe them.



The first war he was engaged in after his coming to the throne was with the Dacians, who during the reign of Domitian had committed numberless ravages upon the provinces of the empire. He therefore raised a powerful army, and with great expedition marched into those barbarous countries, where he was vigorously opposed by Decebalus, the Dacian king, who for a long time withstood his boldest efforts. At length, however, the monarch being constrained to come to a general battle, and no longer able to protract the war, he was routed with great slaughter, though not without great loss to the conquerors. The Roman soldiers, wanting linen to bind up their wounds, the emperor tore his own robes to supply them. This victory compelled the enemy to sue for peace, which they obtained upon very disadvantageous terms; their king coming into the Roman camp, and acknowledging himself a vassal of the Roman empire.

Upon Trajan's return, after the usual triumphs and rejoicings upon such an occasion were over, he was surprised with an account that the Dacians had renewed hostilities. Decebalus their king was now therefore a second time adjudged an enemy to the Roman state, and Trajan invaded his dominions with an army equal to that with which he had before subdued him. But Decebalus, now grown more cautious by his former defeat, used every art to avoid coming to an engagement. He also put various stratagems in practice to distress the enemy, and at one time Trajan himself was in danger of being slain or taken. He also took Longinus, one of the Roman generals, prisoner, and threatened to kill him in case Trajan refused granting him terms of peace. But the emperor replied, that peace and war had not their dependence upon the safety of one subject only; wherefore Longinus some time after destroyed himself by a voluntary death. The fate of this general seemed to give new vigour to Trajan's operations. In order to be better enabled to invade the enemy's territories at pleasure, he undertook a most stupendous work, which was no less than building a bridge across the Danube. This

amazing structure, which was built over a deep, broad, and rapid river, consisted of more than twenty-two arches, an hundred and fifty feet high, and an hundred and seventy broad; the ruins of the structure which remain to this day, show modern architects how far they were surpassed by the ancients, both in the greatness and the boldness of their designs. Upon finishing this work, Trajan continued the war with great vigour, sharing with the meanest of his soldiers the fatigues of the campaign, and continually encouraging them to their duty by his own example. By these means, notwithstanding the country was spacious and uncultivated, and the inhabitants brave and hardy, he subdued the whole, and added the kingdom of Dacia as a province to the Roman empire. Decebalus made some attempt to escape; but being surrounded on every side, he at last slew himself; and his head was sent immediately to Rome, to certify his misfortune there. These successes seemed to advance the empire to a greater degree of splendour than it had hitherto acquired. Ambassadors were seen to come from the interior parts of India, to congratulate Trajan's successes, and bespeak his friendship. At his return to Rome, he entered the city in triumph; and the rejoicings for his victories lasted for the space of one hundred and twenty days.

Having given peace and prosperity to the empire, he continued his reign, loved, honoured and almost adored by his subjects. He adorned the city with public buildings; he freed it from such men as lived by their vices; he entertained persons of merit with the utmost familiarity, and so little feared his enemies, that he could scarcely be induced to suppose he had any.

It had been happy for this great prince's memory if he had shown equal clemency to all his subjects; but about the ninth year of his reign, he was persuaded to look upon the Christians with a suspicious eye; and great numbers of them were put to death, as well  
 U. C. 860.  
 A. D. 107. by popular tumults as by edicts and judicial proceedings. However, the persecution ceased after some time: for the emperor having ad-

vice from Pliny, the pro-consul in Bythia, of the innocence and simplicity of the Christians, and of their inoffensive and moral way of living, he suspended their punishments.

During the emperor's reign, there was a dreadful insurrection of the Jews in all parts of the empire. This wretched people, still infatuated, and ever expecting some signal deliverance, took the advantage of Trajan's absence in the east, in an expedition he had undertaken against the Armenians and Parthians, to massacre all the Greeks and Romans, whom they got into their power, without reluctance or mercy. This rebellion first began in Cyrene, a Roman province in Africa; from thence the flame extended to Egypt, and next to the island of Cyprus. These places they in a manner dispeopled with ungovernable fury. Their barbarities were such that they ate the flesh of their enemies, wore their skins, sawed them asunder, cast them to wild beasts, made them kill each other, and studied new torments by which to destroy them. However, these cruelties were of no long duration; the governors of the respective provinces making head against their tumultuous fury, soon treated them with a retaliation of cruelty, and put them to death not as human beings, but as outrageous pests to society. As the Jews had practised these cruelties in Cyprus particularly, a law was publicly enacted, by which it was made capital for any Jew to set foot on the island.

During these bloody transactions, Trajan was prosecuting his successes in the east, where he carried the Roman arms farther than they had ever been before; but resolving to return once more to Rome, he found himself too weak to proceed in his usual manner. He therefore ordered himself to be carried on shipboard to the city of Seleucia, where he died of the A. D. 117. poplexy, having been attacked by that disorder once before, in the sixty-third year of his age, after a reign of nineteen years, six months, and fifteen days.

### *Exercises.*

In what manner did the Senate load the memory of Domitian with reproach? Who was chosen to succeed him? What was the character of

Nerva? What oath did he swear on coming to the throne? What laws did he enact? Who formed a conspiracy to destroy him? In what manner did the Prætorian bands act? Whom did he appoint his successor? What became of Nerva? In what manner did Trajan act after Nerva's death? How did Plutarch address him? What was the character of Trajan? With whom did he wage war? When did the Dacians renew hostilities? What became of Longinus? What stupendous work did Trajan erect? What became of Decebalus? How long did the rejoicings for the victories of Trajan continue? What persecution took place? By whose means was a stop put to it? In what manner did the Jews act? What retaliation did the Romans make? What became of Trajan?



## SECTION II.

Adrian, who was nephew to Trajan, was adopted to succeed to the empire, and elected by all orders of the state, though absent from Rome, being then at Antioch, as a general of the forces in the East.

Upon his election, he began to pursue a course quite opposite to that of his predecessor, taking every method of declining war, and promoting the arts of peace. He was quite satisfied with preserving the ancient limits of the empire, and seemed no way ambitious of extensive conquest.

Adrian was one of the most remarkable of the Roman emperors for the variety of his endowments: he was highly skilled in all the accomplishments both of body and mind: he composed with great beauty both in prose and verse; he pleaded at the bar, and was one of the best orators of his time; nor were his moral virtues less than his accomplishments. His moderation and clemency appeared, by pardoning the injuries which he had received when he was yet but a private man. One day meeting a person who had formerly been his most inveterate enemy, "My good friend," cried he, "you have escaped, for I am made emperor." He was affable to his friends, and gentle to persons of meaner stations; he relieved their wants, and visited them in sicknesses; it being his constant maxim, that he was an emperor, not

ected for his own good, but for the benefit of mankind.

These were his virtues, which were contrasted by a strange mixture of vices, or, to say the truth, he wanted strength of mind to preserve his general rectitude of character without deviation.

He was scarce settled on the throne when several of the Northern barbarians, the Alani, the Sarmatians, and the Dacians, began to make devastations on the empire. These hardy nations, who now found the way to conquer, by issuing from their forests, and then retiring upon the approach of a superior force opposing them, began to be truly formidable to Rome. Adrian had thoughts of contracting the limits of the empire, by giving up some of the most remote and least defensible provinces; but in this he was over-ruled by his friends, who wrongly imagined that an extensive frontier would intimidate an invading enemy. But though he complied with their remonstrances, he broke down the bridge over the Danube, which his predecessor had built; sensible that the same passage which was open to him, was equally convenient to the incursions of his barbarous neighbours.

Having staid a short time at Rome, so as to see that all things were regulated and established for the safety of the public, he prepared to visit and take a view of the whole empire. It was one of his maxims, that an emperor ought to imitate the sun, which diffuses warmth, and vigour through all parts of the earth. He, therefore, took with him a splendid court, and a considerable force, and entered the province of Gaul, where he numbered all the inhabitants. From Gaul he went into Germany, from thence to Holland, and then passed over into Britain; there reforming many abuses, and reconciling the natives to the Romans. For the better security of the southern parts of the kingdom, he built a wall of wood and earth, extending from the river Eden in Cumberland, to the Tyne in Northumberland, to prevent the incursions of the Picts, and other barbarous nations in the north. From Britain, returning through Gaul, he directed his journey to Spain, where he was received with great joy, as being a native of that country. There

wintering in Terragona, he called a meeting of all the deputies from the provinces, and ordered many things for the benefit of the nation. From Spain, returning to Rome, he continued there for some time, in order to prepare for his journey to the East, which was hastened by a new invasion of the Parthians. His approach compelling the enemy to make peace, he pursued his travel without molestation. Arriving in Asia Minor, he returned out of his way to visit the famous city of Athens.—There making a considerable stay, he was initiated into the Eleusian mysteries, which were accounted the most sacred in the Pagan mythology, and took upon him the office of Archon, or chief magistrate of the place. In this place also he remitted the severity of the Christian persecution, at the representation of Granianus, the proconsul of Asia, who represented the people of that persuasion as no way culpable. He was even so far reconciled to them as to think of receiving Christ among the number of the gods. After a winter's continuance at Athens, he went over into Sicily, and visited Ætna, and the other curiosities of the place. Returning from thence once more to Rome, after a short stay, he prepared ships and crossed over into Africa. There he spent much time in regulating abuses, and reforming the government; in deciding controversies, and erecting magnificent buildings. Among the rest he ordered Carthage to be rebuilt, calling it after his own name Adrianople. Again returning to Rome, where he staid but a very little time, he travelled a second time into Greece, and passed over into Asia Minor; from thence went into Syria, and gave laws and instructions to all the neighbouring kings, whom he invited to come and consult with him; he then entered Palestine, Arabia, and Egypt, where he caused Pompey's tomb, that had been long neglected, and almost covered with sand, to be renewed and beautified. He also gave orders for the re-building of Jerusalem, which was performed with great expedition by the assistance of the Jews, who now began to conceive hopes of being restored to their long lost kingdom. But these expectations only served to aggravate their calamities; for being incensed at the privileges which were

granted the Pagan worshippers in their new city, they fell upon the Romans and Christians that were dispersed throughout Judea, and unmercifully put them to the sword. Adrian was at Athens when this dangerous insurrection began : wherefore, sending a powerful body of men under the command of Julius Severus against them, this general obtained many signal, though bloody victories over the insurgents. The war was concluded in two years, by the demolition of above a thousand of their best towns, and the destruction of near six hundred thousand men in battle.

He then banished all those who remained, out of Judea ; and, by a public decree, forbade any to come within view of their native soil. This insurrection was soon after followed by a dangerous irruption of the barbarous nations to the northward of the empire, who, entering Judea with great fury, and passing through Armenia, carried their devastations as far as Cappadocia. Adrian, referring peace upon any terms to an unprofitable war, bought them off by large sums of money, so that they returned peaceably into their native wilds to enjoy their plunder, and meditate fresh invasions.

Having spent thirteen years in travelling through his dominions, and reforming the abuses of the empire, he at last resolved to return, and end all his fatigues at Rome. Nothing could be more grateful to the people than his resolution of coming to reside for the rest of his days among them ; they received him with the loudest demonstrations of joy ; and though he began to grow old and infirm, he remitted not the least of his former assiduity and application to the public welfare. His chief amusement was in conversing with the most celebrated men in every art and science ; frequently boasting that he thought no kind of knowledge inconsiderable, or to be neglected either in his private or public capacity.— Adrian was so fond of literary fame, that, we are told, he wrote his own life, and afterwards gave it to his servants to publish under their names. But whatever might have been his weakness in aiming at universal reputation, he was in no part of his reign remiss in attending the duties of his exalted station. He ordered the knights

and senators never to appear in public, but in the proper habits of their orders. He forbade masters to kill their slaves, as had been before allowed, but ordained that they should be tried by the laws enacted against capital offences. A law so just, had he done nothing more deserved to have insured his reputation with posterity, and have made him dear to mankind. He still further extended the lenity of the laws to those unhappy men, who had been long thought too mean for justice. If a master was found killed in his house, he would not allow all his slaves to be put to the torture as formerly, but only such as might have perceived or prevented the murder.

In such employments he consumed the greatest part of his time; but at last finding the duties of his station daily increasing, and his own strength proportionally upon the decline, he resolved upon adopting a successor. Marcus Antoninus, afterwards surnamed the Pious, was the person he pitched upon; but previously obliged him to adopt two others, viz. Marcus Aurelius, and Lucius Verus, all of whom afterwards succeeded to the empire.

While he was thus careful in appointing a successor, his bodily infirmities became so insupportable, that he vehemently desired some of his attendants would dispatch him. Antoninus, however, would by no means permit any of his domestics to be guilty of so great an impiety, but used all the arts in his power to reconcile the emperor to sustain life. His pains increasing every day, he was frequently heard to cry out, "How miserable a thing is it to seek death, and not to find it."—In this deplorable exigence, he resolved on going to Baia, where the tortures of his disease increasing, they affected his understanding. Continuing for some time in those excruciating circumstances, he was at last resolved to adopt no regimen, often saying that kings died merely by the multitude of their physicians. This conduct served to hasten that death he seemed so ardently to desire; and it was probably joy upon its approach which dictated the celebrated stanzas which are so well known, and in repeating which he expired, in the sixty-



second year of his age, after a prosperous reign of twenty-one years and eleven months.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Trajan? In what manner did Adrian act? What was his character? What nations began to attack the empire? What endeavour did he make to stop their incursions? How did he endeavour to secure the Southern Provinces of Britain? How did he act in Spain? What success did he obtain over the Parthians? What took place during his stay in Athens? What orders did he give respecting Carthage? What took place on his arrival in Syria? What respect did he shew to the memory of Pompey? What cruelties did the Jews exercise? By what means did Adrian obtain peace with the Barbarians? How was he received on his return to Rome? What humane laws did he enact? Whom did he adopt as his successor? When did Adrian die?

### SECTION III.

Titus Antoninus, his successor, was born B. D. 138. in the city of Nismes in Gaul. His father was a nobleman of an ancient family, that had enjoyed the highest honours of the state. At the time of his succeeding to the throne, he was about fifty years old, and had passed through many of the most important offices of the state with great integrity and application.—His virtues in private life were no way impaired by exaltation, as he showed himself one of the most excellent princes for justice, clemency, and moderation. His morals were so pure, that he was usually compared to Numa, and was surnamed the Pious, both for his tenderness to his predecessor Adrian, when dying, and his particular attachment to the religion of his country.

He was an eminent rewarder of learned men, to whom he gave large pensions and great honours, drawing them from all parts of the world. Among the rest he sent for Apollonius, the famous Stoic philosopher, to instruct his adopted son Marcus Aurelius, whom he had previously married to his daughter. Apollonius being arrived

at Rome, the emperor desired his attendance ; but the other arrogantly answered, That it was the scholar's duty to wait upon the master, and not the master's upon the scholar. To this reply Antoninus only returned with a smile, " That it was surprising how Apollonius, who made no difficulty of coming from Greece to Rome should think it so hard to walk from one part of Rome, to another," and immediately sent Marcus Aurelius to him. While the good emperor was thus employed in making mankind happy ; in directing their conduct by his own example, or reproving their follies with the keenness of rebuke, he was seized with a violent fever at Lorium, a pleasure-house at some distance from Rome, whence finding himself sensibly decaying, he ordered his friends and principal officers to attend him. In their presence he confirmed the adoption of Marcus Aurelius without once naming Lucius Verus, who had been joined by Adrian with him in the succession : then commanding the golden statue of Fortune, which was always in the chambers of the emperors, to be removed to that of his successor, he expired in the seventy-fifth year of his age, after a prosperous reign of twenty-two years, and almost eight months.

A. D. 191. Marcus Aurelius, though left sole successor to the throne, took Lucius Verus as his associate and equal, in governing the state. Aurelius was the son of Annius Verus, of an ancient and illustrious family, which claimed its original from Numa. Lucius Verus was the son of Commodus, who had been adopted by Adrian, but died before he succeeded to the throne. Aurelius was as remarkable for his virtues and accomplishments, as his partner in the empire was for his ungovernable passions and debauched morals. The one was an example of the greatest goodness and wisdom ; the other of ignorance, sloth, and extravagance.

The two emperors had been scarce settled on the throne, when the empire seemed attacked on every side from the barbarous nations by which it was surrounded. The Catti invaded Germany and Rhætia, ravaging all with fire and sword, but were after some time repelled

by Victorinus. The Britons likewise revolted, but were repressed by Calpurnius. But the Parthians, under their king Vologesus, made an irruption still more dreadful than either of the former, destroying the Roman legions in Armenia; then entering Syria, and driving out the Roman governor, and filling the whole country with terror and confusion. In order to stop the progress of this barbarous irruption, Verus himself went in person, being accompanied by Aurelius part of the way.

Verus, upon entering Antioch, gave an indulgence to every appetite, without attending to the fatigues of war, rioting in excesses unknown, even to the voluptuous Greeks, leaving all the glory of the field to his lieutenants, who were sent to repress the enemy. These, however, fought with great success: Statius Priscus took Artaxaua; Marius put Vologesus to flight, took Seleucia, plundered and burnt Babylon and Ctesephon, and demolished the magnificent palace of the king of Parthia.—In a course of four years, during which the war continued, the Romans entered far into the Parthian country, and entirely subdued it; but, upon their return, their army was wasted to less than half its former number by pestilence and famine. However, this was no impediment to the vanity of Verus, who resolved to enjoy the honours of a triumph so hardly earned by others.—Wherefore, having appointed a king over the Armenians, and finding the Parthians entirely subdued, he assumed the titles of Armenicus, and Parthicus, and then returned to Rome, to partake of a triumph with Aurelius, which was accordingly solemnized with great pomp and splendour.

During the course of this expedition, which continued for some years, Aurelius was sedulously intent upon distributing justice and happiness to his subjects at home. He first applied himself to the regulation of public affairs, and to the correcting such faults as he found in the laws and policy of the state. In this endeavour he showed a singular respect for the senate, often permitting them to determine without appeal, so that the commonwealth seemed once more revived under his equitable administration. Besides, such was his application

to business, that he often employed ten days together upon the same subject, maturely considering it on all sides, and seldom departing from the senate-house, till night coming on, the assembly was dismissed by the consul. But while thus gloriously occupied, he was daily mortified with accounts of the enormities of his colleague, being repeatedly assured of his vanity, lewdness and extravagance. However, feigning himself ignorant of these excesses, he judged marriage to be the best method of reclaiming him, and therefore sent him his daughter Lucilla, a woman of great beauty, whom Verus married at Antioch. But even this was found ineffectual: Lucilla proved of a disposition very unlike her father, and instead of correcting her husband's extravagances, only contributed to inflame them. Yet Aurelius still hoped that, upon the return of Verus to Rome, his presence would keep him in awe, and that happiness would at length be restored to the state. But in this also he was disappointed. His return only seemed fatal to the empire; for his army carried back the plague from Parthia, and disseminated the infection into all the provinces through which it passed.

Nothing could exceed the miserable state of the empire shortly after the return of Verus. In this horrid picture was represented an emperor, unawed by example, or the calamities surrounding him, giving way to unheard of debaucheries. A raging pestilence, spreading terror and desolation through all parts of the western world; earthquakes, famines, and inundations, such as had never before happened; the products of the earth throughout all Italy devoured by locusts; all the barbarous nations surrounding the empire, the Germans, the Sarmatians, the Quadi, and Marcomanni, taking advantage of its various calamities, and making their irruptions even into Italy itself, the priests doing all they could to put a stop to the miseries of the state, by attempting to appease the gods; vowing and offering numberless sacrifices; celebrating all the sacred rites that had ever been known in Rome; and exhibiting the solemnity called *Lectisternia*, seven days together. To crown the whole, these enthusiasts, not satisfied with the impending cala-

inities, making new, by ascribing the distresses of the state to the impieties of the Christians alone; so that a violent persecution was seen raging in all parts of the empire, in which Justin Martyr, St Polycarp bishop of Smyrna, and an immense number of others suffered martyrdom.

In this scene of universal tumult, desolation and distress, there was nothing left but the virtues and the wisdom of one man alone to restore to tranquillity, and bring back happiness to the empire. Aurelius began his endeavours by marching against the Marcomanni and Quadi, taking Verus along with him, who reluctantly left the sensual delights of Rome for the fatigues of a camp. They came up with the Marcomanni near the city of Aquileia, and after a furious engagement, routed their whole army: then pursuing them across the Alps, overcame them in several contests, and at last entirely defeating them, returned into Italy without any considerable loss. As the winter was far advanced, Verus was determined upon going from Aquileia to Rome, in which journey he was seized with an apoplexy which put an end to his life, being A. D. 169. thirty-nine years old, having reigned in conjunction with Aurelius nine.

Aurelius, who had hitherto sustained the fatigues of governing, not only an empire, but his colleague, being left to himself, began to act with greater diligence, and more vigour than ever.

After having subdued the Marcomanni, a barbarous people that had made inroads upon the empire, he returned to Rome, where he began his usual endeavours to benefit mankind by a farther reformation of the internal policy of the state.

But his good endeavours were soon interrupted by a renewal of the former wars: in one of the engagements of which, he is said to have been miraculously relieved, when his army was perishing with thirst, by the prayers of a Christian legion which had been levied in his service. For at that dreadful juncture, and just as the barbarians were ready to fall upon them, we are assured there fell such a shower of rain as instantly refreshed the

fainting army. The soldiers were seen holding their mouths and their helmets up to heaven, and receiving the water which came so wonderfully to their relief.—The same clouds also which served for their rescue, at the same time discharged such a terrible storm of hail, accompanied with thunder, against the enemy, as astonished and confounded them. By this unlooked for aid, the Romans recovering strength and courage, once more turned upon their pursuers, and cut them in pieces.

Such are the circumstances of an engagement, acknowledged by Pagan as well as Christian writers, only with this difference, that the latter ascribe the victory to their own, the former to the prayers of their emperor. However this be, Aurelius seemed so sensible of miraculous assistance, that he immediately relaxed the persecution against the Christians, and wrote to the senate in favour of their religion.

This good emperor having at a time detected one Avidius in a conspiracy against him, and generously granting him his pardon some who were near his person took the liberty to blame his conduct, telling him that Avidius would not have been so generous had he been conqueror. To this the emperor replied in this sublime manner, “I never served the gods so ill, or reigned so irregularly, as to fear Avidius could ever be conqueror.”

He usually called philosophy his mother, in opposition to the court, which he considered as his step-mother.—He also was frequently heard to say, “that the people were happy whose philosophers were kings, or whose kings were philosophers.” He in fact was one of the most considerable men then in being; and though he had been born in the meanest station, his merits as a writer, as his works remain to this day, would have insured immortality.

Having thus restored prosperity to his subjects, and peace to mankind, news was brought him that the Scythians, and barbarous nations of the north, were up in arms and invading the empire. He once more, therefore, resolved to expose his aged person in defence of his country, and made speedy preparations to oppose

hem. He went to the senate for the first time, and desired to have money out of the public treasury. He then spent three whole days in giving the people lectures, by which they might regulate their lives, and having finished his lectures, departed upon his expedition, amidst the prayers and lamentations of all his subjects. It was upon going to open his third campaign that he was seized with the plague at Vienna, which stopped the progress of his success. Nothing, however, could abate his desire of being beneficial to mankind; his fears for the youth and unpromising disposition of Commodus, his son and successor, seemed to give him great uneasiness: wherefore he addressed his friends and the principal officers that were gathered round his bed, telling them that his son was now going to lose a father, he hoped he should find many fathers in them. As he was thus speaking, he was seized with a weakness which stopped his utterance, and which brought him to his end the day following. He died in the fifty-ninth year of his age, having reigned nineteen years and some days; and it seemed as if the whole glory and prosperity of the Roman empire died with this greatest of the Roman emperors.

### *Exercises.*

What was the character of Antoninus? What became of him? Who succeeded Antoninus? Whom did Aurelius associate with him in the government? What was the general history of this Prince? What barbarous nations attacked the empire? How did Verus conduct himself in Arabia? What disaster befell the Romans on their return? In what manner was Aurelius employed at home? What endeavour did he make to reform Verus? What fatal consequences ensued on the return of his army? What means did the Priests employ to put a stop to the miseries of the state? How did Aurelius act amidst this scene of distress? What victory did he gain over the Marcomanni? What became of Verus? By what means was the army of Aurelius miraculously relieved? In what manner did he treat Avidius? How did he act when the Scythians invaded the empire? In what manner did Aurelius spend his last hours? How long did he reign?

## CHAPTER XII.

*From Commodus, to the transferring the Seat of  
the Empire under Constantine, from  
Rome to Byzantium.*

## SECTION I.

**A. D. 180.** The merits of Aurelius procured Commodus easy accesssion to the throne. He was acknowledged emperor first by the army, then by the senate and people, and shortly after by all the provinces.

His whole reign is but a tissue of wantonness and folly, cruelty and injustice, rapacity and corruption. There is so strong a similitude between his conduct and that of Domitian, that a reader might be apt to imagine he was going over the same reign.

He went with his associates to taverns and brothels ; spent the day in feasting, and the night in the most abominable luxuries, having no less than three hundred females, and as many males, for detestable purposes. He committed incest, as Caligula did, with all his sisters.—He sometimes went about the markets in a frolic with small wares as a petty chapman ; sometimes he imitated a horse-courser, and at other times drove his own chariot in a slave's habit, while those he chiefly promoted, resembled himself, being the companions of his pleasures, or the ministers of his cruelty.

If any person desired to be revenged on an enemy, by bargaining with Commodus for a sum of money, he was permitted to destroy him in such a manner as he thought proper. He commanded a person to be cast to the wild beasts for reading the life of Caligula in Suetonius. He ordered another to be thrown into a burning furnace for accidentally overheating his bath. He would sometimes when he was in a good humour, cut off men's noses under a pretence of shaving their beards ; and yet he was



himself so jealous of all mankind, that he was obliged to be his own barber.

At length upon the feast of Janus, resolving to fence naked before the people as a common gladiator, three of his friends remonstrated to him upon the indecency of such a behaviour. These were Lætus his general, Electedus his chamberlain, and Marcia a concubine, of whom he always appeared remarkably fond. Their advice was attended with no other effect than that of incensing him against them, and inciting him to resolve upon their destruction. It was his method, like that of Domitian, to set down the names of all such as he intended to put to death, in a roll, which he carefully kept by him.

However, at this time happening to lay the roll on his bed, while he was bathing in another room, it was taken up by a little boy whom he passionately loved. The child, after playing with it for some time, brought it to Marcia, who was instantly alarmed at the contents.—She immediately discovered her terrors to Lætus and Electedus, who perceiving their dangerous situation, instantly resolved the tyrant's death. After some deliberation, it was agreed to dispatch him by poison; but this not succeeding, Marcia hastily introduced a young man called Narcissus, and prevailed upon him to assist in strangling the tyrant. Commodus died in the thirty-first year of his age, after an impious reign of twelve years and nine months.

The secrecy and expedition with which A. D. 191. Commodus was assassinated, were such that few were at that time acquainted with the real circumstances of his death. His body was wrapped up as a bale of useless furniture, and carried through the guards, most of whom were either drunk or asleep.

Previous to the assassination the conspirators had fixed upon a successor. Helvius Pertinax, whose virtues and courage rendered him worthy of the most exalted station, and who had passed through many changes of fortune, was fixed upon to succeed him; when, therefore the conspirators repaired to his house to salute him emperor, he considered their arrival as a command from

the emperor Commodus for his death. Upon Lætus entering his apartment, Pertinax, without any show of fear, cried out, That for many days he had expected to end his life in that manner, wondering that the emperor had deferred it so long. However, he was not a little surprised, when informed of the real cause of their visit : and being strongly urged to accept of the empire, he at last complied with their offer.

Being carried to the camp, Pertinax was proclaimed emperor, and soon after the citizens and senate consented : the joy at the election of their new sovereign, being scarce equal to that for the death of their tyrant. They then pronounced Commodus a parricide, an enemy to the gods, his country and all mankind, and commanded that his corpse should rot upon a dunghill. In the mean time they saluted Pertinax as emperor and Cæsar, with numerous acclamations, and cheerfully took the oaths of obedience. The provinces soon after followed the example of Rome, so that he began his reign with universal satisfaction to the whole empire, in the sixty-eighth year of his age.

Nothing could exceed the justice and wisdom of this monarch's reign, the short time it continued. But the prætorian soldiers, whose manners he had attempted to reform, having been long corrupted by the indulgence and profusion of the former monarch, began to hate him for the parsimony and discipline he had introduced among them. They therefore resolved to dethrone him ; and accordingly, in a tumultuous manner, marched thro' the streets of Rome, entered his palace without opposition, where a Tungrian soldier struck him dead with a blow of his lance. From the number of his adventures, he was called the tennis-ball of fortune ; and certainly no man ever experienced such a variety of situations with so blameless a character. He reigned but three months.

A. D. 192. The soldiers having committed this outrage, made proclamation, that they would sell the empire to whoever would purchase it at the highest price. In consequence of this proclamation two bidders were found, namely, Sulpician and Didius. The

former a consular person, præfect of the city, and son-in-law to the late emperor Pertinax. The latter a consular person likewise, a great lawyer, and the wealthiest man in the city. Sulpician had rather promises than treasure to bestow. The offers of Didius, who produced immense sums of ready money, prevailed. He was received into the camp, and the soldiers instantly swore to obey him as emperor.

Upon being conducted to the senate-house, he addressed the few senators that were present, in a very laconic speech: "Fathers, you want an emperor, and I am the fittest person you can choose." The choice of the soldiers was confirmed by the senate, and Didius was acknowledged emperor, now in the fifty-seventh year of his age.

It should seem by this weak monarch's conduct, when seated on the throne, that he thought the government of an empire rather a pleasure than a toil. Instead of attempting to gain the hearts of his subjects, he gave himself up to ease and inactivity, utterly regardless of the duties of his station. He was mild and gentle indeed, neither injuring any, nor expecting to be injured. But that avarice, by which he became opulent, still followed him in his exaltation; so that the very soldiers who elected him, soon began to detest him for those qualities, so very opposite to a military character. The people also, against whose consent he was chosen, were not less his enemies. Whenever he issued from his palace, they openly poured forth their imprecations against him, crying out that he was a thief, and had stolen the empire. Didius, however, in the true spirit of a trader, patiently bore all their reproach, sometimes beckoning to them with smiles, to approach him, and testifying his regard by every kind of submission.

Soon after, Severus, an African by birth, being proclaimed by his army, began by promising to revenge the death of Pertinax.

Didius, upon being informed of his approach towards Rome, obtained the consent of the senate to send him ambassadors, offering to make him a partner in the em-

pire. But Severus rejected this offer, conscious of his own strength, and of the weakness of the proposer.—The senate soon appeared of the same sentiments, and perceiving the weakness of their present master, abandoned him. Being called together, as was formerly practised in the times of the commonwealth, by the consuls, they unanimously decreed that Didius should be deprived of the empire, and that Severus should be proclaimed in his stead. They commanded Didius to be slain, and sent messengers for this purpose to the palace, where they found him disarmed, among a few friends that still adhered to his interest.

Severus having overcome Niger and Albinus, who were his competitors for the empire, undertook next the reins of government, uniting great vigour with the most refined policy; yet his African cunning, for he was a native of Africa, was considered as a particular defect in him. He is celebrated for his wit, learning and prudence: but equally blamed for perfidy and cruelty. In short, he seemed equally capable of the greatest acts of virtue, and the most bloody severities.

Upon his return to Rome, he loaded his soldiers with rewards and honours, giving them such privileges as strengthened his own power, while they destroyed that of the state. For the soldiers, who had hitherto showed the strongest inclinations to an abuse of power, were now made arbiters of the fate of emperors.

Being thus secure of his army, he resolved to give way to his natural turn for conquest, and to oppose his arms against the Parthians, who were then invading the frontiers of the empire. Having therefore previously given the government of domestic policy to one Plautian a particular favourite, to whose daughter he married his son Caracalla, he set out for the east, and prosecuted the war with his usual expedition and success. He forced submission from the king of Armenia, destroyed several cities in Arabia Felix, landed on the Parthian coasts, took and plundered the famous city of Ctesiphon, marched back through Palestine and Egypt, and at length returned to Rome in triumph.

During this interval, Plautian, who was left to direct

the affairs of Rome, began to think of aspiring to the empire himself. Upon the emperor's return, he employed a tribune of the prætorian cohorts, of which he was the commander, to assassinate him, and likewise his son Caracalla. The tribune informed Severus of his favourite's treachery. He at first received it as an improbable story, and as the artifice of one who envied his favourite's fortune. However, he was at last persuaded to permit the tribune to conduct Plautian to the emperor's apartments, to be a testimony against himself. With this intent, the tribune went and amused him with a pretended account of his killing the emperor and his son; desiring him, if he thought fit to see him dead, to go with him to the palace. As Plautian ardently desired their deaths, he readily gave credit to his relation, and following the tribune, was conducted at midnight into the innermost recesses. But what must have been his disappointment, when instead of finding the emperor lying dead, as he expected, he beheld the room lighted up with torches, and Severus, surrounded by his friends, prepared in array to receive him. Being asked by the emperor, with a stern countenance, what had brought him there at that unseasonable time; he was at first utterly confounded, and not knowing what excuse to make, he ingenuously confessed the whole, intreating forgiveness for what he had intended. The emperor seemed inclined to pardon; but Caracalla, his son, who from the earliest age, showed a disposition to cruelty, with his sword rained him through the body.

After this, he spent a considerable time in visiting some cities in Italy, permitting none of his officers to sell places of trust or dignity, and distributing justice with the strictest impartiality. He then undertook an expedition into Britain, where the Romans were in danger of being destroyed, or compelled to flee the province. Wherefore, after appointing his two sons, Caracalla, and Geta joint successors in the empire, and taking them with him, he landed in Britain, to the great terror of such as had drawn down his resentment. Upon his progress into the country, he left his son Geta in the southern part of the province, which had continued in obedi-

ence, and marched with his son Caracalla against the Caledonians. In this expedition his army suffered prodigious hardships in pursuing the enemy; they were obliged to hew their way through intricate forests, to drain extensive marshes, and form bridges over rapid rivers; so that he lost fifty thousand men by fatigue and sickness. However, he supported all these inconveniences with unrelenting bravery, and prosecuted his successes with such vigour, that he compelled the enemy to beg for peace; which they obtained, not without the surrender of a considerable part of their country. It was there, that for its better security he built the famous wall, which still goes by his name, extending from Solway frith on the west, to the German ocean on the east. He did not long survive his successes here, but died at York, in the sixty-sixth year of his age, after an active, though cruel reign of about eighteen years.

U. C. 964. Caracalla and Geta, his sons, being acknowledged as emperors by the army, began to show a mutual hatred to each other, even before their arrival at Rome. But this opposition was of no long continuance; for Caracalla being resolved to govern alone, furiously entered Geta's apartment, and followed by ruffians, slew him in his mother's arms.

Being thus emperor, he went on to mark his course with blood. Whatever was done by Domitian or Nero, fell short of this monster's barbarities.

His tyrannies at length excited the resentment of Macrinus, the commander of the forces in Mesopotamia, who employed one Martial, a man of great strength, and a centurion of the guards to dispatch him. Accordingly, as the emperor was riding out one day, near a little city called Carriæ, he happened to withdraw himself privately upon a natural occasion, with only one page to hold his horse. This was the opportunity Martial had so long and ardently desired; wherefore running to him hastily, as if he had been called, he stabbed the emperor in the back, so that he died immediately. Having performed this hardy attempt, he then unconcernedly returned to his troop; but retiring by insensible degrees, he endeavoured to secure himself by flight. But his companions

soon missing him, and the page giving information of what had been done, he was pursued by the German horse, and cut in pieces.

During the reign of this execrable tyrant, which continued six years, the empire was every day declining; the soldiers were entirely masters of every election; and as there were various armies in different parts, so there were as many interests, all opposite to each other.

### *Exercises.*

Who succeeded Aurelius? For what was the whole reign of Commodus remarkable? What dreadful barbarity did he discover? How did they get rid of the tyrant? How long did Commodus reign? Who succeeded him? In what manner did Pertinax reign? By whom was he slain? Who obtained the throne? In what manner did Didius address the Senate? How did he conduct the administration? What offer did Didius make to Severus? What became of Didius? Whom did Severus next overcome? How did he act on his return to Rome? What advantages did he gain over the Parthians? Whom did Severus appoint joint accessors in the empire? What expedition did he undertake? What hardships did his army suffer? What became of Severus? Who succeeded him in the empire? Of what cruelty was Caracalla guilty? Whom did Macrinus employ to dispatch him?

---

### SECTION II.

The soldiers, without an emperor, after A. D. 216. a suspension of two days, fixed upon Macrinus who took all possible methods to conceal his being privy to Caracalla's murder. The senate confirmed their choice shortly after, and likewise that of his son Diadumenus, whom he took as a partner in the empire. Macrinus was fifty-three years old when he entered upon the government of the empire. He was of obscure parentage, some say by birth a Moor, who by the mere rotation of offices, being made first præfect of the prætorian bands, was now by treason and accident called to fill the throne.

He was opposed by the intrigues of Mosa and her grandson, Heliogabalus, and being conquered by some seditious legions of his own army, he fled to Chalcedon where those who were sent in pursuit, overtook and put him to death, together with his son Diadumenus, after a short reign of one year and two months.

A. D. 218. The senate and citizens of Rome being obliged to submit to the appointment of the army, as usual, Heliogabalus ascended the throne at the age of fourteen. His short life is but a tissue of effeminacy, lust, and extravagance. He married in the short space of four years, six wives, and divorced them all. He was so fond of the sex, that he carried his mother with him to the senate-house, and demanded that she should always be present when matters of importance were debated. He even went so far as to build a senate house for women, with suitable orders, habits, and distinctions, of which his mother was made president.— They met several times; all their debates turning upon the fashions of the day, and the different formalities to be used at giving and receiving visits. To these follies he added great cruelty and boundless prodigality; so that he was heard to say, that such dishes as were cheaply obtained, were scarce worth eating. It is even said he strove to foretell what was to happen, by inspecting the entrails of young men sacrificed, and that he chose the most beautiful youths throughout Italy, to be slain for that horrid purpose.

However, his soldiers mutinying, as was now usual with them, they followed him to his palace, pursuing him from apartment to apartment, till at last he was concealed in a privy. Having dragged him from thence through the streets, with the most bitter invectives, and having dispatched him, they attempted once more to squeeze his pampered body into a privy; but not easily effecting this, they threw it into the Tiber, with heavy weights, that none might afterwards find or give it burial. This was the ignominious death of Heliogabalus, in the eighteenth year of his age, after a detestable reign of four years.



To him succeeded Alexander, his cousin-german, who without opposition, being declared emperor, the senate, with their usual adulation, were for conferring new titles upon him ; but he modestly declined them all. To the most rigid justice he added the greatest humanity. He loved the good, and was a severe reprovcr of the lewd and infamous. His accomplishments were equal to his virtues. He was an excellent mathematician, geometrician, and musician ; he was equally skilful in painting and sculpture ; and in poetry few of his time could equal him. In short, such were his talents, and such the solidity of his judgment, that though but sixteen years of age, he was considered as a wise old man.

About the thirteenth year of his reign, the Upper Germans and other northern nations began to pour down immense swarms of people upon the more southern parts of the empire. They passed the Rhine and the Danube with such fury, that all Italy was thrown into the most extreme consternation. The emperor, ever ready to expose his person for the safety of his people, made what avies he could, and went in person to stem the torrent, which he speedily effected. It was in the course of his successes against the enemy that he was cut off by a mutiny among his own soldiers. He died in the twenty-ninth year of his age, after a prosperous reign of thirteen years and nine days.

The tumults occasioned by the death of Alexander being appeased, Maximin, who had been the chief promoter of the sedition was chosen emperor. This extraordinary man, whose character deserves particular attention, was born of very obscure parentage, being the son of a poor herdsman of Thrace. In the beginning, he followed his father's humble profession, and only exercised his personal courage against the robbers who infested that part of the country in which he lived. Soon after his ambition increasing, he left this poor employment, and enlisted in the Roman army, where he soon became remarkable for his great

A. D. 222.

A. D. 235.

strength, discipline, and courage. This gigantic man was no less than eight feet and a half high; he had a body and strength corresponding to his size, being no less remarkable for the magnitude than the symmetry of his person. His wife's bracelet usually served him for a thumb-ring: and his strength was so great that he was able to draw a carriage which two oxen could not move. He could strike out a horse's teeth with a blow of his fist, and break its thigh with a kick. His diet was as extraordinary as the rest of his endowments: he generally ate forty pounds weight of flesh every day, and drank six gallons of wine, without committing any debauch in either. With a frame so athletic, he was possessed of a mind undaunted in danger, and neither feared nor regarded any man. The first time he was made known, was to the emperor Severus, who was then celebrating games on the birth-day of his son Geta. He overcame sixteen in running, one after the other; he kept up with the emperor on horseback; and, having fatigued him in the course, he was opposed to seven of the most active soldiers, and overcame them with the greatest ease. From that time he was particularly noticed, and taken into the emperor's body-guard, and by the usual gradations of preferment came to be chief commander, equally remarkable for his simplicity, discipline, and virtue; and upon coming to the empire, he was found to be one of the greatest monsters of cruelty that ever disgraced power; and fearful of nothing himself, he seemed to sport with the terrors of all mankind.

However, his cruelties did not retard his military operations, which were carried on with a spirit becoming a better monarch. He overthrew the Germans in several battles, wasted all the country with fire and sword for four hundred miles together, and set a resolution of subduing all the northern nations as far as the ocean. In these expeditions, in order to attach the soldiers more firmly to him, he increased their pay; and in every duty of the camp, he himself took as much pains as the meanest centinel in the army, showing incredible cou-

age and assiduity. In every engagement, wherever the conflict was hottest, Maximin was always seen fighting here in person, and destroying all before him: for being bred a barbarian, he considered it as his duty to combat as a common soldier, while he commanded as a general.

In the mean time, his cruelties had so alienated the minds of his subjects, that several conspiracies were secretly aimed against him. None of them however, succeeded, till at last his own soldiers, being long harassed by famine and fatigue, and hearing of revolts on every side, resolved to terminate their calamities by the tyrant's death. His great strength and his being always armed, were at first the principal motives to deter any from assassinating him; but at length having made his guards accomplices in their design, they set upon him while he slept at noon in his tent, and slew both him and his son, whom he had made his partner in the empire, without any opposition. Thus died this most remarkable man, after an usurpation of about three years, and in the sixty-fifth year of his age. His assiduity when in humble station, and cruelty when in power, serve very well to evince, that there are some men whose virtues are fitted for obscurity, as there are others who only show themselves great when placed in an exalted station.

The tyrant being dead, and his body A. D. 238.  
thrown to dogs and birds of prey, Papiennus  
and Balbinus continued for some time emperors without opposition.

But differing among themselves, the prætorian soldiers who were the enemies of both, set upon them in their palace at a time when their guards were amused with seeing the Capitoline games, and dragging them from the palace towards the camp, slew them both, leaving their dead bodies in the streets as a dreadful instance of their sedition.

In the midst of this sedition, as the mu- AD. 238.  
sicians were proceeding along, they by acci-  
dent met Gordian, the grandson of him who was slain in Africa, whom they declared emperor upon the spot. This

prince was but sixteen years old when he began his reign ; but his virtues seemed to compensate for his want of experience. His principal aims were to unite the opposing members of the government, and to reconcile the soldiers and citizens to each other.

The army, however, began as usual to murmur, and their complaints were artfully fomented by Philip, an Arabian, who was prætorian præfect. Things thus proceeded from bad to worse ; Philip was at first made equal in the command of the empire ; shortly after, he was invested with the sole power ; and at length finding himself capable of perpetrating his long meditated cruelty, Gordian was, by his order, slain in the twenty-second year of his age, after a successful reign of near five years.

A. D. 243. Philip having thus murdered his benefactor, was so fortunate as to be immediately acknowledged emperor by the army. Upon his exaltation, he associated his son, a boy of six years of age, as his partner in the empire ; and, in order to secure his power at home, made peace with the Persians, and marched his army towards Rome. However, the army revolting in favour of Decius his general, and setting violently upon him, one of his centinels at one blow cut off his head, or rather cleaved it asunder, separating the under jaw from the upper. He died in the forty-fifth year of his age, after a reign of about five years, Decius being universally declared as his successor.

A. D. 248. The activity and wisdom of Decius seemed in some measure to stop the hastening decline of the Roman empire. The senate seemed to think so highly of his merits, that they voted him not inferior to Trajan : and indeed he seemed in every instance to consult the dignity of the senators in particular, and the welfare of the inferior ranks of people.

But no virtues could now prevent the approaching downfall of the state ; the obstinate dispute between the Pagans and the Christians within the empire, and the unceasing irruptions of barbarous nations from without, enfeebled it beyond the power of remedy. He was killed

in an ambuscade of the enemy in the fiftieth year of his age, after a short reign of two years and six months.

### *Exercises.*

Whom did the soldiers raise to the throne on the death of Caracalla? By whom was Macrinus opposed? What became of him? Who was his Successor? What partiality did Heliogabalus discover for the female sex? What became of him? Who succeeded Heliogabalus? What was the character of Alexander? What vigorous exertions did he make to subdue the Germans? What became of Alexander? Who was next chosen Emperor? For what was Maximin remarkable? What was his daily diet? What success accompanied his German expedition? What courage did he discover? What became of Maximin? Who succeeded him? In what manner were Pupienus and Balbinus treated? Whom did the mutineers declare Emperor? What were Gordian's principal aims on ascending the throne? What became of him? Whom did the army acknowledge as Emperor after the death of Gordian? How did Philip endeavour to secure his power at home? What became of Philip? Who was declared his successor? What activity and wisdom did Decius discover? What principally enfeebled the power of the empire? By what means was Decius slain?

### SECTION III.

Gallus, who had betrayed the Roman army, had address enough to get himself declared emperor by that part of it which survived the defeat: he was forty-five years old when he began to reign, and was descended from an honourable family in Rome. He was the first who bought a dishonourable peace from the enemies of the state, agreeing to pay a considerable annual tribute to the Goths, whom it was his duty to repress. A. D. 251.

He was regardless of every national calamity, and lost to debauchery and sensuality. The Pagans were allowed a power of persecuting the Christians through all parts of the state. These calamities were succeeded by a pestilence from heaven, that seemed to have in general spread over every part of the earth, and which continued

raging for several years in an unheard of manner ; and all these by a civil war, which followed shortly after between Gallus and his general Æmilianus, who, having gained a victory over the Goths, was proclaimed emperor by his conquering army. Gallus hearing this, soon roused from the intoxications of pleasure, and preparing to oppose his dangerous rival, he with his son were slain by Emilianus, in a battle fought in Mesia. His death was merited, and his vices were such as to deserve the detestation of posterity. He died in the forty-seventh year of his age, after an unhappy reign of two years and four months, in which the empire suffered inexpressible calamities.

A. D. 253. The senate refused to acknowledge the claims of Æmilianus, and an army that was stationed near the Alps, chose Valerian their own commander, to succeed to the throne, who set about reforming the state with a spirit that seemed to mark a good mind and unabated vigour. But reformation was then grown almost impracticable. The Persians, under their king Sapor invaded Syria, and coming into Mesopotamia, took the unfortunate Valerian prisoner, as he was making preparations to oppose them. Nothing can exceed the indignities, as well as the cruelties, which were practised upon this unhappy monarch, thus fallen into the hands of his enemies. Sapor, we are told, always used him as a footstool for mounting his horse ; he added the bitterness of ridicule to his insults, and usually observed, that an attitude like that to which Valerian was reduced was the best statue that could be erected in honour of his victory.. This horrid life of insult and sufferance continued for seven years, and was at length terminated by the cruel Persian commanding his prisoner's eyes to be plucked out, and afterwards causing him to be flead alive.

A. D. 259. Valerian being taken prisoner, as hath been just mentioned, Galienus his son promising to revenge the insult, was chosen emperor, being then about forty-one years old. However, he soon discovered that he sought rather the splendors than the toils

of empire ; for, after having overthrown Ingenus, a commander in Pannonia, who had assumed the title of emperor, he sat down, as if fatigued with conquest, and gave himself up to ease and luxury.

It was at this time that no less than thirty pretenders were seen contending with each other for the dominion of the state, and adding the calamities of civil war to the rest of the misfortunes of this devoted empire. They are generally known in history by the name of the thirty tyrants.

In this general calamity, Galienus though at first seemingly insensible, was at length obliged, for his own private security, to take the field, and led an army to besiege the city of Milan, which had been taken by one of the thirty usurping tyrants. It was there he was slain by his own soldiers, Martian, one of his generals, having conspired against him.

Flavius Claudius being nominated to succeed, he was joyfully accepted by all orders of the state, and his title confirmed by the senate and the people. We are not sufficiently assured of this emperor's lineage and country. Some affirm that he was born at Dalmatia, and descended from an ancient family there ; others assert, that he was a Trojan, and others that he was son to the emperor Gordian. But whatever might have been his descent, his merits were by no means doubtful. He was a man of great valour and conduct, having performed the most signal services against the Goths, who had long continued their irruptions into the empire ; but on his march against that barbarous people, as he approached near the city Sirmium, in Pannonia, he was seized with a pestilential fever, of which he died in a few days, to the great regret of his subjects, and the irreparable loss of the Roman empire.

Upon the death of Claudius, Aurelian was universally acknowledged by all the states of the empire, and assumed the command with a greater share of power than his predecessors had enjoyed

for some time before. This active monarch was born of mean and obscure parentage, in Dacia, and was about fifty-five years old at the time of his coming to the throne. He had spent the early part of his life in the army, and had risen through all the gradations of military duty. He was of unshaken courage, and amazing strength; he in one single engagement killed forty of the enemy with his own hand, and above nine hundred at several different times. In short, his valour and expedition were such, that he was compared to Julius Cæsar, and in fact only wanted mildness and clemency to be every way his equal.

Among the number of those who were compelled to submit to his power, we may reckon the famous Zenobia queen of Palmyra. He subdued her country, destroyed her city, and took herself prisoner. Longinus, the celebrated critic, who was secretary to the queen, was by Aurelian's order, put to death. Zenobia was reserved to grace his triumph, and afterwards allotted such lands, and such an income, as served to maintain her in almost her former splendour.

His severities at last were the cause of his destruction. Menesthus, his principal secretary, having been threatened by him, for some fault which he committed, formed a conspiracy against him; and as the emperor passed with a small guard from Heraclea in Thrace, towards Byzantium, the conspirators set upon him at once, and slew him with very small resistance. He was slain in the sixtieth, or, as some say, the sixty-third year of his age, after a very active reign of almost five years.

A. D. 275. After some time, the senate made choice of Tacitus, a man of great merit, and no way ambitious of the honours that were offered him, being at that time seventy-five years old.

During this short period, the senate seemed to have a large share of authority; and the historians of the times are one and all liberal of their praises to such emperors as were thus willing to divide their power.

Upon the death of Tacitus, the whole army as if by common consent, cried out that Probus should be emperor. He was forty-four years old when he ascended the



throne; was born of noble parentage at Sirmium in Pannonia, and bred up a soldier from his youth. He began early to distinguish himself for his discipline and valour, being frequently the first man that, in besieging towns, scaled the walls, or that burst into the enemy's camp.—He was equally remarkable for single combats, and saving the lives of many eminent citizens: nor were his activity and courage, when elected to the empire, less apparent than in his private station. Every year now produced only new calamities to the empire, and fresh irruptions on every side threatened universal desolation; perhaps at this time no abilities, except those of Probus, were capable of opposing such united invasions.

However, in the end, his own mutinous soldiers, taking their opportunity as he was marching into Greece, set upon and slew him, after he had reigned six years and four months, with general approbation.

Carus, who was prætorian præfect to the deceased emperor, was chosen by the army to succeed him: and, he to strengthen his authority, united his two sons, Carinus and Numerian, with him in command; the former of whom was as much sullied by his vices, as the younger was remarkable for his virtues, modesty, and courage. Carus was shortly after his exaltation, struck dead by lightning in his tent, with many others that were round him. A, D. 282.

Numerian, the youngest son, who accompanied his father in this expedition, was inconsolable for his death, and brought such a disorder upon his eyes with weeping, that he was obliged to be carried along with the army, shut up in a close litter. The peculiarity of his situation, after some time, excited the ambition of Aper, his father-in-law, who supposed that he could now, without any great danger, aim at the empire himself. He therefore hired a mercenary villian to murder the emperor in his litter; and the better to conceal the fact, gave out that he was still alive, but unable to endure the light. The offensiveness, however, of its smell at length discovered the treachery, and excited an universal uproar throughout the whole army. In the midst of this tumult, Dioclesian, one of the most noted commanders of his

time, was chosen emperor, and with his own hand slew Aper: having thus, as it is said, fulfilled a prophecy, which had said that Dioclesian should be emperor, after he had slain a boar.

Carinus, the remaining son, did not long survive his father and brother.

A. D. 284. Dioclesian was a person of mean birth,

being supposed to be, according to some, the son of a scrivener; and of a slave, according to others. He received his name from Dioclea, the town in which he was born, being about forty years old when he was elected to the empire. He owed his exaltation entirely to his merit, having passed through all the gradations of office with sagacity, courage, and success.

In his time the northern hive, as it was called, poured down their swarms of barbarians upon the Roman empire. Ever at war with the Romans, they issued when the armies that went to repress their invasions were called away; and, upon their return, they as suddenly withdrew into their cold, barren, and inaccessible retreats, which only themselves could endure. In this manner, the Scythians, Goths, Sarmatians, Alani, Cati, and Quati, came down in incredible numbers, while every defeat seemed but to increase their strength and perseverance. After gaining many victories over these, and in the midst of his triumphs, Dioclesian and Maximin, his partner in the empire, surprised the world by resigning their dignities on the same day, and both retiring into private stations. In this contented manner, Dioclesian lived some time, and at last died either by poison or by madness; but this is uncertain. His reign, which continued twenty years, was active and useful; and his authority, which was tinged with severity, was well adapted to the depraved state of morals at that time.

*Exercises.*

Who succeeded Decius in the throne? What dishonourable peace did Gallus make with the Goths? What calamities took place in his reign? What became of Gallus? Whom did the army choose to succeed to the throne? By whom was Valerian taken prisoner? In what manner did the cruel Persian put Valerian to death? Who was chosen to succeed Valerian? How did Galienus act after overthrowing Ingenus? By whom was he slain? Who was nominated to succeed him? In what manner did Claudius conduct himself? What disease put a period to his life? Who was acknowledged Emperor after the death of Claudius? What proofs did Aurelian give of his amazing courage and strength? Whom did Aurelian compel to submit to his power? Who conspired against Aurelian? Whom did the Senate choose to succeed him? In what manner did Tacitus reign? What became of him? Whom did the army appoint his successor? For what was Probus remarkable? By whom was he slain? Who was chosen to succeed Probus? In what manner did Carus endeavour to strengthen his authority? What event put a period to his life? In what manner did Numerian discover his filial affection? What crime did Aper's ambition prompt him to commit? Who was chosen Emperor after the death of Numerian? What barbarous nations invaded the empire during Dioclesian's reign? In what manner did Dioclesian and Maximin surprise the world?



## SECTION IV.

Upon the resignation of the two emperors A. D. 305.  
the two Cæsars, whom they had before chosen, were universally acknowledged as their successors, namely, Constantius Chlorus, who was so called from the paleness of his complexion, being virtuous, valiant, and merciful; and Galerius, who was brave, but brutal, incontinent, and cruel. As there was such a disparity in their tempers, they readily agreed upon coming into full power, to divide the empire, Constantius being appointed to govern the western parts.

Constantius died in Britain, appointing Constantine his son as his successor. Galerius was seized with a very extraordinary disorder in his privities, which baffled all the skill of his physicians, and carried him off, after he had languished in torments for near the space of a year.

A. D. 311. Constantine, afterwards surnamed the Great, had some competitors at first for the throne. Among the rest was Maxentius, who was at that time in possession of Rome, and the stedfast assertor of Paganism. It was in Constantine's march against that usurper that we are assured he was converted to Christianity by a very extraordinary appearance. One evening, as we are told, the army being upon its march towards Rome, Constantine was taken up with various considerations upon the fate of sublunary things, and the dangers of his approaching expedition: sensible of his own incapacity to succeed without divine assistance, he employed his meditations upon the opinions that were chiefly agitated among mankind, and sent up his ejaculations to Heaven to inspire him with wisdom to chuse the path to pursue. It was then, as the sun was declining, that there suddenly appeared a pillar of light in the heavens, in the fashion of a cross, with this inscription, *TOUTA NIKA, In this overcome.* So extraordinary an appearance did not fail to create astonishment both in the emperor and his whole army, who considered it as their various dispositions led them to believe. Those who were attached to paganism, prompted by their auspices, pronounced it to be a most inauspicious omen, portending unfortunate events; but it made a different impression on the emperor's mind, who, as the account goes, was farther encouraged by visions the same night. He therefore, the day following, caused a royal standard to be made, like that which he had seen in the heavens, and commanded it to be carried before him in his wars, as an ensign of victory and celestial protection. After this, he consulted with several of the principal teachers of Christianity, and made a public avowal of that sacred persuasion.

Constantine having thus attached his soldiers to his interests, who were mostly of the Christian persuasion, lost no time in entering Italy with ninety thousand foot, and eight thousand horse, and soon advanced almost to the very gates of Rome. Maxentius advanced from the city with an army of an hundred and seventy thousand foot, and eighteen thousand horse. The engagement

was for some time fierce and bloody, till his cavalry being routed, victory declared upon the side of his opponent, and he himself was drowned in his flight, by the breaking down of a bridge, as he attempted to cross the Tiber.

Constantine in consequence of his victory, entering the city, disclaimed all praises which the senate and the people were ready to offer, ascribing his success to a superior power. He even caused the cross, which he was said to have seen in the heavens, to be placed at the right of all his statues, with this inscription, "That under the influence of that victorious cross, Constantine had delivered the city from the yoke of tyrannical power, and had restored the senate and people of Rome to their ancient authority." He afterwards ordained that no criminal should for the future suffer death by the cross, which had formerly been the most usual way of punishing slaves convicted of capital offences. Edicts were soon after issued, declaring that the Christians should be eased from all their grievances, and received into places of trust and authority.

Things continued in this state for some time, Constantine contributing what was in his power to the interest of religion, and the revival of learning, which had long been upon the decline, and was almost wholly extinct in the empire. But in the midst of these assiduities, the peace of the empire was again disturbed by the preparations of Maximin, who governed in the east, and who, desirous of a full participation of power, marched against Licinius with a numerous army. In consequence of this step, after many conflicts, a general engagement ensued, in which Maximin suffered a total defeat: many of his troops were cut in pieces, and those that survived submitted to the conqueror. Having however escaped the general carnage, he once more put himself at the head of another army, resolving to try the fortune of the field; but his death prevented the design. As he died by a very extraordinary kind of madness, the Christians, of whom he was the declared enemy, did not fail to ascribe his end to a judgment from Heaven; but this was the

age in which false judgments and false miracles made up the bulk of uninformative history.

Constantine and Licinius thus remaining undisputed possessors and partners in the empire, all things promised a peaceable continuance of friendship and power.— However, it was soon found that the same ambition that aimed after a part, would be content with nothing less than the whole. Pagan writers ascribe the rupture between these two potentates to Constantine, while the Christians, on the other hand, imputed it wholly to Licinius. Both sides exerted all their power to make opposition, and at the head of very formidable armies, came to an engagement near Cybalis in Pannonia. Constantine, previous to the battle, in the midst of his Christian bishops, begged the assistance of Heaven; while Licinius, with equal zeal called upon the Pagan priests, to intercede with the gods in his favour. The success was on the side of truth. Constantine, after an obstinate resistance, became victorious, took the enemy's camp, and after some time, compelled Licinius to sue for a truce, which was agreed upon. But this was of no long continuance; for soon after, the war breaking out afresh, and the rivals coming once more to a general engagement, it proved decisive. Licinius was entirely defeated, and pursued by Constantine into Nicodemia, where he surrendered himself up to the victor, having first obtained an oath that his life should be spared, and that he should be permitted to pass the remainder of his days in retirement. This, however, Constantine shortly after broke; for either fearing his designs, or finding him actually engaged in fresh conspiracies, he commanded him to be put to death, together with Martian his general, who some time before had been created Cæsar.

Constantine being thus sole monarch of the empire, resolved to establish Christianity on so sure a basis, that no new revolutions should shake it. He commanded, that in all the provinces of the empire, the orders of the bishops should be exactly obeyed. He called also a general council of these, in order to repress the heresies that had already crept into the church, particularly that

of Arius. To this place repaired about three hundred and eighteen bishops, besides a multitude of presbyters and deacons, together with the emperor himself, who all except about seventeen, concurred in condemning the tenets of Arius; and this heresiarch, with his associates, was banished into a remote part of the empire.

Having thus restored universal tranquillity to the empire, he was not able to ward off the calamities of a more domestic nature. As the wretched historians of his period are entirely at variance with each other, it is not easy to tell the motives which induced him to put his wife Fausta and his son Crispus to death. The most plausible account is this: Fausta the empress, who was a woman of great beauty, but of extravagant desires, had long, though secretly, loved Crispus, Constantine's son by a former wife. She had tried every art to inspire his youth with a mutual passion; and finding her more distant efforts ineffectual, had even the confidence to make him an open confession of her desires. This produced an explanation which was fatal to both. Crispus received her addresses with detestation, and she, to be revenged, accused him to the emperor. Constantine, fired at once with jealousy and rage, ordered him to die without a hearing; nor did his innocence appear till it was too late for redress. The only reparation, therefore, that remained, was the putting Fausta, the wicked instrument of his former cruelty, to death; which was accordingly executed upon her, together with some others, who had been accomplices in her falsehood and treachery.

But it is supposed that all the good he did was not equal to recompense the evil the empire sustained by his transferring the seat of it from Rome to Byzantium, or Constantinople, as it was afterwards called. Whatever might have been the reasons which induced him to this undertaking, whether it was because he was offended at some affronts he had received at Rome, or that he supposed Constantinople more in the centre of the empire, or that he thought the eastern parts more required his presence, experience has shown that they were all weak and groundless. The empire had long before been in a

most declining state ; but this in a great measure gave precipitation to its downfall. After this it never resumed its former splendour, but like a flower transplanted into a foreign clime, languished by degrees, and at length sunk into nothing.

His first design was to build a city, which he might make the capital of the world ; and for this purpose he made choice of situation at Chalcedon in Asia Minor, but we are told, that in laying out the ground plan, an eagle caught up the line, and flew with it over to Byzantium, a city which lay on the opposite side of the Bosphorus. Here, therefore, it was thought expedient to fix the seat of empire ; and indeed nature seemed to have formed it with all the conveniences and all the beauties which might induce power to make it the seat of its residence. It was situated on a plain that rose gently from the water ; it commanded that strait which unites the Mediterranean with the Euxine sea, and was furnished with all the advantages which the most indulgent climate could bestow. This city, therefore, **A.D. 330.** he beautified with the most magnificent edifices ; he divided it into fourteen regions ; built a capitol, an amphitheatre, many churches, and other public works, and having thus rendered it equal to the magnificence of his idea, he dedicated it in a very solemn manner to the God of martyrs ; and in about two years after, repaired thither with his whole court.

This removal produced no immediate alteration in the government of the empire ; the inhabitants of Rome, though with reluctance, submitted to the change ; nor was there for two or three years any disturbance in the state, until at length the Goths, finding that the Romans had withdrawn all their garrisons along the Danube, renewed their inroads, and ravaged the country with unheard of cruelty. Constantine, however, soon repressed their incursions, and so straitened them, that near an hundred thousand of their number perished by cold and hunger.

Another great error ascribed to him, is the dividing the empire among his sons. Constantine, the emperor's eldest son, commanded in Gaul and the western provin-



tes; Constantius governed Africa and Illyricum; and Constans, the youngest, ruled in Italy. This division of the empire still farther contributed to its downfall; for the united strength of the state being no longer brought to repress invasion, the barbarians fought with superior numbers, and conquered at last though often defeated.—Constantine was about sixty years old, and had reigned about thirty, when he found his health began to decline. His disorder, which was an ague, increasing, he went to Nicomedia, where finding himself without hopes of a recovery, he caused himself to be baptized; and having soon after received the sacrament, he expired, after a memorable and active reign of thirty-two years.

### *Exercises.*

Who were chosen to succeed Dioclesian and Maximian? What became of Constantius and Galerius? Who succeeded them in the empire? Who opposed Constantine? What extraordinary appearance took place in the heavens? What were the happy consequences? Of what force did Constantine's army consist? What success attended Constantine? How did he act on entering Rome? By whom was the peace of the empire again disturbed? What success attended Licinius? What became of Maximian? Who now remained partners of the empire? What became of Licinius? In what manner did Constantine act on becoming sole Monarch of the empire? Who composed the First General Council? To what place did Constantine transfer the seat of empire? What were the fatal consequences? What advantage did Constantine gain over the Goths? In what manner did he divide the empire? What were the consequences? How long did Constantine reign?



## CHAPTER XXIII.

*Of the Destruction of the Roman Empire, after the Death of Constantine, and the Events which hastened its Catastrophe.*

From this dreary period, the recovery of the empire was become desperate; no wisdom could obviate its decadence, no courage oppose the evils that surrounded it on every side. Were we to enter into a detail concern-

ing the character of the princes of those times, it should be rather of the conquerors, than the conquered, of those Gothic chiefs who led a more virtuous and more courageous people to the conquest of nations corrupted by vice and enervated by luxury.

These barbarians were at first unknown to the Romans, and for some time after had been only incommodious to them. But they were now become formidable, and arose in such numbers that the earth seemed to produce a new race of mankind to complete the empire's destruction. They had been increasing in their hideous deserts, amidst regions frightful with eternal snow, and had long only waited the opportunity of coming down into a more favourable climate. Against such an enemy, no courage could avail nor abilities be successful; a victory only cut off numbers without an habitation and a name, soon to be succeeded by others equally desperate and obscure.

The emperors who had to contend with this people, were most of them furnished neither with courage nor conduct to oppose. Their residence in Asia seemed to enervate their manners, and produced a desire in them to be adored like the monarchs of the east. Sunk in softness, they showed themselves with less frequency to the soldiers; they became more indolent, fonder of domestic pleasures, and more abstracted from the empire. Constantius, who reigned thirty-eight years, was weak, timid and unsuccessful; governed by his eunuuchs and his wives, and unfit to prop the falling empire. Julian, his successor, surnamed the apostate, upon account of his relapsing into Paganism, was notwithstanding a very good and a very valiant prince. He, by his wisdom, conduct and economy, chased the barbarians, that had taken fifty towns upon the Rhine, out of their new settlements; and his name was a terror to them during his reign, which lasted but two years. Jovian and Valentinian had virtue and strength sufficient to preserve the empire from immediately falling under its enemies. No prince saw the necessity of restoring the ancient plan of the empire more than Valentinian: the former emperors had drained away all the frontier garrisons, merely to strengthen their own power at home; but his whole life

was employed in fortifying the banks of the Rhine, making levies, raising castles, placing troops in proper stations, and furnishing them with subsistence for their support; but an event that no human prudence could foresee, brought up a new enemy to assist in the universal destruction.

That tract of land which lies between the Palus Mæotis, the mountains of Caucasus and the Caspian sea, was inhabited by a numerous savage people that went by the name of the Huns and Alans. Their soil was fertile, and the inhabitants fond of robbery and plunder. As they imagined it impracticable to cross the Palus Mæotis, they were altogether unacquainted with the Romans, so that they remained confined within the limits their ignorance had assigned them, while other nations plundered with security. It has been the opinion of some, that the slime which was rolled down by the current of the Tannais, had by degrees formed a kind of incrustation on the surface of the Cimmerian Bosphorus, over which those people are supposed to have passed. Others relate, that two young Scythians being in full pursuit of an heifer, the terrified creature swam over an arm of the sea, and the youths immediately following her, found themselves in a new world on the opposite shore.

Upon their return, they did not fail to relate the wonders of the strange lands and countries which they had discovered. Upon their information, an innumerable body of Huns passed those straits, and meeting first with the Goths, made that people flee before them. The Goths, in consternation, presented themselves on the banks of the Danube, and, with a suppliant air, entreated the Romans to allow them a place of refuge. This they easily obtained from Valens, who assigned them portions of land in Thrace, but left them destitute of all needful supplies. Stimulated therefore, by hunger and resentment, they soon after rose against their protectors, and in a dreadful engagement, which was fought near Adrianople, they destroyed Valens himself, and the greatest part of his army.

It was in this manner the Roman armies grew weak-

er : so that the emperors, finding it difficult at last to raise levies in the provinces, were obliged to hire one body of barbarians to oppose another. This expedient had its use in circumstances of immediate danger ; but when that was over, the Romans found it as difficult to rid themselves of their new allies as of their former enemies. Thus the empire was not ruined by any particular invasion, but sunk gradually under the weight of several attacks made upon it on every side. When the barbarians had wasted one province, those who succeeded the first spoilers proceeded on to another. Their devastations were at first limited to Thrace, Mysia, and Pannonia ; but when these countries were ruined, they destroyed Macedonia, Thessaly, and Greece ; and from thence they expatiated to Noricum. The empire was in this manner continually shrinking, and Italy at last became the frontier of its own dominion.

The valour and conduct of Theodosius in some measure retarded the destruction that had begun in the time of Valens ; but upon his death the enemy became irresistible. A large body of Goths had been called in to assist the regular forces of the empire, under the command of Alaric their king : but what was brought in to stop the universal decline, proved the most mortal stab to its security. This Gothic prince, who is represented as brave, impetuous, and enterprising, perceiving the weakness of the state, and how little Arcadius and Honorius, the successors of Theodosius, were able to secure it ; being instigated also still farther by the artifices of one Rosinus, who had designs upon the throne himself ; this warlike prince, I say, putting himself at the head of his barbarous forces, declared war against his employers, and fought the armies of the empire for some years with various success. However, in proportion as his troops were cut off, he received new supplies from his native forests ; and at length putting his mighty designs in execution, passed the Alps, and poured down like a torrent among the fruitful vallies of Italy. This charming region had long been the seat of indolence and sensual delight ; its fields were now turned into gardens of pleasure, that only served to enervate the possessors,

from having once been a nursery of military strength that furnished soldiers for the conquest of mankind.—The timid inhabitants, therefore beheld with terror a dreadful enemy ravaging in the midst of their country, while their wretched emperor Honorius, who was then in Ravenna, still only seemed resolved to keep up his dignity, and to refuse any accommodation. But the inhabitants of Rome felt the calamities of the times with double aggravation. This great city, that had long sat as mistress of the world, now saw herself besieged by an army of fierce and terrible barbarians; and being crowded with inhabitants, it was reduced, by the extremities of pestilence and famine, to a most deplorable situation. In this extremity, the senate dispatched their ambassadors to Alaric, desiring him either to grant them peace upon reasonable terms, or to give them leave to fight it with him in the open field. To this message, however, the Gothic monarch only replied, with a burst of laughter, “that thick grass was easier cut than thin:” implying, that their troops when cooped up within the narrow compass of the city, would be more easily overcome than when drawn out in order of battle. When they came to debate about a peace, he demanded all their riches and all their slaves. When he was asked, “what then he would leave them?” he sternly replied “their lives.” These were hard conditions for such a celebrated city to accept: but compelled by the necessity of the times, they raised an immense treasure, both by taxation and stripping the heathen temples, and at length bought off their fierce invader. But this was but a temporary removal of the calamity: for Alaric, now finding that he might become master of Rome whenever he thought proper, returned with his army a short time after, pressed it more closely than he had done before, and at last took it: but whether by force or stratagem, is not agreed among historians. Thus that U. C. 1163. city which had for ages plundered the rest A. D. 410. of the world, and enriched herself with the spoils of mankind, now felt in turn the sad reverse of fortune, and suffered all that barbarity could inflict, or patience endure. The soldiers had free liberty to pillage

all places except the Christian churches, and in the midst of this horrible desolation, so great was the reverence of these barbarians for our Holy religion, that the Pagan Romans found safety in applying to those of the Christian persuasion for protection. This dreadful devastation continued for three days; and unspeakable were the precious monuments, both of art and learning, that sunk under the fury of the conquerors. However, there were still numerous traces of the city's former greatness: so that this capture seemed rather a correction than a total overthrow.

But the Gothic conquerors of the West, though they had suffered Rome to survive its first capture, now found how easy it was to become masters of it upon any other occasion. The extent of its walls had in fact made it almost impracticable for the inhabitants to defend them; and as it was situated in a plain, it might be stormed without much difficulty. Besides this, no succours were to be expected from without; for the number of the people was so extremely diminished, that the emperors were obliged to retire to Ravenna, a place so fortified by nature, that they could be safe without the assistance of an army. What Alaric therefore spared, Gesneric, king of the Vandals, not long after contributed to destroy; his merciless soldiers, for fourteen days together, ravaged with implacable fury, in the midst of that venerable place. Neither private dwellings, nor public buildings, neither sex, nor religion, were the least protection against their lust or avarice.

The capital of the empire being thus ransacked several times, and Italy over-run by barbarous invaders under various denominations, from the remotest skirts of Europe; the Western emperors for some time continued to hold the title without the power of royalty. Honorius lived till he saw himself stripped of the greatest part of his dominions, his capital taken by the Goths, Pannonia seized upon by the Huns, the Alans, Suevi, and Vandals established in Spain, and the Burgundians settled in Gaul, where the Goths also fixed themselves at last. After some time, the inhabitants of Rome also being abandoned by their princes, feebly attempted to

take the supreme power into their own hands. Armorica and Britain, seeing themselves forsaken, began to regulate themselves by their own laws. Thus the power of the state was entirely broken, and those who assumed the title of emperors only encountered certain destruction. At length, even the very name of emperor of the west expired upon the abdication of Augustulus; and Odoacer general of the Heruli, assumed the title of king of all Italy.

Such was the end of this great empire, that had conquered mankind with its arms, and instructed the world with its wisdom; that had risen by temperance, and that fell by luxury; that had been established by a spirit of patriotism, and that sunk into ruin when the empire was become so extensive, that a Roman citizen was but an empty name. Its final dissolution happened about five hundred and twenty-two years after the battle of Pharsalia, an hundred and forty-six after the removal of the Imperial seat to Constantinople, and four hundred and seventy-six after the nativity of our Saviour.

### *Exercises.*

In what state was the empire at this period? What is the general history of the Goths? How long did Constantius reign? Who succeeded him? What valour did Julian discover? How long did he reign? In what manner did Jovian and Valentinian act? Whom did the Huns first attack? From whom did the Goths receive protection? What became of Valens? What provinces first experienced the depredations of the Barbarians? Who succeeded Theodosius? In what manner did Alaric conduct himself? Did Honorius make any defence? What distress did the inhabitants of Rome endure? How did the Senate act in this extremity? By what means did the Romans buy him off? When did Alaric return with his army? What calamities did the inhabitants of Rome suffer? What respect did the Barbarians shew to the Christians? What ravages did the Vandals afterwards make? When did the Final Dissolution of the Empire take place?

FINIS.



*R. Simpson, Printer.*







# NEW AND POPULAR SCHOOL BOOKS,

PUBLISHED BY

OLIVER & BOYD, EDINBURGH.

---

## ENGLISH.

**The MOTHER'S PRIMER**; or, First Book for Children; containing the First Principles of English Learning, in a series of Easy Lessons, Tales, and Fables. To which is added, a Selection of Prayers, Graces, and Hymns, calculated to convey to youthful minds the elements of useful knowledge; by A. Abbot. *This little work contains 72 pages letter-press, and is illustrated by 52 beautiful wood-cuts; price only 6d.*

**A First CATECHISM for Children, on the WORKS of CREATION**; intended to assist Parents, or Tutors, in conveying to the Youthful Mind a General Knowledge of the Objects of Nature, with suitable Reflections; by Peter Smith, A.M. Author of "A Practical Guide to the Composition of the English Language," &c.; 18mo, 6d.

**FULTON'S PRIMER**; or, First Lessons for Children; Stereotype Edition; 12mo, 3d. sewed.

**A PRONOUNCING SPELLING-BOOK**; with Reading Lessons, in Prose and Verse; by G. Fulton and G. Knight; Eleventh Stereotype Edition; 12mo, 1s. 6d. bound.

**The ORTHOEPEY of the ENGLISH LANGUAGE Simplified**; unfolding that method of Teaching it which has been long successfully practised in the School of Fulton and Knight; 12mo, 1s. 6d. boards.

"In point of notation, quantity, and syllabication, Mr Fulton's system is, in our opinion, decidedly superior to any which has yet been adopted in Spelling-books and Dictionaries: for it combines the Principles of Etymology and Orthoepey which were unfolded by Sheridan, with all the real Improvements of Walker, reduced to a degree of Simplicity and Practical Facility which neither the one nor the other ever attained."—*British Critic*.

"It is gratifying to our local partialities to observe how much our northern metropolis has contributed to the interest of the rising generation. The plan first suggested by Mr Fulton, and so well developed in his Primer and Spelling-book, enables Teachers to communicate to their Scholars the Elements of Reading with a precision formerly unknown."—*C. Mag.*

"The principal merit of Mr Fulton's System of Orthoepey consists in its simplicity—a property, it will be acknowledged, paramount to every other, in a book designed for the use of schools."—*Anti-jacobin Review*.

**MYLNE'S FIRST BOOK FOR CHILDREN**, 2d.

**A SPELLING-BOOK**, upon a New Plan, for the Use of Schools; by the Rev. A. Mylne, D. D.; Sixth Edition, in 2 Parts; 18mo, 1s. 6d. each, bound.

**An EPITOME of ENGLISH GRAMMAR**, with a Variety of Exercises, for the Use of Schools; by the Rev. A. Mylne, D. D.; Eighth Edition; 18mo, 1s. 6d. bound.

**OUTLINES of MODERN GEOGRAPHY**, for the Use of Schools; by the Rev. A. Mylne, D. D.; Seventh Edition; 12mo, 2s. 6d. bound.

**EXERCISES on the HISTORY of ENGLAND**; containing a regular Series of Questions on all the important Facts of the History; by the Rev. A. Mylne, D. D.; Third Edition; 12mo, 2s. 6d. bound.

**EXERCISES on the HISTORIES of GREECE and ROME**; containing a regular Series of Questions on all the important Facts of both Histories; by the Rev. A. Mylne, D. D.; Fourth Edition; 12mo, 2s. 6d. bound.

**An ELEMENTARY TREATISE on ASTRONOMY ; or, an Easy Introduction to a Knowledge of the Heavens ; intended for the Use of those who are not much conversant in Mathematical Studies ; with Four Maps of the Constellations, and a Plate of the Figures illustrative of the Work ; by the Rev. A. Mylne, D. D. ; Second Edition, corrected and improved ; 8vo, 9s. boards.**

☞ The celebrity which Dr Mylne long enjoyed as a Teacher in Edinburgh, renders it unnecessary to say much in recommendation of these elementary works.—They are the result of long experience ; and are distinguished by condensation, arrangement, and perspicuity, which render them alike intelligible, systematic, and comprehensive. They are now generally used by some of the ablest Teachers in Edinburgh and other parts of Scotland, and are intended as a regular series of School-Books.—The SPELLING-BOOK, Part First, presents a complete view of the General Principles of English Pronunciation, arranged in such a manner as seems best fitted for the purposes of teaching, and illustrated with copious Exercises in the form of short sentences, and little Stories, peculiarly accommodated to the capacity of children. The chief merit of the plan consists in carefully excluding, from the exercises which accompany each rule, every word which has not been previously explained, or which does not come under some of the heads formerly illustrated. In this way, simplicity and consistency are given to the English pronunciation, without altering the spelling or disfiguring the page, and the learner is freed from all those embarrassments which arise from the constant recurrence of anomalous words.—Part Second contains Stories of greater length, which are intended as promiscuous Exercises upon the preceding rules. The chief anomalies of English pronunciation are now introduced, and placed at the head of each class of lessons, in order to impress them more strongly upon the mind of the pupil. To the whole are added Notes, in which the author attempts to explain what appears to him the best method of teaching the rules.—The GRAMMAR contains a full and comprehensive view of the different parts of speech, copious Exercises for parsing, with explanatory foot-notes to assist the learner, and a complete collection of Rules and Remarks on Syntax, accompanied with Exercises on false Grammar. These Exercises are fuller than in any other grammar of the same size ; by which means the expense of a separate book of exercises is saved. This small treatise is chiefly distinguished for the simplicity of its arrangement, for the brevity of the rules and remarks, and for containing a great variety of lessons peculiarly calculated to exercise the judgment and ingenuity of the learner.—The QUESTIONS on HISTORY are merely books of exercises. They are intended to assist the teacher in examining his pupils, and are peculiarly calculated to excite the attention and exercise the ingenuity of the pupil himself. Each question rises out of the preceding ; and care has been taken to introduce every important fact ; by which means the Exercises may be regarded as a kind of abridgment of the respective histories.—The GEOGRAPHY presents a general view of the four quarters of the world, and a minute account of the provinces in each subdivision, with the rivers, lakes, islands, capes, and bays, peculiar to each. The whole is presented in a tabular form, and is intended as the materials of each day's lesson. At regular intervals, the more important parts of the preceding lessons are presented in the form of questions, or promiscuous exercises. To each section is subjoined a short account of the face of the country, the climate, the natural productions, the manufactures, and commerce, of each subdivision.

**An INTRODUCTION to COLLECTIONS for Schools ; or, an Attempt to supply Proper Lessons to succeed the Ordinary Spelling-Books ; with Exercises in Spelling, by Robert Simpson, Author of " The History of Scotland," &c. &c. ; Fourth Edition ; 12mo, 1s. 6d. bound.**

" This work is intended as the first step after the Spelling-Book, and is calculated to prepare the scholar for works of a higher class, and at the same time to perfect him in what he has already learned. The selection of Lessons, and the Exercises of Spelling, are made with the discrimination of an experienced tutor."—*Literary Chronicle.*

**THE ENGLISH LEARNER ; or, a Selection of Lessons in Prose and Verse, adapted to the Capacity of the Younger Classes of Readers ; by Thomas Ewing, Teacher of Elocution and Geography, Edinburgh ; Fourth Edition, improved ; 12mo, 2s. bound.**

In the volume now offered to the notice of Teachers, the Extracts, both in Prose and Poetry, are simple and beautiful, and remarkable for tenderness and purity of sentiment. They likewise possess the recommendation of novelty, as the greater part of them have never appeared in any other compilation.

The Compiler has so arranged the Lessons, that the pupil may proceed gradually from such as are easy to those which are more difficult.

Particular care has been taken not to swell the volume with any matter that does not strictly belong to such an elementary work.

No lists of words for Spelling are inserted, as the purpose is better served by the younger classes being exercised on a few lines in each lesson. Neither has the Author included in his work the principles of English Grammar, and other matter, often superadded to such publications; as he is of opinion that they are premature while a child is learning to read, and that little instruction can be derived from them at this early stage of the pupil's progress.

#### *Character of the Work.*

"Among the teachers who have successfully devoted their talents to the improvement of education we may fairly class Mr Ewing. Taking up his pupils after they have toiled through the Spelling-Book, he furnishes them in his *Learner* with some plain and useful observations on pronunciation, pauses, and the management of the voice; while, by the judicious selection and arrangement of his extracts, he conducts them, in gradual progress, from simple and easy lessons to such as are considerably difficult and complicated. These extracts have another important recommendation: most of them have never appeared in any former compilation. To the Teacher, therefore, they afford in some degree the relief of novelty—saving him from that monotonous repetition which disgusted the ancient teachers with the choicest passages of their finest poets. The intrinsic beauty of many of these extracts is well calculated to form the taste of juvenile readers; and Mr Ewing, we think, has judged properly in introducing them to an acquaintance with some of the most admired specimens of contemporary eloquence and poetry. The *Learner* is intended as an introduction to a larger compilation, entitled '*Principles of Elocution.*'"

**PRINCIPLES OF ELOCUTION;** containing numerous Rules, Observations, and Exercises, on Pronunciation, Pauses, Inflections, Accent, and Emphasis; also copious Extracts in Prose and Poetry; calculated to assist the Teacher, and to improve the Pupil in Reading and Recitation; by Thomas Ewing, Teacher of Elocution and Geography, Edinburgh; Seventh Edition, enlarged and improved; 12mo, 4s. 6d. bound.

To remove every difficulty to the attainment of an accurate and elegant pronunciation and delivery of the English Language, was the principal design of this volume. Its success has far surpassed the most sanguine expectations; while the numerous classes instructed from it, in many of the most respectable seminaries in the kingdom, bear ample testimony to its utility.

By attending to the directions given for Teaching the Principles and Lessons, the labour of both Teacher and Scholar may be very much diminished.

"We know not a work of the same extent better adapted than this to the purposes of both teachers and students of the art of speaking. The principles of this elegant art are laid down in rules at once copious and concise; every difficulty arising from the anomalies of English Orthoepey is removed; the errors of pronunciation, to which the inhabitants of the three kingdoms are respectively liable, are pointed out and corrected; and the whole is illustrated by a great variety of well-selected examples. To the Principles, thus clearly and fully explained, succeeds a rich collection of passages from the most classical authors of the last and the present age—a collection which does considerable credit to Mr Ewing's taste. We were particularly pleased to observe, among his specimens of pulpit-eloquence, some glowing and elegant passages from the most recent publications of contemporary divines; and, among his extracts in verse, some of the most sublime productions of our living bards. The poetical department is preceded by a few judicious rules for the reading of verse."—*C. Magazine*.

"Both teachers and students of English Elocution will find Mr Ewing's performance serviceable; since his rules are in general very good, and his extracts form an agreeable and judicious selection."—*Monthly Review*.

**RHETORICAL EXERCISES;** being a Sequel to the *Principles of Elocution*, and intended for Pupils who have made considerable progress in Reading and Recitation; by Thomas Ewing, Teacher of Elocution and Geography, Edinburgh; 12mo, 4s. 6d. bound.

**A SYSTEM of GEOGRAPHY,** for the Use of Schools and Private Students, on a new and easy plan; in which the European Boundaries are stated as settled by the Treaty of Paris and Congress of Vienna: with the Elements of Astronomy, an Account of the Solar System, and a variety of Problems to be solved by the Terrestrial and Celestial Globes; by Thomas Ewing, Teacher of Elocution and Geography, Edinburgh; Fifth Edition, improved; 12mo, 4s. 6d. bound; or with nine maps, drawn and engraved for the work, 6s. 6d.

"We think the plan of Mr Ewing's Geography is judicious; and the information which, with much industry, he has collected in his Notes, cannot fail to be extremely useful, both in fixing the names of places more deeply on the pupils' memory, and in storing their minds with useful knowledge; while, by directing their attention to the proper objects of curiosity, it lays a broad foundation for their future improvement."—*Blackwood's Magazine*.

"It is justly said, that the present is a period peculiarly favourable to the production of a New System of Geography, as even the modern publications, which were founded on the changes consequent on the French Revolution and the usurpation of Buonaparte, have become comparatively useless from the new arrangements that have been made pursuant to the decisions of the Congress of Vienna and the Treaty of Paris. It is on this account, particularly, that we can recommend Mr Ewing's book to the Geographical student. He first gives the Historical Geography of the Countries, and subsequently the Political, Civil, and Natural Geography. Under the Chronological Article we have a general account of the various Population of every country, traced to the most remote antiquity, and brought down to the present time. To these particulars are added, a Series of useful Problems on the Terrestrial and Celestial Globes, with a Vocabulary of such names of places of which the Orthoepey is doubtful, and which are divided and accented according to the most usual mode of pronunciation."—*Critical Review*.

"Amongst the Works we have seen on the subject of Geography, printed either in Europe or America, we have met with none comprising so nearly what we have considered a useful compendium of Geography for all ages, as that of Mr Thomas Ewing of Edinburgh. We were so impressed with the value of this excellent work, that, after perusal, we concluded to add it to the number of our School Class-Books. In conformity to what we have already premised, we do not offer this work to the world, in the common acceptation of a book for Schools; we present it also as it is, a work calculated for every age of man; an epitome of *Geography, History, and Chronology*, arranged in a perspicuous manner, well calculated to impress upon the memory the facts and events it records."—*New York Academician*.

**EWING'S NEW GENERAL ATLAS**, containing distinct Maps of all the principal States and Kingdoms throughout the World, in which the European Boundaries, as settled by the Treaty of Paris and Congress of Vienna, are accurately delineated, engraved in the best style, and printed on fine royal drawing paper, 4to, 16s. half-bound; coloured outlines, 18s.; or full coloured, 21s.

The unqualified approbation with which a discerning public has rewarded the laborious and intelligent research of the Author, gives increased confidence to the Publishers in recommending this work as a valuable source of information, whether referred to for the illustration of classical authors, general history, or the great events of later times. Its elegance, they trust, is equalled by its accuracy; nor will it be found inferior, in real utility, to works of a much more expensive description.

This Atlas has been drawn and engraved for the Author's System of Geography, by the most eminent artists; and as the name of every place, mountain, river, lake, bay, cape, &c., mentioned in the Geography, is to be found in the Atlas, the labour both of the teacher and pupil is very much diminished.

Any person who has these two publications may soon acquire a competent knowledge of Geography, though he may previously have paid little attention to the study of that science.

"We can very confidently recommend Mr Ewing's Atlas as by far the most elegant and accurate which we have seen on a similar scale. One decided advantage it possesses over all other Atlases now in use—the advantage of having the boundaries of the European Territories accurately delineated, as settled by the Treaty of Paris and the Congress of Vienna."—*Blackwood's Magazine*.

"As a companion to his Geography, Mr Ewing has published an Atlas, which, for elegance, accuracy, and distinctness, we do not hesitate to pronounce superior to any we have seen on a similar scale. This preference we do not give lightly. It is warranted by the experience of several respectable Teachers, who have uniformly found that their pupils can trace places on the Atlas with greater facility than on most of those in common use, which far exceed Mr Ewing's in price. Owing to the recent publication, too, both the Atlas and the Geography possess the advantage of having the boundaries of the European States described and delineated, as stated by the last Treaty of Paris and Congress of Vienna."—*C. Magazine*.

## A PRACTICAL GUIDE to the COMPOSITION and APPLICATION

of the English Language; or, a Compendious System of English Grammar, Literary Criticism, and Practical Logic, illustrated by appropriate Definitions, Rules, Examples, and Exercises, arranged upon a plan entirely new, and adapted to explain the principles of these important Branches of Education, in such a regular and systematic manner, as to enable the reader to apply the rules contained in the Work to practical purposes; by Peter Smith, A. M., Teacher of English Composition, &c., Edinburgh; post 8vo; 10s. 6d. boards.

“As the volume comprehends a complete course of elementary instruction, in Philology, Composition, and Reasoning, it may be considered as a desideratum, which has not been hitherto supplied by any former publication, and will be found a useful guide to all who are desirous of writing, speaking, and reasoning accurately on any subject.

“To those who are ambitious of understanding the English language, and of writing it with purity and elegance, this volume exhibits a series of very instructive studies: the enlarged and philosophic views which it develops; the precepts, the examples, and the analysis, by which they are illustrated, are admirably calculated to unfold the germs of the youthful mind, and strengthen its faltering steps,—to call into play the reason, the imagination, and the fancy,—to direct their course, and define the objects wherever they may be legitimately exercised.—*Monthly Critical Gazette*.

“It has been Mr Smith's object ‘to form a complete course of elementary instruction in the art of speaking, writing, and reasoning accurately on any subject that requires discussion;’ and with this view he has brought together three compendious treatises on grammar, rhetoric, and logic, which will be found to comprehend all that is most necessary in these sciences to the ordinary student. Our limits will not permit us to explain Mr Smith's grammatical views, but we trust that the intrinsic merits of his book will speedily bring it under the personal inspection of our readers.—*Congregational Magazine*.

“When we say that the title does no more than justice to the work, and that the work abundantly justifies the title, little further can be requisite. It is indeed an excellent book; and although we may differ from Mr Smith on some minor points of taste, &c., we do not hesitate to pronounce it the best arranged, most valuable, and most extensively useful compendium of the kind we ever met with.”—*La Belle Assemblée*.

“It is impossible to analyze a work which is itself a complete analysis, nor to give a specimen of the author's manner, when such uniform ability appears in every part.”—*Monthly Magazine*.

“We can with much confidence recommend this work to the notice of our readers, as well to those who teach as to those who learn. It appears to us a more efficient guide than any thing we have met with in the form of an English Grammar within the compass of a school-book. In the work before us, the system appears to us full, clear, and practical, and such as might be perused with advantage.”—*Fry's Assistant of Education*.

“It evinces great diligence and attention, and not only embraces the technical points of grammar, but also enters at considerable length into the wider field of literary criticism, in which principles are enforced by illustrations from the most approved classical writers.—*Caledonian Mercury*.

“This is a very praiseworthy, and will, we have no doubt, prove a very useful work. It is decidedly more original, and, what is better, more practical and comprehensive, than any book on English education that has of late years come before the public eye. It is adapted equally to the capacity of the juvenile scholar and the wants of the private student. It contains, in fact, a perfect series of classical English studies. In what is properly called grammar, the rules are new, various, and well-expressed. The examples of literary, or rather verbal criticism, are always copious, frequently ingenious, and generally correct. The system of practical logic is at once simple, judicious, and refined. The author knows his subjects perfectly well, and illustrates them with perspicuity and precision. We regret that the nature of his work prevents us from recommending it by extracts. We can most safely and strongly recommend it, however, to every one who is desirous of acquiring a correct, copious, and commanding style in English composition.”—*Edinburgh Observer*.

“We have much pleasure in calling the attention of our readers to this work, and in adding our suffrage of approbation to those which have already been paid to it. It contains a very compact, perspicuous, and accurate view of the important subjects of which it treats, and accompanies all the statements which it makes with an extremely full, varied, and felicitous illustration.”—*Edinburgh Star*.

“We consider it to be highly creditable to the talent, industry, and acquirements of the author,—fitted to produce important improvements on our common mode of elementary instruction,—and, altogether, to be beyond comparison the most valuable contribution which has been made for many years to this fundamental and invaluable department of general education.”—*Literary Chronicle*.

**JOHNSON'S DICTIONARY in Miniature; improved and enlarged** by GEORGE FULTON, Author of a Pronouncing Spelling-book, Dictionary, &c.: To which are subjoined, Vocabularies of Classical and Scriptural Proper Names; a concise Account of the Heathen Deities; a Collection of Quotations and Phrases from the Latin, French, Italian, and Spanish Languages; a Chronological Table of Remarkable Events from the creation of the world till the present time; and a brief List of Men of Genius and Learning; with a Portrait of Dr Johnson; Fifth Edition; 18mo, price only 3s. bound.

In this edition, it has been the object of the Publishers to present such a work as may be useful to every class of readers—not merely to those who are only acquiring a knowledge of the niceties of English pronunciation, but to every person desirous of speaking or writing his native language with precision.

With this view, the first attention of the Editor has been given to accurate accentuation; and, he trusts, it will be perceived that the method of placing the accentual mark, which has been adopted in this Work, is not only preferable to that employed in all former miniature editions of the Dictionary, but—what is of the first importance—is such as cannot be mistaken by any reader of ordinary attention.

Much labour has been bestowed in selecting, from the Lexicographers who have succeeded Dr Johnson, such words as seemed necessary for rendering this Work a complete repository of the treasures of the English Language.

It is enriched, also, with carefully accented *Vocabularies of Classical and Scriptural Proper Names*,—a *concise Account of the Heathen Deities*—a *Collection of Phrases from the Latin, French, Italian, and Spanish Languages*—a *Chronological Table of Remarkable Events*—and a *Historical Record of Men of Genius and Learning*.

In short, the Publishers have spared neither pains nor expense to render this Work in all respects accurate and complete; and they anticipate with confidence, that its superiority, to all other abridged editions of the large Dictionary, will speedily be acknowledged.

With all these advantages, it is offered to the Public at a price as low as the most common editions.

**LESSONS in READING and SPEAKING; being an Improvement** of Scott's Lessons in Elocution; by William Scott, the original Compiler; the Fourteenth Stereotype Edition; fine paper; 12mo, 3s. bound.

In the course of the numerous editions of this highly popular Work, since its first publication, errors had multiplied so exceedingly, that it became almost unfit for the purpose of teaching, and a complete revision and correction of it were therefore rendered absolutely necessary. As this had always been one of Mr Scott's favourite works, he bestowed on it uncommon attention in the superintendence of this edition, which may be regarded as the last public effort of his long and valuable life. He introduced several useful Observations on English Pronunciation and Delivery; inserted a variety of beautiful pieces in Prose and Verse, from the most eminent Writers; and made some important amendments on the Grammatical part of the Appendix.

In this improved state, the Publishers have stereotyped the whole book; which has this peculiar advantage attending it, that no new typographical errors can possibly occur in any future impressions; and these impressions they have resolved farther to distinguish above others, by printing them on a fine yellow wove paper.

**SELECT PASSAGES from the BIBLE, arranged under distinct Heads; for the Use of Schools and Families; by Alexander Adam, Teacher, Edinburgh; 12mo, 4s. 6d. bound.**

"The author commences with the first chapter in Genesis, and selects from it and every chapter in succession, what is not only best adapted to the capacities of youth, but also what is sufficient to make them acquainted with the principal historical events related in the Old Testament, omitting, however, 'all historical and genealogical registers.' The extracts succeed each other, with few exceptions, in the same order in which they stand in the Scripture, so that the work may be considered the Scriptures in Miniature. The exceptions to which we allude are met with in the Psalms and the Books of the Prophets, 'for the purpose of including,' as the compiler observes in his preface, 'as many as possible of the Texts most endearingly interesting to Christians, from their affinity to the precepts of the gospel, and from their prophetic allusions to the future blessedness of the righteous. To accomplish this view, the passages have been taken from the several books, and so arranged as to produce an unbroken relation or connexion of sentiment. Any further comments on the nature of the work would be superfluous. The author has not interfered with the text, and, consequently, our estimation of this work must be proportionate to our estimation of that from which it is selected.'"—*European Magazine*.

See also the New Evangelical Magazine, Monthly Censor, Gentleman's Magazine, Christian Monitor, &c.

The **STUDENT'S ASSISTANT** ; comprising, in the form of Question and Answer, a System of Geography, the Histories of England and Scotland, and Instructions in Drawing ; 18mo, 3s. 6d. boards.

### CATECHISMS.

*OLIVER & BOYD'S New and Improved Editions.*

1. A **CATECHISM of GEOGRAPHY** ; comprising the most recent Discoveries, and arranged agreeably to the late Distributions of Territory on the Continent ; to which is prefixed, a brief Abstract of the Principles of Physical and Mathematical Geography ; 18mo, frontispiece, 9d. sewed.
2. A **CATECHISM of the HISTORY of ENGLAND** ; from the earliest period to the present time ; to which is prefixed, a concise Outline of its Geography ; embellished with neat Portraits of the Monarchs ; 18mo, 9d. sewed.
3. A **CATECHISM of the HISTORY of SCOTLAND** ; from the earliest period to the present time ; to which is prefixed, a concise Outline of its Geography ; embellished with neat Portraits of the Monarchs ; 18mo, 9d. sewed.
4. A **CATECHISM of DRAWING and PERSPECTIVE** ; comprehending the leading Facts and Principles of the Art ; 18mo, frontispiece, 9d. sewed.

### PENMANSHIP.

**INTRODUCTION to PENMANSHIP**, or First Book for Children ; by J. Weir ; 9d. sewed.

"If simplicity at all tends to improvement, this introduction claims no small share of praise. The first principles of Writing are therein explained and exemplified with the utmost plainness. Teachers as well as pupils will find in this introduction many useful hints, which, if duly attended to, must very much conduce to their improvement in Penmanship."

**FINLAY'S COPY LINES**, or Slips, Round and Small Hand, 3 Sorts, each 6d. sewed.

**RANKINE'S ROUND TEXT SPECIMENS of WRITING**, 9d. sewed.

**RANKINE'S SMALL HAND SPECIMENS of WRITING**, 6d. sewed.

**BUTTERWORTH'S COPY LINES**, or Slips, all the different kinds, 35 Sorts, each 6d. sewed.

**BUTTERWORTH'S YOUNG WRITER'S INSTRUCTOR** ; containing his Method of Teaching, by which one-half the paper is saved, and the pupil greatly benefited ; with a variety of Specimens, calculated to inspire a true taste for useful and elegant Writing ; 4to, 7s. 6d. done up in a neat printed cover.

**BUTTERWORTH'S NEW UNIVERSAL PENMAN** ; displaying, in a variety of Elegant Specimens, the Beauties of Plain and Ornamental Writing ; folio, £1, 1s. sewed.

**BUTTERWORTH'S USEFUL ARITHMETICAL TABLES**, on a 4to sheet, 2d.

**BUTTERWORTH'S YOUNG ARITHMETICIAN'S INSTRUCTOR** ; combining accurate Writing, correct Figures, and judicious Arrangement ; designed for the Use of Schools and Private Families ; 4to, 5s. done up in a neat printed cover.

\*\*\* For beauty of design, and correctness of execution, these Works of Mr Butterworth are admired by every competent judge of Penmanship. A decided preference is accordingly given to them by the most eminent Teachers in the United Kingdom. They are the productions of an indefatigable genius in his profession, exercised and improved by the experience of above forty years.—The demand for them continuing to increase, the Publishers have spared no expense in bringing them out in the superior style in which they now appear.

## HISTORY.

**AN ABRIDGMENT of the HISTORY of ENGLAND**, from the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Death of George II.; by Dr Goldsmith; with a CONTINUATION to the commencement of the Reign of George IV.; to which are subjoined copious Exercises; by the Rev. Alex. Stewart, Author of an improved edition of *Cornelius Nepos*, &c. &c.; Third Edition; 12mo, 5s. bound; exhibiting a greater extent of information than any similar work now in circulation.

"To this Edition we do not scruple to ascribe a degree of merit which entitles it to its proud position. It is evidently the result of extensive reading and careful reflection."—*New Edinburgh Review*.

"Dr Goldsmith's History of England is allowed, as far as it goes, to be the best in use for schools. The Continuation of it, by Mr Stewart, to the present time, is accurately and impartially written; and the value of the work, as it now stands, is greatly increased for all the purposes of education, by the copious Tables of Exercises, in the form of questions, on the events of each reign, which he has added at the end of the volume."—*New Monthly Magazine*.

**THE HISTORY of SCOTLAND**, from the earliest Period to the Visit of His Majesty, in 1822, to the Scottish Capital; with Questions for examination at the end of each section, for the use of Schools and private Students; by Robert Simpson, Author of an Introduction to Collections for Schools, and Editor of improved editions of Goldsmith's Histories of England, Greece, and Rome; Thirteenth Edition, enlarged and greatly improved; 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

**DR GOLDSMITH'S Abridgment of the HISTORY of ENGLAND**; from the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Death of George II.; with a Continuation till the end of 1824, and Questions for Examination at the end of each section; for the use of Schools and private Students; by Robert Simpson, Author of the History of Scotland, &c. &c.; Seventh Edition, revised and greatly improved; 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

**DR GOLDSMITH'S Abridgment of the HISTORY of ROME**; with Questions for Examination at the end of each section; for the use of Schools and private Students; by Robert Simpson, Author of the History of Scotland, &c. &c.; New Edition; 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

**DR GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY of GREECE** abridged, for the use of Schools, with Questions for Examination at the end of each section; by Robert Simpson, Author of the History of Scotland; Second Edition, carefully revised and corrected; to which are added, Introductory Chapters on the Geography, Manners and Customs, Religious Institutions, and Military and Naval Affairs of the Greeks; and a Vocabulary of accented Proper Names; 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

"The first of these volumes (for they are distinct and unconnected) that claims our attention, is the History of Greece, abridged by Goldsmith; but with the addition of an able Introduction, descriptive of the geography of Greece, the military character, religious and political institutions, manners, customs, &c., of the Greeks. This introduction, though written in a style which a school-boy may understand, contains so comprehensive a view of the subject, clothed in such good language, that the matured student, or even the reader whose studies have long since terminated, may read it to advantage.

"The principal feature in the 'History of Rome' is one which belongs to the whole of Simpson's histories,—that of having Exercises or Questions on each section; and these are so arranged that the master, on reading the question, sees the reference to that part of each chapter which contains the answer.

"The 'History of England,' abridged by Goldsmith, needs not our praise; and it is no small compliment to Mr Simpson to say, that his Continuation of it is worthy of the original. The 'History of Scotland' is the most complete work of its size and price we have seen. It contains a corrected view of the history of that country, the early period of which is so fertile in events of interest, traced with accuracy and impartiality from the earliest period to the present time, including even an account of his Majesty's Visit to Scotland. Considerable pains have been taken with this volume to avoid every thing of party feeling.

"To the master who wishes his pupils to be readily acquainted with what all should know, and to the parent who is anxious that his children should learn history through an honest and impartial medium, we recommend Simpson's Editions of the Histories of Greece, Rome, England, and Scotland."—*Literary Chronicle*.



## LATIN.

**RUDDIMAN'S LATIN RUDIMENTS**, carefully revised; with an Appendix, containing an original view of the Moods and Tenses of the Latin Verb, and of the Subjunctive and Optative Moods of the Greek Verb; by Dr Hunter; Third Edition; 12mo, 1s. 6d. bound.

**RUDDIMAN'S LATIN GRAMMAR**; corrected by Dr Hunter; 12mo, 4s. bound.

**SALLUST**; corrected by Dr Hunter; 18mo, 1s. 6d. bound.

**VIRGIL**, with Critical Annotations; by Dr Hunter; Third Edition; 18mo, 5s. 6d. bound.

**HORACE**, with Notes Critical and Explanatory; by Dr Hunter; Third Edition; 18mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

**CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES**; corrected by Dr Hunter; 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

**The FIRST FIVE BOOKS of LIVY'S HISTORY**; with English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, on the various Readings; by Dr Hunter; 12mo, 5s. bound.

**The FIRST FIVE BOOKS of LIVY'S HISTORY of the SECOND PUNIC WAR (Book 21—25)**; with Notes Critical and Explanatory; by Dr Hunter; Third Edition; 12mo, 4s. 6d. bound.

**An ABRIDGMENT of ROMAN ANTIQUITIES, PROPER NAMES, and GEOGRAPHY**; to which are annexed, a few Grammatical Observations, for the Use of Schools; by R. Mundell, A. M. illustrated by Pictes; 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

**CORNELIUS NEPOS**, with Marginal Notes, intended to explain Intricacies of Construction, Peculiarities of Phrase, and Obscurities of Allusion; a Chronological Table in English, comprising the principal Events related in the Lives; a Roman Calendar, with an explanation of the Method of reckoning Dates by Calends, Nones, and Ides; a Vocabulary, containing all the words that occur in the work, with their various Significations, and an accurate Reference to the Passages in which any Peculiarity of Translation is required; and an Index of Proper Names, calculated to throw much light on the Text, by the Historical, Geographical, and Mythological Information which it contains; by the Rev. Alexander Stewart, author of "A History of the Reign of George III., being a Continuation to Dr Goldsmith's History of England;" "A Dissertation on the Genuineness of Ossian's Poems," &c. &c. Fourth Edition; 18mo, 5s. bound.

"An enlarged edition of Cornelius Nepos, by the Rev. Alexander Stewart, merits, on several accounts, a decided preference over any former one. It contains marginal notes, explaining any difficulties of phraseology which may occur, and also the marks of the long and short syllables placed over most of the words. At the conclusion of the Lives is placed a *Chronological Table of Events*, and the mode of computing time by Olympiads, together with a complete Roman Calendar."—*Monthly Magazine*.

"Besides the Lives of eminent Commanders by Cornelius Nepos, with Notes, this little volume contains a chronology, calendar, vocabulary, and an index of names.—The text is throughout accented, to denote the quantity of the syllables, and the work is, on the whole, worthy of general encouragement."—*New Monthly Magazine*.

"Mr Stewart's is a neat and useful edition, and we have particularly to commend the index of proper names, which is rendered more useful by the geographical, historical, and mythological information which it contains."—*Gentleman's Magazine*.

"What has attracted our attention, and deserved our praise, in this neat little publication, is, the plan on which it is constructed. Marginal Notes are added to the text, admirably calculated to help the tyro to the full understanding of his task; and a Chronological Table completes this portion of useful information. There are also an Index of Proper Names, and instructive Tables, which explain and apply the Roman method of reckoning by Calends, Nones, and Ides; but the great and peculiar recommendation to us is one of a typical kind, namely, the printing of the accents very accurately over the text.—We have only to repeat our perfect approbation of this edition, for its ample intelligence, correctness, and form."—*Literary Gazette*.

**SELECTA LATINE**, ex Historicis, Philosophis et Criticis; quibus accedunt *Notæ*, et *Index*, Historicus et Geographicus; by James Gray; Second Edition; 12mo, 5s. bound.

\*.\* The object of this volume is to provide for the advanced forms of our Grammar Schools a more extensive, and, at the same time, a more select course of prose reading, than has hitherto been accessible to them. Models in every species of prose writing have been extracted from Cæsar, Sallust, Livy, Tacitus, Cicero, and Quintilian, calculated alike to form the taste of the young Student, and to train his mind to just modes of thinking and manly principles. With the view of facilitating his progress without relaxing his diligence, explanatory Notes and a general Index of Biography, Geography, and Antiquities, have been added to the work.

"We consider this to be a most useful and valuable compilation, and have no hesitation in recommending it very highly to Teachers."—*Literary and Statistical Magazine*.

**SALLUST**; a new and greatly-improved edition, for the use of Schools, by John Dymock, Glasgow; 18mo, 2s. 6d. bound.

☞ In forming the text, the editor has consulted the latest and best editions of that author, and has introduced, from the German critics, several new readings, by which some difficulties are removed, and the study of the learner is greatly facilitated. The notes at the foot of the page are intended to assist, not to supersede, the exertion of the scholar. The index is very complete, and will be found to contain more minute information on Roman antiquities, than is supplied by the treatises written solely for the purpose of illustrating that subject. The critical remarks on the style of Sallust will be of considerable use in directing the attention of the reader to the characteristic peculiarities of that eminent historian. These improvements, it is presumed, will render this the most complete school edition of Sallust ever offered to the British Public.

"C. Crispi Sallustii, &c. Studio Joannis Dymock, is a small Stereotype edition of this early-read and entertaining classic, on an admirable plan, and excellently adapted for instruction, as it is formed to attract and gratify the curiosity of the youngest learners, as well as to please tyros more advanced. Mr Dymock is, by his publications, proving himself a great friend to the rising generation; and they well deserve the popularity and public favour they have received."—*Literary Gazette*.

"To the text of Sallust is added a very copious historical and geographical index, to the extent of 150 pages, containing an account of every individual or place mentioned in the work. The index is itself very valuable, and may be referred to with advantage, not only by students, but those of mature age, whose classical recollections are somewhat rusty."—*Literary Chronicle*.

## LATIN DICTIONARIES.

**The TYRO'S DICTIONARY**, Latin and English, comprehending the more usual Primitives of the Latin Tongue, digested alphabetically, in the order of the Parts of Speech: to which are subjoined (at the bottom of each page), Lists or Catalogues of their Derivatives and Compounds. Designed as an easy and speedy method of introducing Youth to a general acquaintance with the Structure of the Language, and preparing them for the Use of a larger Dictionary; by John Mair, A. M.; Tenth Edition, improved; 12mo, 6s. bound.

**AINSWORTH'S ENGLISH and LATIN and LATIN and ENGLISH DICTIONARY**; to which is added, an Index of Proper Names; abridged for the Use of Schools; by Thomas Morell, D. D.; New Stereotype Edition, corrected and improved by Dr Ross; 8vo, 15s. bound.

**A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY of the Latin Tongue**; by A. ADAM, LL. D. late Rector of the High School of Edinburgh; Second Edition; to which are added, an English and Latin Dictionary, and an Index of Proper Names; 8vo, 20s. boards.

## FRENCH.

**RUDIMENTS and PRACTICAL EXERCISES for learning the FRENCH LANGUAGE**, by an Easy Method; with a Table of all the words governing *de* and *a* before their indirect Regimen, by which Learners may be enabled to write and speak the French Language with propriety; by A. Scot, A. M., Fellow of the University of Paris; Twelfth Edition, carefully corrected and greatly improved; 12mo, 5s. bound.

**NOUVEAU RECUEIL ; ou Mélange Littéraire, Historique, Dramatique, et Poétique ;** par A. Scot, A. M., &c.; Eleventh Edition, carefully revised and improved ; 12mo, 5s. bound.

## ARITHMETIC AND MATHEMATICS.

**A CONCISE SYSTEM of PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC**, adapted to the Use of Schools; by A. Melrose, late Teacher in Edinburgh; revised, corrected, and greatly enlarged, and better adapted to modern Practice, by A. Ingram, Mathematician, Leith; Fourth Edition, improved, 18mo, 2s. bound.

The Publishers again submit this Work to public notice, not merely as an introduction containing the most simple and useful Principles of Arithmetic, though its price and size may seem to promise nothing higher, but as a complete Treatise, comprehending every thing necessary for enabling the Pupil to become master of this valuable Science. The various Rules are so arranged as to reflect light on each other, without the necessity of a separate and fuller explanation. Many new and easy methods of calculation are introduced, not to be found in any other work; and the unprecedented number and variety of Questions subjoined to each branch will afford a singular facility to the Teacher in conducting his Scholars, and to the Pupils themselves in understanding and applying the Rules.

Every attention has been paid to the accuracy and neatness of the Work; and the Publishers confidently hope, that it will be found possessed of every quality requisite in a Text Book.

**A KEY to INGRAM'S ENLARGED EDITION of MELROSE'S ARITHMETIC**; containing Solutions of all the Questions in that Work; by A. Ingram; 18mo, 3s. bound.

**A CONCISE SYSTEM of MENSURATION**; adapted to the Use of Schools; containing Algebra, with Fluxions; Practical Geometry, Trigonometry, Mensuration of Superficies and Solids, Land Surveying, Gauging, &c. together with a large Appendix, containing the Demonstrations of the Rules in the Work; by A. Ingram, Mathematician, Leith, Author of "Elements of Euclid," an improved edition of "Melrose's Arithmetic," &c. &c.; 12mo, 4s. 6d. bound.

"Our readers, perhaps, will be at a loss when they have perused the above title, to conjecture why the author has chosen to call his work 'A Concise System of Mensuration;' since it would have been more appropriately denominated *A Concise Course of Practical Mathematics*, which its contents would very well have borne out. We have formerly had occasion to notice Mr Ingram's Elements of Euclid, which we have always considered as one of the best of our English translations of that work; and we are glad to be able to say, in the present instance, that the author has by no means given us reason to think more lightly of his talents for concise and accurate illustrations.—The Author has found the means of comprising in a small compass, much that is useful and valuable to the Practical Mathematician."—*Monthly Review*.

"*A Concise System of Mensuration, adapted to the Use of Schools*, by Mr Alexander Ingram of Leith, is entitled to favourable mention. It embraces the theory and practice in such a manner, that they may be taught either separately or conjointly; and the several rules are expressed in language remarkably clear and intelligible, and illustrated by very appropriate examples, so that the volume presents, in a very small compass, a complete system of the science."—*Monthly Magazine*.

"The character of the whole work is that of clearness, and as it contains a compilation of the elements of so many useful and connected sciences, it is better as a School Book than so many separate introductions upon each science, provided, at least, that the scholar is intended for a profession which requires Geometry, Trigonometry, Algebra, and Logarithms, to be followed by Mensuration, Surveying, Gauging, and Measuring the Work of Artificers."—*European Magazine*.

"Mr Ingram is the author of several Mathematical Works of considerable merit. He possesses a happy talent of rendering abstruse subjects intelligible, and by thus smoothing the hills of science, enabling students to pass down them, not only with rapidity, but with ease. The present work on Mensuration, which embraces also Algebra and Fluxions, is an excellent elementary treatise, which cannot be too strongly recommended."—*Literary Chronicle*.

"Upon the whole, we consider this book to be, in point of practical utility, unrivalled, and earnestly recommend it to the notice of our numerous readers, as the fittest work we have seen for being put into the hands of students in Mensuration."—*Mechanics Magazine*.

**A COMPLETE TREATISE on PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC** and **BOOK-KEEPING**, both by Single and Double Entry, adapted to the Use of Schools; by Charles Hutton, LL.D., and F.R.S. &c. a New Edition, corrected and enlarged, by A. Ingram, Mathematician; 12mo, 3s. bound.

**A KEY to HUTTON'S ARITHMETIC**; containing the Solutions of all the Questions in that Work; Fourth Edition; 12mo, 4s. bound.

**A KEY to GRAY'S INTRODUCTION to ARITHMETIC**; containing the Solutions of all the Questions in that Work; by J. Wallace; Third Edition, carefully revised and corrected, with the addition of a few Notes and Contractions, by T. Scotland; 18mo, 2s. bound.

**AN INTRODUCTION to ALGEBRA**; in which the Fundamental Rules are clearly demonstrated, and the whole rendered easy and familiar to every capacity; with an Appendix, containing the Solutions of one hundred Algebraical Questions; by Robert Sharp, Teacher of Mathematics, Edinburgh; 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound.

**ELEMENTS of GEOMETRY and TRIGONOMETRY**; with Notes. Translated from the French of A. M. Legendre, Member of the Institute, and of the Legion of Honour, and of the Royal Societies of London and Edinburgh, &c. Edited by David Brewster, LL. D. F. R. S. L. & E. &c. &c. With Notes and Additions, and an Introductory Chapter on Proportion; 8vo, 10s. 6d. boards.

**The ELEMENTS of EUCLID**; viz. the First Six Books, with the Eleventh, and an Abridgment of the Twelfth; in which the Errors of former Editions are corrected, and their obscurities explained: many of the Demonstrations are made shorter and more general, and several useful Propositions added: together with Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, and a Treatise of Practical Geometry; with an Appendix, containing much important information; by A. Ingram, Mathematician, Leith; 8vo, 8s. boards.

**The ELEMENTS of EUCLID**; viz. the First Six Books, together with the Eleventh and Twelfth. The errors by which Theon or others have long ago vitiated these books are corrected: and some of Euclid's Demonstrations are restored. Also the Book of Euclid's Data in like manner corrected; by Robert Simpson, M. D. late Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow; a New Edition, carefully revised and improved; to which are now added, a Treatise on the Construction of the Trigonometrical Canon, and a concise account of Logarithms, by John Christison, Teacher of Mathematics, Edinburgh; 8vo, 8s. boards.

## MUSIC.

**PSALM and HYMN TUNES**, selected from the most approved Composers, adapted to the various Metres now in use, and arranged for Four Voices, with an Organ or Piano-Forte accompaniment; to which is prefixed, a clear and easy Method of initiating the Scholar in the Rudiments of Music; by Robert Gale, Teacher of Music; Third Edition; 3s. sewed.

From the variety, extent, and cheapness of this Collection—from the long experience and established reputation of the Compiler, both as a vocal performer and as a teacher of Music—and from the approbation already bestowed on it by many eminent professional gentlemen, to whose revision the manuscript was submitted, the Publishers flatter themselves that this Psalmody will prove equally useful and interesting to the Admirers of Sacred Music.

**PEATTIE'S SELECTION of PSALM and HYMN TUNES**, adapted to the various Metres used in the principal Churches, Chapels, and Dissenting Congregations in Scotland; to which is prefixed, a compendious Introduction, with some useful Scales and Examples, calculated to promote the improvement of Sacred Music. In three parts; arranged for the Voice and Piano-Forte; Sixth Edition; 2s. 6d. sewed; or with Supplement, 3s. 6d.

**The IMPROVED PRECEPTOR for the German Flute**, wherein the Art of Playing that Instrument is rendered easy to every capacity, and the first Rudiments of Music clearly explained; with the most approved method of fingering the Common and Keyed Flutes. To which are added, Forty Popular Airs in the Progressive Keys, calculated to enable the learner to acquire a thorough knowledge of the German Flute; by H. P. McLeod, Professor of Music in Edinburgh; 2s. 6d. sewed.

THESE THINGS BEING CONSIDERED, IT IS THE  
 OPINION OF THE BOARD THAT THE  
 FOLLOWING RESOLUTIONS BE PASSED:

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO

DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.

RESOLVED, THAT THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS  
 BE AND THEY ARE AUTHORIZED TO  
 DO ALL SUCH THINGS AS MAY BE NECESSARY  
 TO CARRY OUT THE PURPOSES OF THE  
 COMPANY AND TO SECURE THE INTERESTS OF THE  
 SHAREHOLDERS THEREOF.











